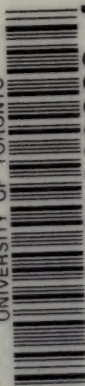


COOK

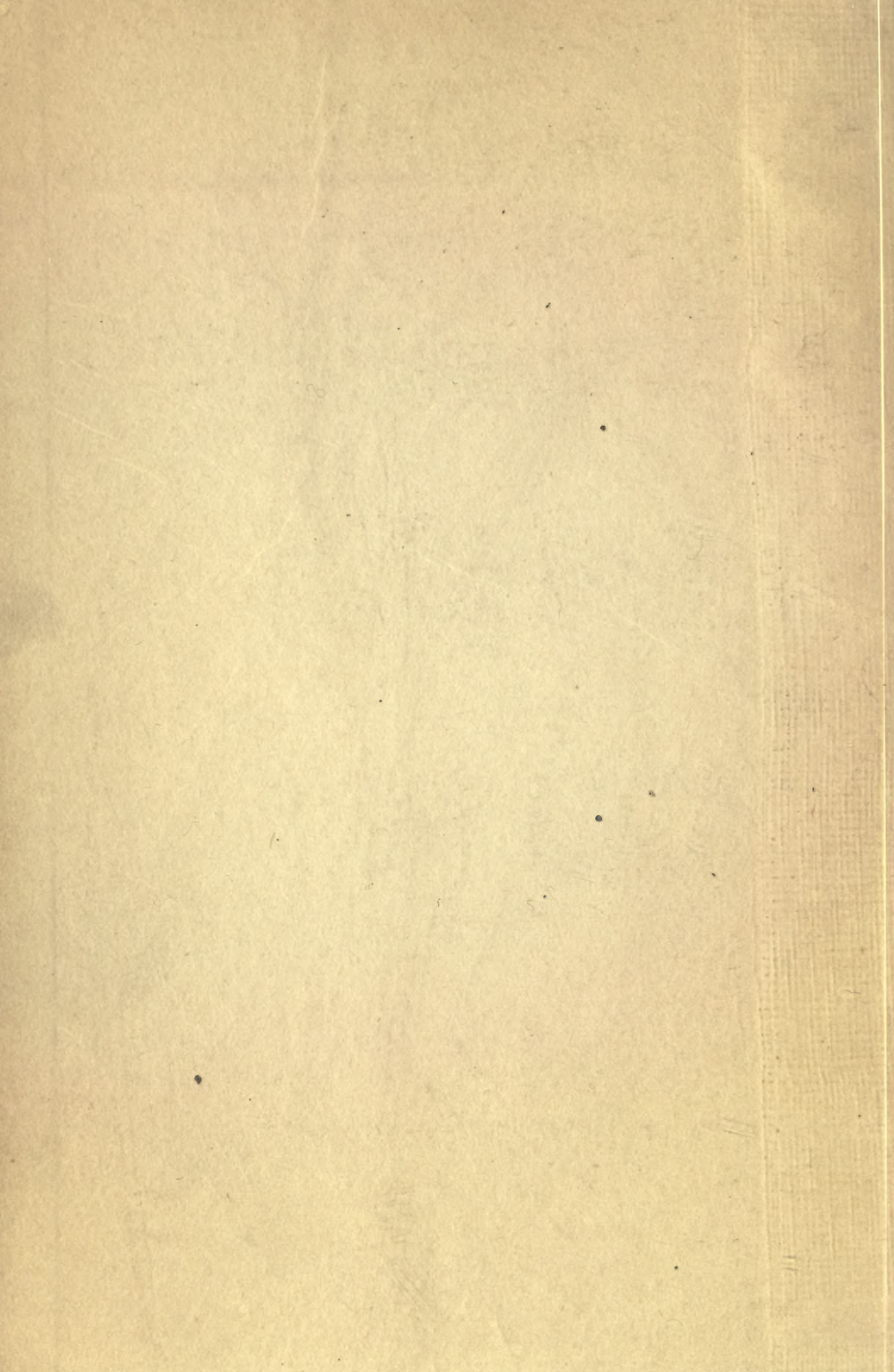
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

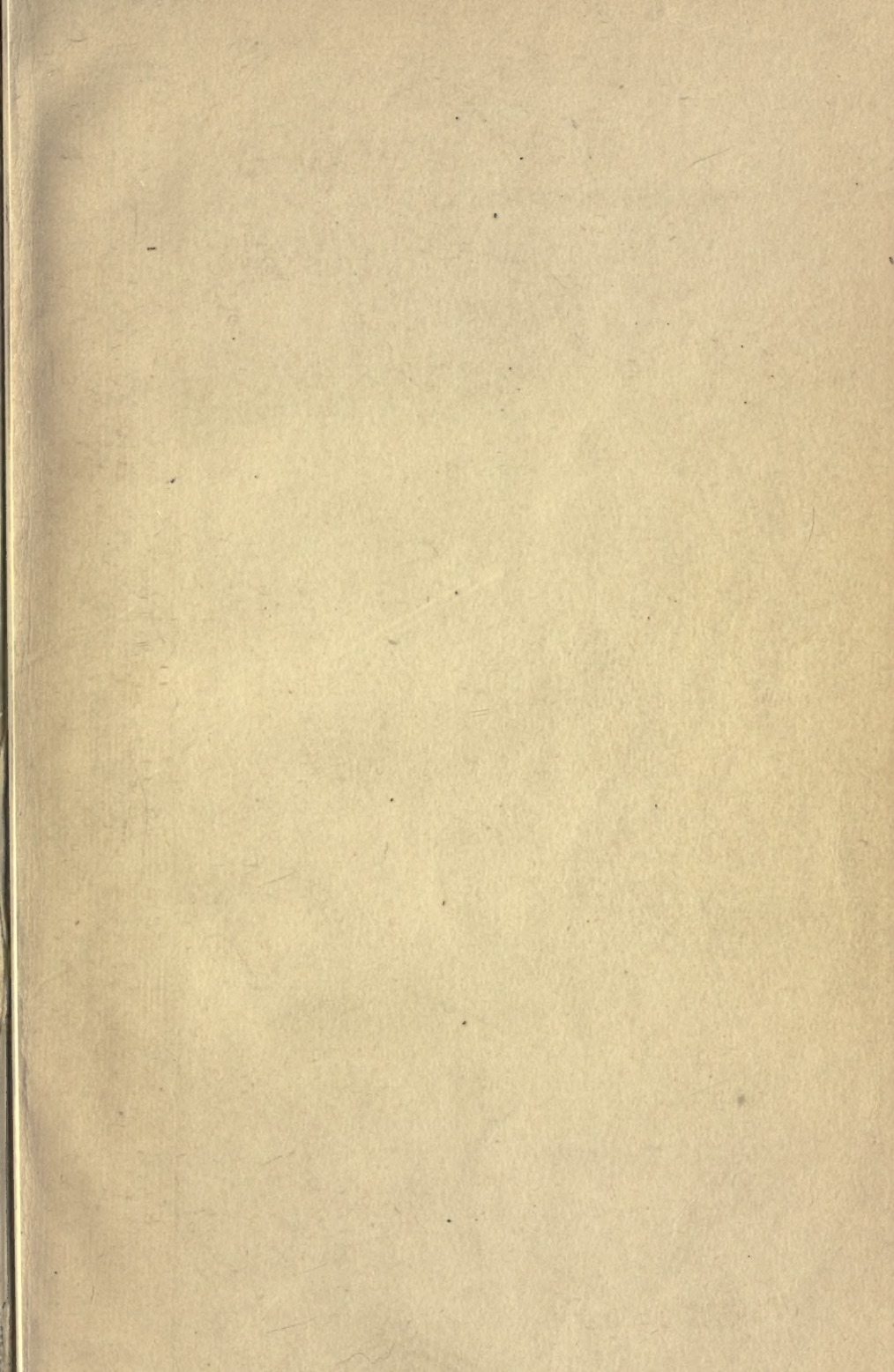


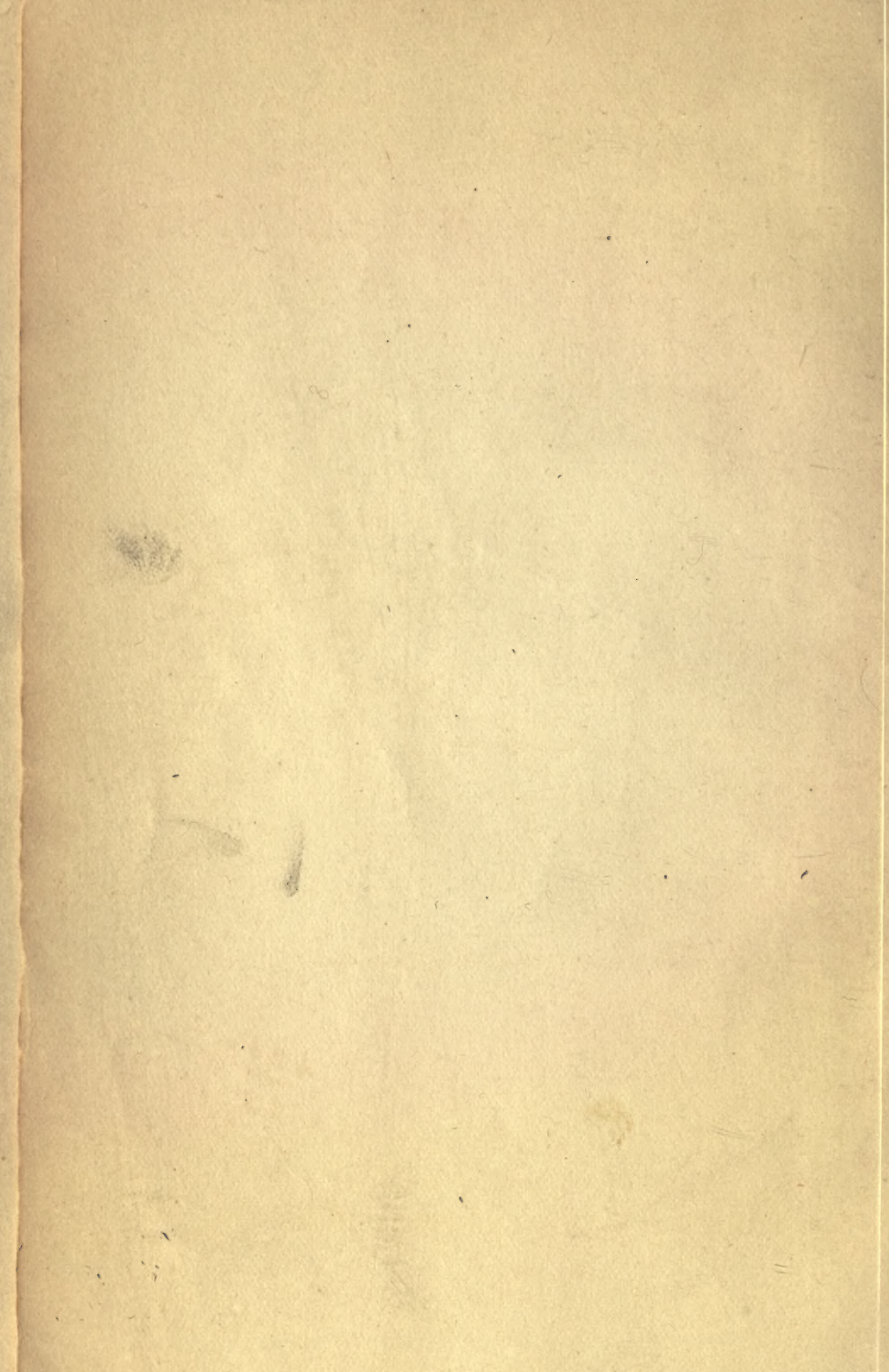
3 1761 01440888 4

FIRST BOOK IN
OLD ENGLISH

GINN & COMPANY







C769f

A

FIRST BOOK IN OLD ENGLISH

GRAMMAR, READER, NOTES, AND
VOCABULARY

BY

ALBERT S. COOK

PROFESSOR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
IN YALE UNIVERSITY

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

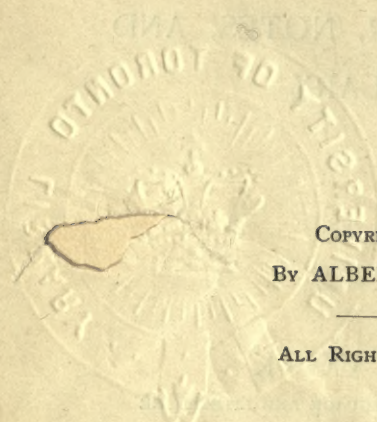
45842
22/10/00

BOSTON, U.S.A.

GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS

1900

PE
135
CG
1900



COPYRIGHT, 1894.
By ALBERT S. COOK.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

24384
10/22

TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.
PRESSWORK BY GINN & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

TO

JAMES MORGAN HART

Author of "German Universities"

and

Scholar in Old English.

e
r

Skate

PREFACE.

THE present volume is an attempt to be of service to those who are beginning the study of our language, or who desire to acquaint themselves with a few specimens of our earliest literature. It has seemed to the author that there were two extremes to be avoided in its compilation—the treatment of Old English as though it consisted of wholly isolated phenomena, and the procedure upon a virtual assumption that the student was already acquainted with the cognate Germanic tongues and with the problems and methods of comparative philology. The former treatment robs the study of its significance and value, which, like that of most other subjects, is found in its relations; the latter repels and confounds the student at a stage when he is most in need of encouragement and attraction.

How well the author has succeeded must be left to the judgment of others—the masters whom he follows at a distance, and the students whose interests he has constantly borne in mind. Of one thing, however, he can assure such as may care to inspect his book—that he has spared no pains in treading the path which seemed to be thus marked out for him in advance. Errors there doubtless are,—errors of judgment, and errors of fact; but for both he must plead the best excuse ever

offered for similar imperfections, that of King Alfred in the last sentence on page 162 of this volume.

The selections have been made with reference to giving a fairly just, though necessarily incomplete, view of the surroundings, occupations, problems, ideals, and sentiments of our English ancestors. The earlier pieces of both prose and poetry are short; the longer ones that follow either have more sustained interest, or are supported by their reference to preceding ones; but they, too, fall into natural subdivisions, partially indicated in the printing, so that they may be read as successions of short extracts.

It may be objected that Latin and Greek have been too freely used for illustration. The reply to such an objection is twofold: that the book is likely to fall into the hands of some who possess at least an elementary acquaintance with one or both of these languages, and that to these the disclosure of the relations involved in a comparison with the ancient tongues will materially increase their pleasure and their gain; and, secondly, that the book may be intelligently read, from cover to cover, without the slightest knowledge of either Greek or Latin.

The passages from Bede have been taken from Miller's edition; the portion of Ælfric's Colloquy from the Wright-Wülker Vocabularies; the extracts from Wulfstan from Napier's edition; the selections from Beowulf and Andreas are based upon the Grein-Wülker edition of the *Bibliothek der angelsächsischen Poesie*; that from the Judith upon my own edition. The originals of the others are either indicated, or will be patent to scholars.

The normalization of the texts to an Early West Saxon basis — Cosijn's *Altwestsächsische Grammatik* being the chief authority for norms — will doubtless be criticised by some scholars whose judgment is entitled to respect; but here again the author has had in mind the beginner, for whose especial use the book is intended. If he welcomes this introduction on account of its greater ease, and is yet not led astray by it; if he becomes solidly grounded in the elements, so that further progress is facilitated, while yet he has nothing to unlearn in the future; the author will be consoled by his approbation for the censure of those who entertain a different opinion on this head.

To the normalization of the texts exception has been made in the case of the poetry. For this there are two reasons. In spite of the greater difficulty of the poetry, the student should have had sufficient practice in reading, and particularly in parsing — the importance of which cannot be too much insisted upon — to proceed in the poetry without great obstruction from the retention of manuscript forms, especially as the cross-references of the Vocabulary will furnish him with the necessary assistance; and, secondly, the normalization of the poetry would sometimes have been attended with considerable uncertainty, an uncertainty which is decidedly less in the case of the prose. Besides, such profit as accrues to the student from the inspection of the irregular orthography of the manuscripts may, by the literal reproduction of the orthography, be gained from this part.

The device noted on page 202 is presented with some

persuasion of its utility, though frankly as an experiment on which the author would gladly take, after sufficient trial, the judgment of his colleagues.

The Grammar is the merest outline. Its condensation has been largely effected by confining the treatment almost entirely to Old English itself, excluding all references to the theoretical Primitive Germanic. This method is accompanied with some loss; but, again, it is the beginner whom the author has had in view. More doubtful, perhaps, is the expediency of an empirical classification of nouns, instead of the scientific arrangement according to stems; many of us have unquestionably found, however, that the more purely scholarly classification occasions not a little trouble in practice, and that its theoretical advantages are dearly purchased at this stage, before there is any adequate conception of comparative philology and its postulates. The author is not so clear with regard to the probable utility of paragraphs 12-14, on original and derivative vowels; criticism on this point will be especially welcome.

The Appendixes include illustrative matter for which there was no natural place elsewhere, or materials and hints for those who would prosecute their researches a little further. The first three of them carry their meaning on their face; the last is provided in order to facilitate the beginning of dialectic study. It—Appendix IV.—has cost more thought than is likely to appear on the surface. The dialects have as yet been but imperfectly discriminated; it is easier to say what is non-West Saxon than what is Mercian or Kentish; the residuum of demon-

strably pure Northumbrian forms in Cædmon's Hymn, for example, turns out to be surprisingly small.

Care has been devoted to the unification of the book — to making its parts mutually coherent; the illustrations of syntax are therefore taken from the texts printed in the Reader, and the Vocabulary contains copious references to the Grammar. It is hoped that this plan will prevent distraction on the part of the student, and conduce to a nearly absolute mastery of the matter here presented. The book ought to occupy at least a semester, and could readily be used for a longer time. The author believes that the history of the English language may most profitably begin with such a manual, studied under a competent teacher and with access to a few good reference books. Thus used, it might advantageously be introduced into the earlier part of College courses, and perhaps into the better sort of High Schools and Academies.

In conclusion, it is a pleasure to the author to acknowledge his indebtedness to Miss Elizabeth Deering Hanscom, graduate student of Yale University and American Fellow of the Association of Collegiate Alumnæ, who has rendered material assistance in the preparation of the Vocabulary.

YALE UNIVERSITY, December 11, 1893.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE favorable reception accorded to the first edition has encouraged the author, besides correcting several small errors, to amplify Appendix I., and to add a new Appendix, numbered V. The provision of a brief bibliography has been so generally welcomed that it has seemed desirable to append a list of books of a more advanced character, while retaining the former one essentially unchanged. No attempt at completeness has been made, but perhaps not many books of primary value have been omitted. The illustration of umlaut from Gothic, suggested by a reviewer, now constitutes Appendix V.

Certain teachers having expressed a wish that the Vocabulary should give the gender of nouns, the author thinks it proper to state the principle upon which the designation of gender was omitted. This principle was that the Grammar should be in constant use. The cardinal use of a knowledge of the gender is with reference to declension; given the declension, and the gender follows. Now the references to the Grammar under nouns primarily indicate the declensions. If, then, the student recognizes the meaning of such references as **43, 47**, etc., it is a proof that he is sufficiently acquainted with the paradigms they indicate; if not, it is a clear sign that he ought to refer to them, and that a mere knowledge

of the gender would not suffice. This is the author's opinion, but he holds himself prepared to defer to the expressed wish of his colleagues, when he can believe that that wish is at all general among those who have given the book a fair trial.

The author hopes soon to issue a small companion volume of exercises in Old English, designed chiefly to facilitate drill on inflections. These exercises will consist of brief sentences for translation into Old English, based upon the successive prose selections of the Reader, together with an English-Old English Vocabulary.

A final word to those who use this book, — a word based upon experience with it: *Look up carefully every foot-note, and constantly refer from the Vocabulary to the Grammar, with reference to the speedy mastery of the latter, supplementing this process by the committal to memory of paradigms.*

YALE UNIVERSITY, December 31, 1894.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
GRAMMAR	1
INTRODUCTION	3
Dialects and Periods	3
PHONOLOGY	5
Letters and Sounds	5
Effects and Relations of Sounds	10
Consonantal Loss and Change	21
INFLECTION	26
Declension of Nouns	26
Declension of Adjectives	38
Comparison of Adjectives	42
Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	44
Numerals	46
Pronouns	48
Verbs	53
FORMATION OF WORDS	81
SYNTAX	88
Nouns	88
Adjectives	99
Adverbs	100
Pronouns	100
Verbs	101
Prepositions	106
Conjunctions	107
PROSODY	108
READER	121
I. THE CREATION OF THE WORLD	122
II. TRADES AND OCCUPATIONS	129
III. THE DAY OF JUDGMENT	134
IV. BEDE'S DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN	137
V. ÆTHELWALD CALMS THE SEA	141

	PAGE
✓VI. THE INVASION OF BRITAIN BY THE PICTS AND SCOTS	144
✓VII. THE PASSING OF CHAD	150
VIII. THE DANGERS OF GREATNESS	156
IX. DUTIES OF THE RICH TOWARD THE POOR	159
X. ALFRED'S PREFACE TO BOETHIUS	162
XI. A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED	163
XII. APOLLONIUS OF TYRE	164
The Shipwreck	165
Apollonius and the Fisherman	166
The Incidents in the Gymnasium	168
✓Apollonius at the Feast	170
✓Entry of the Princess	172
✓A Lesson in Music	174
✓Apollonius as Teacher	177
✓The Three Suitors	178
The Princess chooses	180
Apollonius relates his Adventures	184
The Recognition	185
The Fisherman's Reward	186
The End	187
XIII. THE SIX DAYS' WORK OF CREATION	189
XIV. THE SONG OF THE GLEEMAN	200
XV. THE ROUT OF THE ASSYRIANS	202
XVI. SELECTIONS FROM THE ANDREAS	210
Conversation between Andrew and the Sea-Captain	211
The Voyage. — Storm at Sea	218
Andrew relates Christ's Stilling of the Tempest	222
Andrew desires Instruction in Seamanship	225
The Pilot recognizes God's Presence with Andrew	227
Andrew is carried to the City	228
Andrew's Disciples relate their Adventure	230
APPENDIXES	233
APPENDIX I. Some Useful Books for the Study of Old English	235
APPENDIX II. Correspondences of Old English and Modern German Vowels	245
APPENDIX III. Andrew's Negotiations with the Steersman	247
APPENDIX IV. Specimens of the Dialects	250
APPENDIX V. I-umlaut illustrated from Gothic	268
VOCABULARY	271

GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

Dialects and Periods.

1. Old English (sometimes called ^{West} ~~Anglo~~-Saxon) is the name of the Germanic language spoken in England between the middle of the fifth and the middle of the twelfth century. Its literature extends from the eighth to the twelfth century, and there are no Old English words found in documents earlier than the seventh century. The principal prose texts date from the period of King Alfred (871-901 A.D.), or from that of Abbot Ælfrie (pronounced Alfrie), who flourished about the year 1000 A.D. The poetical pieces are mostly of uncertain dates, ranging from the eighth to the tenth or eleventh century. ✓

There are four dialects of Old English, the Northumbrian, Mercian, Kentish, and West Saxon; of these the Mercian is intermediate in its characteristics between the Northumbrian and West Saxon. The Northumbrian dialect formed the basis of modern Scotch and Northern English, the Mercian of standard literary English. The literature of Old English is chiefly extant in West Saxon, though the poetry,

and some of the prose, contains forms from other dialects, chiefly from the Northumbrian.

Since the remains of the other dialects are comparatively small, West Saxon is the principal existing representative of Old English, and hence the two terms are often used interchangeably. West Saxon is divided into Early West Saxon (EWS.) and Late West Saxon (LWS.). The former is the language as written in King Alfred's time, the latter as in that of Abbot Ælfric and his successors. A hundred years made some changes in the language, but rather with respect to syntax, euphony, and style in general than to the forms of words, though these also underwent some modification.

In this work, the forms are those of Early West Saxon, which is assumed as the standard, even when the selections are from Late West Saxon.

PHONOLOGY.

Letters and Sounds.

2. Alphabet. — The Old English alphabet has the letters of Modern English, with the exception of *j*, *k*, *q*, *v*, and *z*, and with the addition of **ð** and **þ**, both of which represent the modern *th*. Of these, *j* and *v* are never used, being represented by **g** (or **i**) and **f**, respectively; *k*, *q*, and *z* but rarely, *k* being commonly represented by **c**, *ks(cs)* by **x**, *q(u)* by **c(w)**, and *z* by **ts**. The two unfamiliar characters **ð** and **þ** are pronounced *eth* (*eth* in *brethren*) and *thorn*, respectively; they are used interchangeably in the manuscripts; in this book **ð** will, in general, stand for both.

3. Vowels and diphthongs. — The vowel-letters are those of Modern English, with the addition of **æ**. Modern editors employ **e** and **o** to denote respectively an **e** and **o** which sprang from an original **a** (but **e** occasionally from **o**; 17, 25). The vowels may be either short or long.

The diphthongs are represented by **ea**, **eo**, and **ie**, both short and long. The second vowel sound in each diphthong is scarcely heard in pronunciation, the first element being the one which receives the stress.

The vowel of every syllable is to be pronounced, but in an unstressed syllable the sound is less distinct (23).

4. Quantity. — Long vowels and diphthongs must be carefully distinguished from short ones. In normalized texts, length is indicated by the acute accent (') or the macron (¯), placed over a vowel or the first element of a diphthong. For instance, OE. **god** is Mod. Eng. *god*, but OE. **góð** or **gōð** is Mod. Eng. *good*; so **for**, *for*, but **fōr**, *went*; **bær**, *bare*, but **bāer**, *bier*; **ac**, *but*, but **āc**, *oak*; **geat**, *gate*, but **gēat**, *poured*; **is**, *is*, but **īs**, *ice*; **man**, *man*, but **mān**, *crime*; **tol**, *toll*, but **tōl**, *tool*; **wende**, *went*, but **wēnde**, *weened*. Beginners should never fail to note whether the radical vowel of each word is long or short, and should no more confound **a** with **ā** than **a** with **y**. ✓

The length of a syllable must be distinguished from that of a vowel. Every syllable containing a long vowel is itself long, but so is also one which contains a short vowel followed by any two consonants or a double consonant. In the latter case, the syllable is said to be long by position; in the former, by nature.

5. Pronunciation of vowels and diphthongs. — The pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs can only be mastered by ignoring their pronunciation in Modern English. Any modern language, or Latin or Greek as pronounced by the Continental method, would be a safer guide.

The exact pronunciation of the Old English vowels and diphthongs can be but imperfectly represented. The learner will not be far astray if he follows the pronunciation indicated in this table:—

a	as in	last (not <i>a</i> in man)	habban
ā	“	far	ān
æ	“	man	æt
ǣ	“	care	ǣr
e, ē	“	men	help, mēnn
ē	“	they	hē
i	“	fin	in
ī	“	machine	wīn
o, ȝ	“	broad (but shorter)	god
ō	“	tone	gōd
u	“	full	full
ū	“	rune	dūn
y	“	{ dünn (Germ.) din (less accurate)	dynn
ȳ	“	{ grün (Germ.) green (less accurate)	hȳd
ea	=	æ + uh	eall
ēa	=	ē + ah	nēah
eo	=	e + o	com
ēo	=	ē + o	frēond
ie	=	i + ĕh	fierd
īe	=	ī + ĕh	nied

NOTE.—The true sounds of **y** and **ȳ** are most readily produced by placing the lips in the position for pronouncing long *oo*, and, while retaining the lips in this position, pronouncing respectively the *i* in *it*, and the *ee* in *deem*.

6. Consonants.—The consonants are divided into—

labials, **w, m, p, b, f.**

dentals, **r, l, n, t, d, ð, s.**

gutturals (sometimes *palatals*), (**ng**), **c, g, h.**

7. Pronunciation of consonants. — **w** was pronounced as in Mod. Eng., also distinctly in the combinations **wr**, **wl**; **m**, **p**, and **b** as in Mod. Eng.; **f** as *f* and as *v* (2). *hw* [æw] (æpre)

r and **l** were pronounced nearly as in Mod. Eng. (but see 21); **n**, **t**, **d**, as in Mod. Eng.; **θ** as *th* in *thin* and in *the*; **s** as *s* and as *z*.

ng was pronounced like Mod. Eng. *ng* in *finger*; when palatal (10) it resembled *ng* in *singe*. **c** was pronounced like Mod. Eng. *k*, or, when palatal, like English *ch* in *child*, and was distinctly heard as *k* in the combination **cn**; **cg** like *dg* in Mod. Eng. *bridge* (see 11). **g** was pronounced as *g* (but see 9) and as *y* (10). **h** was pronounced as in English, even in the combinations **hl**, **hn**, **hr**, **hw**; when final, and in the combinations **ht**, **hθ**, and **hh**, it had the sound of German *ch*, as in *ach* or in *ich*. **hs** was pronounced like Mod. Eng. *x* (cf. 2).

When **c** was pronounced as *k*, **g** as *g*, and **h** as German *ch* in *ach*, these letters are to be regarded as gutturals; when as *ch* in *child*, *y*, and *ch* in *ich* respectively, as palatals (10).

8. Surds and sonants. — The consonants **p**, **t**, **c**, together with **f**, **s**, **θ** when pronounced like Mod. Eng. *f*, *s*, *th* in *thin*, are called surds. All the other consonants, and all the vowels and diphthongs, are called sonants.

f, **s**, and **θ** are surds when beginning a syllable, or following a surd at the end of a syllable; they are

sonants, that is, are pronounced like *v*, *z*, and *th* in *the*, when they occur between two sonants, or follow a sonant at the end of a syllable. To the foregoing rule there may be some exceptions; in case of doubt, the analogy of Modern English may be followed.

9. Spirants and stops. — Spirants are consonantal sounds producible by a continuous emission of breath. Stops are momentary or explosive. The spirants are **f**, **s**, **ð**, and **h** (properly also **g**); to **f** and **ð** correspond the surd stops **p** and **t**, and the sonant stops **b** and **d**.

10. Gutturals and palatals. — The consonants **c**, **g**, **h**, are gutturals when occurring before consonants or the vowels **a**, **ā**, **ē**, **o**, **q**, **ō**, **u**, **ū**, **y**, and **ȳ** (and sometimes **æ**). They are palatals when occurring before, and sometimes after, the palatal vowels **æ**, **e**, **ɛ**, **i**, **ī**, **ea**, **ēa**, **eo**, **ēo**, **ie**, **īe** (sometimes **æ**); **c** and **g** medially (that is, in the middle of a word), when they are or may be followed by **e** or **i**; **c** likewise in the combination **sc** (pronounced almost like **sh**); **g** in the medial combination **cg**; and **c(cc, nc)**, **g(ng)** often medially and finally after a palatal vowel, but at least **ng** not always: *e.g.*, **ɕngel**, **Englise** have not **ng** = *nj*. For the pronunciation of these consonants as palatals see 7.

11. Double consonants. — Double consonants must not be pronounced as in Mod. Eng., except at the end of a syllable. When medial, each consonant is pro-

nounced separately: **sunnum** as *sun-num*, the *n*'s as in Mod. Eng. *penknife*.

Double **f**, when sonant, is always represented by **bb**, and double **g** is usually written **cg**. The only consonant never doubled is **w**.

Effects and Relations of Sounds.

12. Original and derivative vowels. — Of the vowels and diphthongs of Old English, some are original, in the sense of being more directly an inheritance from the Parent Germanic tongue, while others are derivative, or result from modifications of those that we call original.

The original vowels and diphthongs are the following:—

a, ā, æ, ǣ (sometimes), **e, ē** (rarely), **i** (sometimes), **ī, o, ō, u** (regularly), **ū, ēa, ēo** (sometimes).

The derivative vowels and diphthongs are:—

æ (sometimes), **ǣ** (sometimes), **ę, ē** (usually), **i** (sometimes), **q, u** (occasionally), **y, ŷ, ea, eo, ēo** (sometimes), **ie, īe**. Though **ea, eo, ie** when short are all derivatives, **ie** may be called a derivative of the second order, since it arises from one of the two others.

13. Relation of original to derivative vowels. — The relations between original and derivative vowels may thus be shown (see 17, 18, 20, 21, 25):—

ORIGINAL.	DERIVATIVE.
a	æ, ɛ, ɔ, ea, ie
ā	ǣ
e	i, eo, ie, o
i	eo, u
ɔ	ɛ
o	ɛ, eo
ō	ē, ēo
u	y
ū	ȳ
ēa	ie
ēo	īe

14. Relation of derivative to original vowels. — Reversing the order of the last table, we obtain : —

DERIVATIVE.	ORIGINAL.
æ	a
ǣ	ā
ɛ	a, ɔ, o
ē	ō
i	e
ɔ	a
y	u
ȳ	ū
ea	a (æ)
ēa (rarely)	ǣ
eo	e, i, o
ēo	ō
ie	a (ea), ɛ, e (eo), i (eo)
īe	ēa, ēo

Occasionally (28, 29, 30) ǣ is derived from æ, ē from e, ī from i, ō from o or a, ū from u, ȳ from y, ēa from ea, and ēo from eo. Rarely are o and u derived from e and i (26).

It must be observed that not every vowel standing in the column of derivatives belongs exclusively there. Thus i, for example, is sometimes original (12).

15. Umlaut.—Umlaut is a change effected in the vowel of a stressed syllable by the vowel of a following, usually the next following, syllable.

There are two chief kinds of umlaut, the **i-umlaut** (pron. *ih'-oom'-lowt*), and the **u-** or **o-umlaut** (*oo-* or *oh-*).

16. The i-umlaut.—i-umlaut is a change effected in a vowel or diphthong by palatalization, such palatalization consisting in an approximation of the umlauted vowel or diphthong to the sound of **i** (*ih*). The cause of i-umlaut was in all cases an **i** or a **j** (pronounced like Mod. Eng. *y*) of a following syllable, but the **i** or **j** usually disappeared before the period of historic Old English, or was turned into **e**. When the word umlaut is used without qualification, i-umlaut is to be understood. See Appendix V.

17. Illustrations of i-umlaut.—The effect of i-umlaut will be shown by the following table:—

ORIGINAL VOWEL.	UMLAUT VOWEL.
a	e (æ)
ā	æ
e	i
ø	e
o	e
ō	ē
u	y

ORIGINAL VOWEL.	UMLAUT VOWEL.
ū	ȳ
ea (from a)	ie
ēa	īe
eo (from e)	ie
ēo	īe

Examples are: **mann** (*man*), **menn** (*men*); **lār** (*lore*), **lāran** (*teach*); **helpan** (*help*), **hīlpð** (*helps*); **mōnn** (*man*), **menn** (*men*); **oxa** (*ox*), **exen** (*oxen*); **dōm** (*doom*), **dēman** (*judge*); **wulle** (*wool*), **wyllen** (*woollen*); **brūcan** (*use*), **brȳcð** (*uses*); **eald** (*old*), **iieldu** (*age*); **hēah** (*high*), **hīehra** (*higher*); **weorpan** (*throw*), **wierpð** (*throws*); **hrēowan** (*rue*), **hrīewð** (*rues*).

Sometimes two words are so related that **y** seems to be **i**-umlaut of **o**, like **gold** (*gold*), **gȳlden** (*golden*); but in such cases the **o** came from an earlier **u**.

The umlaut of **a** is generally **e**, but in some words **æ** is found.

Strictly speaking, **i** is not the umlaut of **e**, but the phenomenon, though resulting from a somewhat different cause, is virtually the same.

18. Palatal influence.—Initial **g**, **c**, and **sc**, change **æ** (from **a**) to **ea**, **ǣ** to **ēa**, and **e**, **e** to **ie**; and **sc** sometimes changes **a** to **ea**, **ā** to **ēa**, **o** to **eo**, and **ō** to **ēo**. Examples: **gæf** (*gave*), **geaf**; **gǣfon** (*gave*, plur.), **gēafon**; **sceppan** (*create*), **scieppan**; **gefan** (*give*); **giefan**; **scacan** (*shake*), **sceacan**; **scādan**

(*separate*), **scēadan**; **scop** (*poet*), **sceop**; **scōh** (*shoe*), **scēoh**. Even **ēo** from **ū**: **scēor**, from **scūr**, *shower*.

In the following words, the **ge** represents original **j** (pron. *y*): **geoc**, *yoke* (orig. **joc**); **geond**, *through* (orig. **jond**); **geong**, *young* (orig. **jung**); **geoguð**, *youth* (orig. **juguð**); **gēomor**, *grief* (orig. **jōmor**); **gēa**, *yea* (orig. **jā**); **gēar**, *year* (orig. **jār**); **gē**, *ye* (orig. **jē**).

✓ The **i** found in the present stem of some weak verbs (116) stands for original **j** (pron. *y*), and, as **g** represents this **j** in the words just instanced, so it often appears in the endings of these weak verbs, sometimes alone, sometimes followed by **e**, sometimes in one of these two forms preceded by **i**. Thus **nērian**, *save*, occurs also as **nērgan**, **nērigan**, **nērigean**, etc.; the ind. pres. 1st sing. **nērie** as **nēрге**, **nērige**, etc.

✓ Wherever in or just preceding the inflectional ending of a word, **c** or **g** is followed by **e** before another vowel, the **e** must be understood to indicate an original **j** (pron. *y*), and an alternative form without **e** also exists. Thus **sēcean** and **sēcan**, *seek*; **mēnigeo** and **mēnigo**, *multitude*. Similarly, the **i** and **g** in the inflectional endings of nouns like **hēre**, *army* (44. 2) represent original **j** (pron. *y*).

19. **y** and **ȳ** for **ie** and **īe**. — **y** and **ȳ** properly represent the *i*-umlaut of **u** and **ū**, but are also frequently found for **ie** and **īe**. Sometimes, again, the latter

are represented by **i** and **ī**. Hence, in looking for words containing these letters, it is never safe to confine the search to any one of the three. From **eald**, *old*, is formed by means of **i**-umlaut the noun **ieldu**, *age* (17); but the latter might occur in a text or glossary as **yldu**. Contrariwise, on finding **yldu** in a text or glossary, it would not be safe to conclude that the **y** represented the **i**-umlaut of **u**, since, as we have just seen, it really goes back to **ea** and **a**. Again, were the word to be found as **ildu**, it should not be inferred that the **i** is either original or derived from **e** (17), for the reason just adduced.

Remember that y or i, short or long, may stand for ie, short or long.

20. The **u**- or **o**-umlaut. — This umlaut is a change effected in the vowels **a**, **e**, or **i** by a **u** or **o** of the following syllable. By it **a** is converted to **ea**, and **e** or **i** to **eo** (sometimes **i** to **io**). Examples: **caru**, *care*, becomes **cæaru**; **weruld**, *world*, becomes **weoruld**; **miluc**, *milk*, becomes **meoloc** or **mioloc**. The change of vowel is, however, not invariable in these circumstances, and, on the whole, may be regarded as exceptional.

The explanation of this phenomenon is that the vowel sound of the following syllable is anticipated, as it were. The vocal organs, while pronouncing the **a** (properly **æ**) of **caru** (**cæru**), are already shaping

themselves to pronounce the **u**; hence the result is **cæuru**, very nearly, which is further modified into **cearu**. For **weoruld** the explanation is similar, but easier.

21. Breakings. — Before **r** + consonant, **l** + consonant, and **h** + consonant or **h** final, **a** is regularly converted into **ea**, and **e** or **i** frequently into **eo**. This change is called *breaking*, because the one vowel is, as it were, *broken* into two. Examples:—

a) **a** to **ea**: **arm** (*arm*), **earm**; **ald** (*old*), **eald**; **ahta** (*eight*), **eahta**.

b) **e** or **i** to **eo** (**io** sometimes from **i**): **erðe** (*earth*), **eorðe**; **elh** (*elk*), **eolh**; **fehtan** (*fight*), **feohtan**; **Piht** (*Pict*), **Pioht**, **Peoht**.

It must be remembered that the sound of **e** in **ea** differs materially from that of the same letter in **eo** (5; cf. 20).

The explanation of breaking lies in the fact that the vowels which experienced breaking were formed with a position of the vocal organs quite different from that concerned in the production of **r**, **l**, and **h**, as pronounced in Old English. These consonants, at the time when they caused breaking, were gutturals; the vowels that underwent breaking were palatals (strictly speaking, when we say that **a** was broken, we should rather say that it was **æ**). In the production of these consonants, the back part of the mouth

was chiefly concerned; in that of the vowels it was the forward part. Hence, in passing from the vowel position to that of the consonant, an intermediate vowel sound or glide was produced, akin in position and sound to the consonant which it preceded. Although these consonants have at present a pronunciation which cannot be called guttural, yet it is possible to pronounce a sentence like 'What ails you?' in so drawling a manner, especially as regards 'ails,' that this word shall have nearly the sound of *ā-uls*. The obscure *ŷh*-sound thus developed may be compared to the second element of the diphthong in *ea* and *eo*. Here may be adduced Shakespearian lines such as —

Strikes his breast *hard* (hah-urd), and anon he casts.

— HEN. VIII. 3. 2. 117.

Look how he makes to Cæsar, *mark* (mah-urk) him.

— JUL. CÆS. 3. 2. 18.

My *lord* (law-urd), will it please you pass along.

— RICH. III. 3. 1. 136.

In all these, meter seems to demand that the italicized words shall be pronounced as disyllabic (Abbott's *Shakespearian Grammar*, § 485).

22. Ablaut. — Ablaut (pron. *ahp'-lowt*) is a prehistoric relation existing between the vowels of different tense-stems derived from the same verbal root. Thus the relation of *i*, *a*, and *u*, in the Mod. Eng. *sing*, *sang*, *sung*, is an ablaut relation, and so is the relation of

i, *o*, *i* in the Mod. Eng. *drive*, *drove*, *driven*. In Old English the tense-stems of these verbs would be **sing-**, **sang**, **sung-**, **sung-** (104); **drīf-**, **drāf**, **drif-**, **drif-** (102). In the former, **i**, **a**, **u**, **u** stand in an ablaut relation; in the latter, **ī**, **ā**, **i**, **i**.

It must be observed that the verbal stems concerned sometimes appear in nouns and adjectives, as well as in verbs. Thus the vowel of the Mod. Eng. noun *song* stands in an ablaut relation with those of the tense-stems *sing* and *sung*. Again, in Old English, the **i** of the noun **bite**, *bite*, stands in an ablaut relation with the other vowels of the tense-stems of **bītan**, *bite*. The latter are **bīt-**, **bāt**, **bit-**, **bit-** (102), and hence the radical vowel of the noun is identical with that of the third and fourth stems.

Ablaut is not to be confounded with umlaut. Umlaut admits of explanation; ablaut must, so far as Old English is concerned, be merely accepted as a fact.

23. Stress, and the vowels of unstressed syllables.—The stressed syllable is the principal one, and usually the first one of the word, except in compounded verbs, and nouns or adjectives with the prefixes **be-**, **ge-**, and sometimes **for-**; these stress the root syllable. The laws relating to vowels hold only of stressed syllables. In unstressed syllables, especially in the second syllable of trisyllabic words, the vowel is liable to pass into a neutral sound, often represented by **e**, or to disappear

altogether. When the vowel disappears, the trisyllabic word of course becomes disyllabic: **engel**, *angel*, gen. **engles** (instead of **engeles**); **hēafod**, *head*, gen. **hēafdes** (instead of **hēafodes**). Syncope, as such disappearance is termed, is most apt to occur after a long syllable (4).

24. Representation of Old English vowels in Modern English.—The same Old English vowel letter is not always represented by the same Mod. Eng. letter, nor its sound by the same Mod. Eng. sound; yet there is a certain uniformity, differing in degree with different vowels, in the representation of both sound and letter. Some of the more regular correspondences are given in the subjoined table, though it must be understood that exceptions are numerous. The Mod. Eng. sound or letter that is first given is the commonest; the second is often comparatively rare. The figuration of the Mod. Eng. vowel sounds is that of Webster's Dictionary. For details, see Mayhew's *Synopsis of Old English Phonology*.

	OE. LETTERS.	MOD. E. LETTERS.	MOD. E. SOUNDS.	ILLUSTRATIONS.
	a	a	ā, ǣ	nama , name; land , land
But	ag	aw	ʌ	haga , haw
	ā	o, oa	ō; ō before r	hām , home; ār , oar
	æ	a	ǣ, ä	glæd , glad; fæder , father
But	æg	ai, ay	ā	brægn , brain; dæg , day
	æ	ea, ee, e	ē, ě	dæl , deal; sæd , seed; flæsc , flesh

	OE. LETTERS.	Mod. E. LETTERS.	Mod. E. SOUNDS.	ILLUSTRATIONS.
	e, e	e, ea	ĕ, ē	feðer , feather; twelf , twelve; spere , spear
But	eg	ai, ay, a	ā	regn , rain; weg , way; ðegn , thane
	ē	ee, e	ē (seldom ĕ)	cwēn , queen; hēr , here; (blētsian , bless)
	i	i	ī; ī before ht, nd, ld	fisc , fish; miht , might; blind , blind; cild , child
But	ig	i	ī	nigon , nine
	ī	i	ī, ĭ	rīm , rime; wisdōm , wisdom
	o, o	o, oa	ō, ō; ô be- fore r	bodig , body; lōng , long; bolla , bowl; hord , hoard
	ō	oo, o	ōō, ŭ, ōō	hrōf , roof; ōðer , other; bōc , book
But	ōw	ow	o	blōwan , blow
	u	u, o	ū, ōō	lufu , love; wulf , wolf
But	und	ound	ound	hund , hound
	ū	ou, ow, u	ou, ŭ	hlūd , loud; būr , bower; būtan , but
	y	ī, u, o	ī, ū	cyning , king; byrðen , bur- then; wyrm , worm
	ȳ	i	ī, ĭ	brȳd , bride; fȳst , fist
	ea	a	ă, ă, ą	weaxan , wax; heard , hard; eall , all
But	eald	old	ōld	beald , bold
	(strictly āld)			
	ēa	ea	ē, ĕ	bēacen , beacon; dēad , dead
But	ēaw	ew	ū	dēaw , dew
	eo	ea, e, u	ê, ū	eorðe , earth; beorg , berg; ceorl , churl
But	eor	ar, ear	ar	heorot , hart; heorte , heart
	ēo	ee, ie, e	ē, ĕ	dēop , deep; fēond , fiend; dēofol , devil
But	ēow	ew	ū	blēow , blew
	ie	e, ie	ĕ, ē	hierde , herd; gieldan , yield
	īe	See ē		

25. Influence of nasals.—The nasals **m** and **n** change a preceding **a** to **ɔ**. Usage is not uniform; some texts have **a** in this position, and others **ɔ**.

When a word cannot be found under a, look for it under ɔ, and conversely.

26. Influence of w.—In cases where **e** or **i** has become **eo** or **io** (20, 21), a preceding **w** is apt to change **eo** to **o** or **u**, and **io** to **u**. For example, **weruld** (*world*) becomes **weoruld** through the influence of **u**-umlaut (20), and this may then become **woruld**. Similarly, **widuwe** (*widow*) becomes **wioduwe**, and then **wuduwe**. For the **o** and **u** thus produced, **y** is sometimes found.

When o, u, or y immediately follows w, it may be suspected, though it must not be assumed, that the vowel was once eo or io, originally e or i.

Consonantal Loss and Change.

27. Loss or vocalization of w.—Some words ending in a long vowel or diphthong originally ended in **w**, and the **w** is still found in the *oblique* cases of these words. Thus, nom. **cnēo** (*knee*), gen. **cnēowes**, etc., and occasionally in the nominative, **cnēow** (47. 3).

At the end of a word, and following a short syllable which ends in a consonant, **u** often stands for original **w**, the latter having undergone vocalization in that position. When an inflectional syllable is added

beginning with a vowel, the **w** reappears. Thus, nom. **gearu** (*ready*), gen. **gearwes**, etc. (57. 5).

There is frequent loss of initial **w** in the negative forms of the verbs **wesan**, *be*, **witan**, *know*, **willan**, *will*: **næs**, *was not*, **nāt**, *knows not*, **noelde**, *would not*, etc. It also disappears in **nā(u)ht** for **nāwiht**, *naught*, **cuc** for **cwic**, *alive*, and a few other words.

28. Loss or replacement of g.—Before **d** and **n** (and before **ð** in the word **tīðian**, *grant*), **g** is often lost, the preceding vowel being lengthened by way of compensation: **mægden** and **māeden**, *maiden*; **ðegn** and **ðēn**, *thane*. Properly speaking, the palatal **g**, already in such cases pronounced almost like a vowel, becomes indistinguishable from **i** or **y** in pronunciation, and by this time its effect is simply to lengthen the vowel which precedes. In a similar manner, **ig** may be contracted into **ī**, sometimes shortened to **i**: **hungrig** and **hungri**, *hungry*; **ligeð** and **līð**, *lies* (from **licgan**); **stigrāp** and **stīrāp**, *stirrup*. The above losses are *regular* only after palatal vowels (10).

After a guttural vowel (10), after **r**, or (especially in LWS.) before **-st** and **-ð**, endings respectively of the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind., **g** frequently becomes **h**, occasionally **gh**: **genōg** and **genōh**, *enough*; **burg** and **burh**, *city*; **stīgð** and **stīhð**, *climbs*.

29. Loss of h.—Certain words ending in **h** lose the **h** before an inflectional ending beginning with a vowel,

at the same time lengthening the vowel of the stem, if short: **feorh**, *life*, gen. **fēores**; **feoh**, *property*, gen. **fēos**. There are besides a number of contract verbs (101) in which an original **h** has been lost before vowels (100); **gefēon**, *rejoice*, orig. **gefehan**.

The initial **h** of certain indefinite pronouns, and of the various forms of **habban**, *have*, is frequently lost after **ne**, *not*: **nāwðer**, **nāðer** (27) for **ne āhwæðer**, *neither*; **næfde**, *had not*.

30. Loss of m and n. — Before the spirants **f**, **s**, and **ð** there has been in some words the loss of an original **m** or **n**, with a lengthening of the preceding vowel: **ōsle**, *ousel*, orig. **amsala**; **ūs**, *us*, orig. **uns**. When the resulting vowel is **ō**, or its umlaut **ē** (17), the original vowel was **a** (q before nasal, 25): **gōs**, *goose*, orig. **gans**; **ēst**, *favor*, orig. **ansti**.

31. Metathesis of r. — In some words in which a vowel was originally preceded by **r**, the **r** has changed places with the vowel. Thus **burna**, *fountain, brook* (cf. Scottish *burn*), was originally **brun(n)a** (cf. Germ. *Brunnen*); **hors**, *horse*, orig. **hros** (cf. Germ. *Ross*).

32. Metathesis of sc. — After a vowel, **sc** frequently becomes **cs**, often represented by **hs** or **x** (2). Thus **āscian**, *ask* (cf. Germ. (*h*)*eischen*) becomes **ācsian**, **āhsian**, **āxian** (dial. Mod. Eng. *axe*).

33. **Change of d to t.**—When **d** either precedes or follows a surd (**8**) in the same word, it regularly becomes **t**. Thus from **bindan**, *bind*, the ind. pres. 2d sing. is formed by adding **-st** (though sometimes **-est**), thus, **bindst**; but, in accordance with this principle, **bindst** becomes **bintst**. So from **īecan**, *increase*, the ind. pret. 3d sing. is formed by adding **-de**, thus, **īecde**; but **īecde** becomes **īecte**.

34. **Changes of ð in conjunction with other dentals.**—Whenever **d** or **t** comes to stand immediately before **ð**, the combination becomes **tt**, which is sometimes simplified to **t** (**35**). Thus **bindeð**, ind. pres. 3d sing. of **bindan**, becomes **bindð** by elision of the **e** in an unstressed syllable (**23**); but **bindð** invariably appears as **bint**; **bīdð** and **bītð**, respectively from **bīdan**, *await*, and **bītan**, *bite*, both become **bītt** or **bīt**.

By a somewhat similar change, **sð** often becomes **st**. For **ðs** is usually found **ss**, which may be simplified to **s** (**35**).

Suspect that t near the end of a verb may stand for d or ð, or be the result of contraction.

35. **Gemination simplified.**—Double consonants are of frequent occurrence, especially before an inflectional syllable beginning with a vowel. Thus **swimman**, *swim*, **bedde**, *to a bed*, etc. But gemination is frequently simplified, or, in other words, the sec-

ond consonant is dropped, (*a*) at the end of a word, (*b*) before another consonant, (*c*) in certain other situations. Thus:—

(*a*) **mannes**, gen. sing., but **mann** or **man**, *man*, nom. sing.; (*b*) **ealles**, gen. sing. of **eal**(1), *all*, but **ealne**, acc. sing. masc.; (*c*) **ōðer**, *other*, with gen. plur. ending **ōðerra**, but usually **ōðera**, **ōðra**.

36. Gemination pointing to original j.—In many words which contain a double consonant, especially those whose stem vowel is **e**, the stem was originally followed by **j** (pron. *y*), and the consonant was not geminated, but single: **sellan**, *give*, orig. **saljan**. This was always the case with words containing **cg**, which, it will be remembered, is the representative of **gg** (11): **sęgan**, *say*, orig. **sagjan**; **hrycg**, *back*, orig. **hrugjo-**.

37. Grammatical change.—As between certain related words, there is an interchange of **ð** and **d**, **s** and **r**: inf. **cēosan**, *choose*, past part. **coren**; inf. **cweðan**, *say*, past part. **cweden** (cf. the noun **cwide**, *discourse*). This is technically known as grammatical change. Under similar circumstances, there is a like change between **h** and **g**, and **h** and **w**, but owing to a partial disappearance of the **h** (cf. 100) this is less noticeable: **slihð**, *strikes* (inf. **slēan**), **slōg**, *struck*; **siehð**, *sees* (inf. **sēon**), **sāwon** (*they*) *saw*.

INFLECTION.



Declension of Nouns.

38. Gender of nouns. — Nouns are either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Names of males are masculine, and those of females feminine, except **mægden**, **māden** (28), *girl*, **wīf**, *wife*, and **bearn**, **cild**, *child*, which are neuter. The gender of most nouns must be learned from the dictionary; but all nouns ^{which are not neuter} ending in **-a** are masculine, and belong to the weak declension (53); all ending in **-dōm**, **-els**, **-ere**, **-hād**, and **-scipe**, and most in **-end**, with *names of persons* in **-ing** and **-ling**, are strong masculines; those ending in **-estre**, **-nes**, **-rāden**, **-ð(u)** (**-ðo**), **-ung**, most in **-u**, and a few *abstracts* in **-ing**, are strong feminines.

Compound nouns take the gender of their last component; thus **wīfman**, *woman*, is masculine, because **man(n)** is masculine.

39. Strong and weak nouns. — According to their declension, all nouns are either strong or weak. The nominative of weak nouns always ends in a vowel, either **-a** or **-e**, but not all nouns ending in **-e** are weak.

40. Cases of nouns and adjectives. — Old English has six cases, though in general only four are distinguished. These four are the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative; the two additional are the vocative, the case of direct address, and the instrumental, which is virtually indistinguishable from the dative, except in adjectives. *Also LOCATIVE subsumed under ADVERB.*

The nominative is used as in English. The genitive is the case denoting possessor, source, or cause; its sign is *of*. The dative denotes the indirect object of an action; its sign is *to* or *for*. The accusative denotes the direct object; it has no sign. The instrumental denotes the means by which an action is performed; its sign is *by*, or *with* *through* *(agency)*.

The instrumental of nouns is included in the declensions under the dative.

41. Uniform case endings. — All nouns, whatever their declension, end in -um in the dative plural. The genitive plural always ends in -a, either appended directly to the stem, or with -en- (rarely -r-) interposed (**43. 6**); *or -ena* *adly* *the* accordingly the genitive plural, to speak more strictly, always ends in -a or -ena (very rarely -ra).

Instead of -um is occasionally found -un, -on, or -an, *LW-* and in later Old English these endings grow common.

42. Strong masculine endings. — All strong masculines, except umlaut masculines (**46**) and those in -u (**45**), take the following as regular endings (for exceptions

see 43. 5-9; 44. 4), where — represents the form of the nominative singular:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A. —	-as
G. -es	-a
D. -e	-um

43. Masculines ending in a consonant. — The greater number of strong masculines are declined like **fisc**, *fish*:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A. fisc	fiscas
G. fisces	fisca
D. fisce	fiscum

1. A very few words ending in **-cg** may insert **-e** before the endings of the plural: **secgeas**, etc. (18).

2. If the radical vowel of the nominative is **æ** before a single consonant, this is changed in the plural to **a**: **dæg**, *day*, but plur. **dagas**, **daga**, **dagum**.

3. Nouns ending in **h** lose this consonant before a case ending, and in so doing lengthen the radical vowel or diphthong. Thus **fearh**, *swine*, but **fēares**, etc. (29). If the **h** is preceded by a vowel, the vowel of the ending is lost: **scōh**, *shoe*, but nom. plur. **scōs**, not **scōas**.

4. Disyllabic nouns generally lose the vowel of the second syllable before all endings, when the stem is long by nature or position (4, 23), if the second syllable is not long by position. Otherwise the vowel of the

second syllable is regularly preserved. Examples are as follows:—

a. Stem long by nature, and second syllable short: *ēðel*, *country*, gen. *ēðles*, not *ēðeles*. *engel*

b. Stem long by position, and second syllable long by position: *hengest*, *stallion*, dat. *hengeste*, not *hengste*.

c. Stem long by position (vowel before two consonants), and second syllable short: *dryhten*, *lord*, gen. *dryhtnes*, not *dryhtenes*.

d. Stem short by nature, and second syllable short: *heofon*, *heaven*, dat. *heofone*, not *heofne*.

Occasional exceptions are found: *dryhtenes*, *heofne*. The retention or loss of the vowel is in part dependent upon the date of the particular text.

5. In a few words there is an occasional gen. and dat. sing. and nom. plur. in **-a**: *feld*, *field*, *ford*, *ford*, *winter*, *winter*, *sumer*, *summer*, and a few others of rare occurrence.

6. Nouns in **-end**, originally present participles (143), take the gen. plur. in **-ra**, instead of **-a**, and the plur. nom. voc. acc. in **-e**, or without ending, as well as in **-as**, the latter being rare. Thus nom. plur. ~~interend~~ *hælende*, as well as *hælendas*; gen. *hælendra*.

7. A single word, *bearu*, *grove*, has the nom. sing. in **-u**, and takes **w** instead of the **-u** before all inflectional endings: nom. sing. *bearu*, gen. *bearwes*, etc. (27).

8. The noun **fæder**, *father*, frequently omits the terminations of the sing. gen. and dat.

9. **Hæleð**, *hero*, and **mōnað**, *month*, sometimes omit the termination of the nom. acc. plur.

44. **Masculines in -e**. — The declension of strong masculines in **-e** is almost identical with that of **fisc**. The sing. nom. acc. voc. takes **-e**; other exceptions will be noted below. **Ʒende**, *end*, is thus declined:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A.	Ʒende	Ʒendas
G.	Ʒendes	Ʒenda
D.	Ʒende	Ʒendum

1. Here belong important classes of nouns ending in **-ere** (143) and **-scipe**, besides some others. They are much less numerous, however, than those of the preceding declension.

2. The noun **here**, *army*, sometimes takes **-g-** or **-ig-** before the endings of the singular, and the same, or **-ige-**, before the endings of the plural: **her(i)ges**, etc. Two words sometimes have the gen. plur. in **-ig(e)a**, **-ia**: **wine**, *friend*, **Dene**, *Danes*, gen. plur. **winigea**, **Deniga**, **Denia** (18).

3. Nouns ending in **-ce** may retain the **-e** before the endings of the plural: **læce**, *physician*, nom. plur. **læceas**, as well as **læcas** (18).

4. A few masculine nouns in **-e** occasionally take the nom. acc. plur. in **-e**, instead of **-as**: **wine**, or

winas, *friend*. The following are found in the plural only: **lēode** (also **lēoda**), *people*, **ielde**, *men*, **ielfe**, *elves*, and the proper nouns **Engle**, *Angles*, **Seaxe**, *Saxons*, **Mierce**, *Mercians*.

45. Masculines in -u. — Here belong the words **sunu**, *son*, **wudu**, *wood*, **me(o)du**, *mead*, **magu**, *boy*, **bre(o)go**, *prince*, **heoru**, *sword*, **lagu**, *lake*, **si(o)du**, *custom*, **spitu**, *spit*. **Sunu** is thus declined: —

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A. sunu	suna
G. suna	suna
D. suna	sunum

1. The ending of the nom. sing. **-u** (sometimes **-o**) is liable to intrude everywhere except in the dat. plur. and gen. sing. and plur.

2. Besides **sunu** and **wudu**, the nouns above given are scarcely found except in the nom. acc. sing.

3. In later Old English these words begin to assume the endings of **fisc** (43): gen. **sunes**, nom. plur. **sunas**, etc.

46. Umlaut masculines. — Here belong **fōt**, *foot*, **tōð**, *tooth*; **man(n)**, *man*; **fēond**, *enemy*, **frēond**, *friend*, (142); **brōðor**, *brother*. These take umlaut of the radical vowel (17) in the dat. sing. and nom. voc. acc. plur., and have no ending in those cases. **Fōt** is thus declined: —

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A. fōt	fēt
G. fōtes	fōta
D. fēt (fōte)	fōtum

1. **Brōðor** is irregular, forming its nom. voc. acc. plur. as **brōðor** or **brōðru**, instead of **brēðer**.

2. Occasionally there is found a plur. **fōtas**, **tōðas**, instead of **fēt**, **tēð**.

3. **Fēond** and **frēond** usually have dat. sing. **fēonde**, **frēonde**, sometimes plur. **fēond**, **frēond**, or even **fēondas**, **frēondas**.

47. **Strong neuters.** — In general, the chief distinction between the declension of masculines and that of neuters is in the plur. nom. acc. Where the masculine has **-as**, the neuter, if its radical syllable be short, has **-u**, or sometimes **-o**; *if long, has no ending whatever* (cf. 23, and especially its final sentence). When the *radical syllable is short*, the paradigm accordingly is (**hof**, *dwelling*):—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.A. hof	hofu
G. hofes	hofa
D. hofs	hofum

With a *long radical syllable* (4), the paradigm is (**word**, *word*):—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.A. word	word
G. wordes	worda
D. worde	wordum

1. Disyllables are sometimes without ending in the nom. acc. plur., and sometimes take **-u**: **wāp(e)n** and **wāpnū**, *weapons*; but usually **māgenu**, *forces*, **nīetenu**, *cattle*, **earfoðu**, *labors*, **wæt(e)ru**, *waters*, **hēafdu**, *heads*, **wundor**, *wonders*.

2. Occasionally the nom. acc. plur. takes **-o** or **-a** instead of **-u**.

3. **Trēo**, *tree*, and **cnēo**, *knee*, take **-w** before all case endings, and sometimes in the nom. sing.: **trēowes**, etc. (27). Nom. acc. plur. **trēowu**, **cnēowu**.

4. For a change in the radical vowel of the plural, see 43. 2: **fæt**, *vessel*, but **fatu**, *fata*, *fatum*.

5. For the loss of final **h**, see 43. 3: **feoh**, *money*, *fee*, gen. **fēos**.

6. For the loss (syncopation) of the vowel of the second syllable, see 43. 4: **hēafod**, *head*, nom. plur. **hēafdu**, not (usually) **hēafodu**; **tungol**, *star*, nom. plur. **tunglu**, not **tungolu**; **wæter**, *water*, gen. **wæteres**, not (regularly) **wætres**. Syncopation is, however, less constant in the nom. acc. plur. of neuters, in cases corresponding to 43. 4. *a*.

7. Neuters ending in **-en** and **-et** sometimes double the final consonant before a case ending: **ǣfen**, *even* (*-ing*), gen. **ǣfenes** or **ǣfennes**, etc. These nouns retain the **-e** of the second syllable.

48. Neuters in **-e**. — These are declined like **word**, except that the sing. nom. voc. acc. has **-e**, and the

plur. nom. voc. acc. has **-u**. Paradigm (**wīte**, *punishment*):—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A.	wīte	wītu
G.	wītes	wīta
D.	wīte	witum

1. If the **-e** of the nom. sing. is preceded by **c** or **g**, the endings of the plural *may* be preceded by **i** (or **e**): **rīcu** or **rīciu**, **rīca** or **rīcia**, etc. (18).

49. **Neuters in -u**.—These are declined like **bearu** (43. 7), except that they take **-u** in the plur. nom. acc., instead of **-as**. There are only half a dozen in all, and these are not of common occurrence: **bealu**, *evil*, gen. **bealwes**, etc.

50. **Irregular neuters**.—The three words **lamb**, *lamb*, **cealf**, *calf*, **æg**, *egg*, and sometimes **cild**, *child*, are declined regularly in the singular, but take **r** in the plural before the endings **-u**, **-a**, **-um**: **lamb**, gen. **lambes**, but nom. plur. **lambru**.

In LWS. the regular forms, without **r**, occur.

51. **Strong feminines**.—Feminine disyllables ending in **-u**, and having a short radical syllable, belong here; monosyllables with a long radical syllable, and most disyllables, discard the **-u** of the nom. sing. Abstracts, though long, follow *a*.

a) Paradigm of the short stems, **giefu**, *gift*:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V. giefu , -o	giefa , -e
G. giefe	— giefa (-ena)
D. giefe —	— giefum
A. giefe	giefa , -e

Occasionally the ending **-u** or **-o** is found in the oblique cases of the singular and in the nom. acc. plural. **Duru**, *door*, has **-a** in the gen. dat. sing., and in the whole plural except the dative. Two or three nouns in **-u** take **-w** before the ending in the oblique cases: **beadu**, *battle*, gen. **beadwe**, etc.

b) Paradigm of the long stems and polysyllables, **glōf**, *glove*:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V. glōf	glōfa , -e
G. glōfe	glōfa
D. glōfe	glōfum
A. glōfe	glōfa , -e

1. A few nouns discard the **-e** of the acc. sing.: **dāed**, *deed*, **tīd**, *time*, **woruld** (20, 26), *world*.

2. Only rarely does the gen. plur. of long stems take **-(e)na**.

3. Disyllables in **-ung** often have **-a** instead of **e** in the dat. sing., and sometimes in the gen. acc. sing.: **leornung**, *learning*, dat. **leornunga**. The words **hand**, *hand*, **flōr**, *floor*, and **woruld**, *world*, occasionally make the same change.

4. Disyllables syncopate the vowel of the second

syllable according to 43. 4: *sāwol*, *soul*, gen. *sāwle*, etc.

5. Polysyllables in *-nes*, *-en*, *-el*, and *-et* double the final consonant when a syllable is added, and retain the preceding *-e*: gen. dat. acc. sing. *ēaðmōdnesse*, *humility*, *byrðenne*, *burden*, etc.

52. **Umlaut feminines.**— These modify the root vowel by umlaut in the dat. sing. and nom. voc. acc. plur., and often in the gen. sing., that is, change *ā* to *æ*, *o* to *e*, *ō* to *ē*, *u* to *y*, and *ū* to *ȳ*. The gen. sing., and occasionally the dat. sing., is sometimes formed regularly, without umlaut, and with the ending *-e*. Paradigm, (*gōs*, *goose*):—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A.	<i>gōs</i>	<i>gēs</i>
G.	<i>gēs</i> , <i>gōse</i>	<i>gōsa</i>
D.	<i>gēs</i>	<i>gōsum</i>

The principal nouns which belong here are: *āc*, *oak*, *gāt*, *goat*; *bōc*, *book*, *brōc*, *trousers*, *gōs*, *goose*, *wlōh*, *fringe*; *burg*, *castle*, *city*, *furh*, *furrow*, *sulh*, *plough*, *turf*, *turf*; *cū*, *cow*, *grūt*, *grout*, *grits*, *lūs*, *louse*, *mūs*, *mouse*, *ðrūh*, *trough*; *ēa*, *river*; *niht*, *night*.

1. The dat. (gen.) sing. of *burg* is usually *byrig*, not *byrg*.

2. *Mōdor*, *mother*, and *dohtor*, *daughter*, are declined like *brōðor* (46. 1), except that *mōdor* has only the nom. acc. plur. *mōdru*, *-a*, and both may have an umlaut gen. sing. in LWS. (but usually *mōdor*, *dohtor*).

3. **Sweostor**, *sister*, is without umlaut in any case; it remains **sweostor** in every case except the gen. plur. **sweostra** and dat. plur. **sweostrum**.

53. **Weak nouns**. — Masculines end in **-a**, feminines and neuters in **-e**; but the neuters may be conveniently disregarded, only **ēage**, *eye*, and **ēare**, *ear*, belonging to this declension. Paradigms (**mōna**, *moon*, **tunge**, *tongue*): —

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
Sing. N.V.	mōna	tunge
G. }	mōnān	
D. }		tungan
A. }		
Plur. N.V.A.	mōnān	tungan
G.	mōnena	tungenā
D.	mōnum	tungum

1. The number of feminines thus declined is comparatively small. The commonest are perhaps **eorðe**, *earth*, **heorte**, *heart*, **lufe**, *love*, **cirice**, *church*, **tunge**, *tongue*, **hearpe**, *harp*, **sunne**, *sun*, **nædre**, *viper*, and **ælmesse**, *alms*. The masculines are, on the contrary, very numerous.

2. The declension of the neuters **ēage** and **ēare** differs from that of the feminines only in the acc. sing., which is like the nom. Their gen. plur. is often **ēagna**, **ēarna**.

3. The weak feminine **heofone**, *heaven*, should be distinguished from the strong masculine **heofon**. Besides the weak **lufe**, there is also a strong **lufu**, *love* (51. a).

54. Proper names. — Native names are declined like common nouns, except that feminines ending in **-burg** take the dative in **-e** and are without umlaut. Foreign names are sometimes naturalized, and sometimes take their original case endings, but not always with entire consistency. The words **Cęnt**, **Cęrt**, **Ī**, **Tęnet**, and **Wiht** are indeclinable, except that **Wiht** has the gen. **Wihte**.

Declension of Adjectives.

55. Weak and strong adjectives. — Adjectives are declined weak when in the comparative, and usually when in the superlative; when ordinals (except **ōðer**, *second*, **78**, **80**); when preceded by a demonstrative; when used as masculine or feminine nouns preceded by the definite article; in direct address; sometimes when preceded by a possessive pronoun; and exceptionally in poetry in place of the strong adjective. Otherwise adjectives are always used in the strong form.

56. Strong declension of adjectives. — Here it is necessary to distinguish between long monosyllables on the one hand, and short monosyllables (comparatively few) and disyllables on the other.

57. Disyllables and short monosyllables. — Paradigm, **glæd**, *glad* :—

	MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
Sing. N. V.	glæd	glæd	gladu
G.	glades		<i>glædre</i>

	MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
D.	<i>gladum</i>		<i>glædre</i>
A.	<i>glædne</i>	glæd	glade
I.	glade		
Plur. N.V.A.	<i>glade</i>	gladu, -e	glada, -e
G.		<i>glædrū</i>	
D.		gladum	

1. Italicized words indicate differences from the noun declension; cf. these with the pronominal declensions (81, 84, 85).

2. When the radical vowel is *æ*, it is changed as in the paradigm. Otherwise it remains unchanged.

3. Disyllables take the same endings as in the paradigm, but frequently syncopate the vowel of the second syllable before an ending beginning with a vowel, as in *ēadig*, *blessed*, gen. *ēadges* (23; cf. 43. 4), and sometimes conform the nom. sing. fem. to the masc. and neut., and the neut. plur. nom. voc. acc. to the sing.: *hālig*, *holy*, not *hāl(i)gu*.

4. For the ending *-u* sometimes occurs *-o*, and for *-um* the LWS. *-on*, *-an* (cf. 41).

5. Adjectives ending in *-u* (*-o*) change the *u* to *w* before vowels (27): *gearu*, *ready*, gen. *gearwes*, etc.

58. Long monosyllables. — The only difference between the declension of the long and that of the short monosyllables is that the ending *-u* of the latter is dropped, and that the radical vowel always remains unchanged. *Paradigm, *gōd*, *good*:—

	MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
Sing. N.	gōd	gōd	gōd
Plur. N.	gōde	gōd	gōde, -a

1. Adjectives ending in **h** drop the **h** in disyllabic forms, and lengthen the radical vowel or diphthong (29): **ðweorh**, *transverse*, gen. **ðwēores**; but **hēah**, *high*, often assimilates the final **h** to a following consonant: **hēanne**, **hēarra**, etc. In LWS. the **h** is often changed to **g** before a vowel: **hēagum**, etc.

2. Words ending in a double consonant usually retain this only before a vowel (35).

59. **Adjectives in -e.** — These are quite numerous. They are declined like the short monosyllables, except that *they always retain their -e when no other ending is provided, but lose it before an ending.* Paradigm, **grēne**, *green*: —

	MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
Sing. N.V.	grēne	grēne	grēnu
G.	grēnes		grēnre
Plur. N.V.A.	grēne	grēnu, -e	grēna, -e

From an acc. masc. sing., like **grēnne**, **blīðne**, for example, it is therefore *not* safe to infer a dictionary form **grēn**, **blīð**.

In consulting the lexicon, care should be taken to distinguish adjectives in -e from such as end in a consonant.

60. **Weak declension of adjectives.** — This is the same as that of nouns, except that the gen. plur. is regularly

formed in **-ra** (only exceptionally **-a** or the regular weak ending **-ena**). Paradigm, **gōda**, *the good* : —

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Sing. N.V.	gōda	gōde	gōde
G.		gōdan	
D.		gōdan	
A.	gōdan	gōdan	gōde
Plur. N.V.A.		gōdan	
G.		gōdra	
D.		gōdum	

1. In LWS. **-um** frequently becomes **-an**.

2. When, in consequence of contraction, too many **r**'s or **n**'s are brought together, one of them is rejected. Thus **gearu**, *ready*, forms a comparative **gearura**. This comparative, in turn, would form a gen. plur. **gearu-rara**. By contraction this would reduce to **gear(u)-r(a)ra**; but the three **r**'s are simplified to two, and the resulting gen. plur. stands as **gearra**.

61. **The present participle.** — The present participle in **-ende** is not to be confounded with the noun in **-end** (for which see 43. 6). It is declined like **grēne** (59). When used in the predicate as nom. or acc. it is generally uninflected. The present participle, like the adjective, is also declined weak.

62. **The past participle.** — The past participle has the double declension of the adjective, both strong and weak. When used in the predicate it is generally indeclinable, or ends like the strong masculine.

Comparison of Adjectives.

63. Regular comparison. — The comparative is formed by adding **-ra** to the stem of the positive, and the superlative by adding **-osta** (**-esta**); with the latter cf. Greek **-ιστος**. The final **-a** represents the masculine termination of the weak adjective (60), and undergoes all the replacements of the weak declension. More rarely the superlative is found in **-ost** (**-est**), which is then regarded as strong. A final **-e** of the positive is dropped in comparison (e.g. **ēaðe**, *easy*; comp. **īeðra**, not **īeðera**) and a radical **æ** becomes **a** in the superlative (e.g. **smæl**, *small*, superl. **smalost**, not **smælost**; cf. 43. 2).

64. Comparison without umlaut. — This is the usual mode: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
heard, <i>hard</i>	heardra	heardost, -esta
lēof, <i>dear</i>	lēofra	lēofost, -esta
rice, <i>powerful</i>	ricra	ricost, -esta
smæl, <i>small</i>	smæla	smalost, -esta

65. Comparison with umlaut. — This is followed by a few adjectives. The superlative generally ends in **-esta**: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
eald, <i>old</i>	ieldra	ieldesta
lang, <i>long</i>	lēngra	lēngesta
geong, <i>young</i>	giengra	giengesta
sceort, <i>short</i>	sciertra	sciertesta
hēah, <i>high</i>	hiehra (hierra)	hiēh(e)sta
grēat, <i>great</i>	grietra	grīetesta
ēaðe, <i>easy</i>	īeðra	īeðesta

1. For some of these, unumlauted forms are also found: **hēahra**, **hēahsta**, etc.

2. Syncope of **e** in the superlative occurs in LWS.: **lengsta**, etc.; in **hiehsta** this is also EWS.

3. For **-ost** may occur **-ust**.

66. Different stems in comparison. — In the following the comparative and superlative are not formed from the same stem as the positive: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
gōd , <i>good</i>	{ bēt(e)ra sēlla , sēlra	bētst(a) sēlest(a)
yfel , <i>bad</i>	wlersa	wier(re)st(a)
micel , <i>great</i>	māra	māest(a)
lȳtel , <i>small</i>	lāssa	lāest(a)

67. Comparison defective. — In four cases the positive is wanting as an adjective, but may be supplied as an adverb or preposition: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
(feor, far)	fierra	fierrest(a)
(nēah, near)	nēarra	nīehst(a)
(ǣr, earlier)	ǣrra	ǣrest(a)
(fore, before)	furðra	fyrst(a)

68. Superlatives in -ma. — Besides the superlative in **-est**, there is one in **-ma** (cf. Lat. *pri-mus*). Two examples are found: **forma**, *the first*; **hindema**, *the hindmost*.

69. Superlatives in -ma + -esta = -mest(a). — These double superlatives, as they may be called, are chiefly

formed from adverbs and prepositions. The comparative is peculiar in being *generally* formed in *-erra*, instead of *-ra* : —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
(sīð, <i>late</i>)	sīðra	sīðemest
(læt, <i>late</i>)	lætra	lætemest
(inne, <i>within</i>)	innerra	innemest
(ūte, <i>without</i>)	ūterra, yterra	ūtemest, ytemest
(ufan, <i>above</i>)	uferra, yferra	ufemest, yfemest
(niðan, <i>below</i>)	niðerra	niðemest
(fore, <i>before</i>)	furðra	fyrrest
(æfter, <i>after</i>)	æfterra	æftemest
(mid, <i>mid</i>)		midmest
(norð, <i>northward</i>)	norðerra, nyrðerra	norðmest
(sūð, <i>southward</i>)	sūðerra, syðerra	sūðmest
(ēast, <i>eastward</i>)	ēasterra	ēastmest
(west, <i>westward</i>)	westerra	westmest

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

70. Adverbs formed from adjectives. — Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the addition of *-e*, *-lice*, and *-unga* or *-inga*. Examples are: **wīð**, *wide*, **wīde**, *widely*; **swīð**, *strong*, **swīðe**, *very*; **sōð**, *true*, **sōðlice**, *truly*; **eall**, *all*, **eallunga**, **eallinga**, *entirely*. Occasionally *-unga*, *-inga* is employed to form adverbs from other parts of speech.

71. Adjectives in the genitive as adverbs. — The ending *-es* of the gen. sing. neut. is employed to form a few adverbs from adjectives: **ealles**, *altogether*; **ðwēores** (58. 1), *perversely*, etc.

72. **Adjectives in the dative plural as adverbs.** — Examples are: **miclum**, *very*; **lȳtlum**, *little*.

73. **Adjectives in the accusative as adverbs.** — Examples are: **full**, *fully*; **genōg**, *enough*.

74. **Adverbs from nouns.** — From the genitive: **dæges**, *by day*; **nīedes**, *needs*; etc. From the instrumental: **sāre**, *sore*, etc. From the dative plural: **dropmælum**, *drop by drop*, etc.

75. **Adverbs of place.** — These are of three classes, according as they answer the question, *Where? Whither? or Whence?* Examples are: —

WHERE?	WHITHER?	WHENCE?
ſ̅æ̅r	ſ̅ider	ſ̅q̅nan
hwæ̅r	hwider	hwq̅nan
hēr	hider	heonan

76. **Comparison of adverbs.** — Adverbs from adjectival stems are regularly compared by adding **-or** for the comparative and **-ost** for the superlative. Example: **strangor**, *more strongly*, **strangost**, *most strongly* (cf. 65).

77. **Irregular comparison of adverbs.** — A few adverbs have no termination in the comparative. They are always monosyllabic, and have usually undergone umlaut. Such are **bet**, *better*; **mā**, **mā̅**, *more*; **nēar**, *nearer*; etc.

Numerals.

78. Numerals. — The numerals are as follows:—

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.
1 . . . ān	forma, āresta
2 . . . twēgen, twā (tū)	ōðer, æfterra
3 . . . ðrie, ðrēo	ðridda
4 . . . fēower	fēorða
5 . . . fif	fīfta
6 . . . siex	siexta
7 . . . seofon	seoforða
8 . . . eahta	eahtoða
9 . . . nigon	nigoða
10 . . . tien	tēoða
11 . . . endlefan	endlefta
12 . . . twelf	twelfta
13 . . . ðrēotiene	ðrēotēoða
14 . . . fēowertiene	fēowertēoða
15 . . . fiftiene	fiftēoða
16 . . . siextiene	siextēoða
17 . . . seofontiene	seofontēoða
18 . . . eahtatiene	eahtatēoða
19 . . . nigontiene	nigontēoða
20 . . . twēntig	twēntigoða
21 . . . ān and twēntig	ān and twēntigoða
30 . . . ðritig	ðritigoða
40 . . . fēowertig	fēowertigoða
50 . . . fiftig	fiftigoða
60 . . . siextig	siextigoða
70 . . . hundseofontig	hundseofontigoða
80 . . . (hund)eahtatig	hundeahtigoða
90 . . . hundnigontig	hundnigontigoða
100 . . . hund, hundred, hundertig	
110 . . . hundendlefantig	hundendleftigoða
120 . . . hundtwelftig	hundtwelftigoða
200 . . . twā hund, tū hund	
1000 . . . ðūsēnd	

1. Other ordinals for 1 are **fyresta**, **fyrresta**.

2. Another form of ordinal for 21 is **ān ēac twēntigum**.

3. **Endlefan** and **twelf** probably stand for **ānlif** and **twalif** (representing **twālif**). The **-lif** may mean *left*. After counting on the fingers up to 10, *one left* (**ānlif**) would be 11; *two left* (**twālif**), 12. The final **-an** (**-on**) of **endlefan** may have been added after the analogy of **seofon**, **nigon**, etc.

4. Fractions are usually formed by the help of **dāel**, *part*: **ðridda dāel**, *one-third*; **seofodā dāel**, *one-seventh*. For *one and a half* occurs **ōðer healf** (cf. Germ. *andert-halb*); so **ðridde healf**, *two and a half*; in other words, the OE. ordinal indicates the cardinal from which $\frac{1}{2}$ must be subtracted.

5. Interesting forms, which actually occur, are: 19, **ān lās twēntig**; 39, **ān lās fēowertig**; 59, **ānes wana siextig** (cf. Greek *ένος δέοντες έλκοσι*); 450, **fiftig and fēower hund**, **fifte healf hund**; 482, **fēower hund and twā and hundeahtatig**; 100,000, **ān hund ðūsenda**; 1,500,000, **fiftiene hund ðūsend**. Note also **fiftiena sum**, *one of fifteen*, i.e. *with fourteen companions*.

79. Declension of cardinals. — **Ān** is declined like **gōd** (58), but with acc. sometimes **æne**, inst. **āne**. When declined weak, **āna**, it signifies *alone*. **Twēgen** is declined thus: —

MASCULINE	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
N.A. twēgen	twā, tū	twā
G.	twēg(r)a	
D.	twāem, twām	

So also is declined **bēgen**, *both*. **Ǿrie**, **Ǿrēo** is declined:—

MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
N.A. Ǿrie	Ǿrēo	Ǿrēo
G.	Ǿrēora	
D.	Ǿrim	

The cardinals between 3 and 20 are usually indeclinable. Those ending in **-tig** are sometimes treated as neuter nouns (in which case they are followed by a partitive genitive), sometimes as adjectives, and are sometimes uninflected. **Hund** and **Ǿūsend** are sometimes undeclined, but there is also a plural of **hund**, nom. **hunde**, dat. **hundum**; and of **Ǿūsend**, nom. **Ǿūsendu**, gen. **-da, -dra**, dat. **-dum**. These numerals are always followed by the genitive.

80. Declension of ordinals.—All are declined like weak adjectives (60), except **ōǾer**, *second*, which is strong.

Pronouns.

81. Personal pronouns. —

FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.
Sing. N. ic	Ǿū
G. mīn	Ǿīn
D. mē	Ǿē
A. mē	Ǿē

FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.
Dual N.	wit	git
G.	uncer	incer
D.	unc	inc
A.	unc	inc
Plur. N.	wē	gē
G.	ūre	ēower
D.	ūs	ēow
A.	ūs	ēow

THIRD PERSON.		
MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
Sing. N.	hrē	hit
G.	his	hēo
D.	him	hi(e)re
A.	hi(e)ne	hi(e)re
Plur. N.A.	hit	hī(e)
G.	hī(e)	
D.	hi(e)ra, heora	
	him	

1. Less common forms are: in the accusative, **mec**, **ðec**, **ūsic**, **ēowic**; **hī(e)** for **hēo**, and conversely. **Hio** is frequent, parallel with **hēo**, and **ūser** is found for **ūre**.

82. **Reflexive pronouns.** — In place of the reflexive, which does not exist as an independent form, is used the personal pronoun (81).

83. **Possessive pronouns.** — Two sorts of possessives must be distinguished, the declinable and the indeclinable. All of these are identical in form with the genitive of the personal pronoun, except **sīn**, which is formed from a lost reflexive. The declinable pos-

sessives are **mīn**, *my*, **ṭīn**, *thy*, **ūre**, *our*, **ēower**, *your*, **sīn**, *his*, and the seldom used **uncer**, *of us two*, and **incer**, *of you two*. These follow the strong declension of adjectives (57, 58). The *indeclinables* are **his**, *his*, **hi(e)re**, *her*, and **hi(e)ra**, *their*, the genitives of the *third* personal pronoun.

84. The demonstrative 'that.' — The pronoun **se**, **sēo**, **ṭæt**, is at once the equivalent of Mod. Eng. *that* and of the article. Like *that*, it is employed in a relative as well as a demonstrative sense, and frequently does duty for the third personal pronoun. The demonstrative pronouns have an instrumental case, as does the neuter of the interrogative **hwæt**.

	MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
Sing. N.	se (emphatic sē)	ṭæt	sēo
G.	ṭæs		ṭære
D.	ṭæm (ṭām)		ṭære
A.	ṭone	ṭæt	ṭā
I.	ṭȳ , ṭon		
Plur. N.A.		ṭā	
G.		ṭāra (ṭæra)	
D.		ṭæm (ṭām)	

1. The *conjunction* **ṭæt**, and the *adverb* **ṭā** (= *there*, *then*, etc.), must not be confounded with the *pronoun*.

2. Parallel with **se**, **sēo**, is a rare **ṭe**, **ṭēo**, which eventually supplants the former.

3. **ṭæm**, **ṭām** becomes **ṭan**, **ṭon** in such words as **siṭṭan**, *since* (= **sīṭ ṭām**).

4. The forms of this pronoun should be carefully distinguished from those of the next.

85. The demonstrative 'this.' — Mod. Eng. *this* is represented by the demonstrative **ðes**, **ðēos**, **ðis**.

	MASCULINE.	NEUTER.	FEMININE.
Sing. N.	ðes	ðis	ðēos
G.	ðis(s)es		ðisse
D.	ðis(s)um		ðisse
A.	ðisne	ðis	ðās
I.	ðȳs		
Plur. N.A.		ðās	
G.		ðissa	
D.		ðis(s)um	

1. Alternative or occasional forms are nsf. **ðīos**; gsf. dsf. **ðis(se)re**; dat. **ðiosum** (20).

86. **Minor demonstratives.** — Less important demonstratives are **ilca**, *same*, which is declined weak, and **self**, *self*, which takes both declensions.

87. **Relative pronouns.** — The office of the relative is assumed :

a) by the demonstrative **se**, **sēo**, **ðæt**, the reference being rendered explicit by the case form.

b) by the demonstrative **se**, **sēo**, **ðæt**, with the particle **ðe** appended.

c) by the indeclinable **ðe**, the reference being rendered explicit by an appended personal pronoun in the proper case form.

d) by the particle **ðe** alone, representing all numbers, genders, and cases, the reference being much less explicit.

Illustrations of each of these modes would be:—

- a) **Se stān, ðone ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**
 (The stone, which the builders rejected.)
- b) **Se stān, ðone ðe ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**
- c) **Se stān, ðe hine ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**
- d) **Se stān, ðe ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**

88. Interrogative pronouns.—The most important is **hwā**, *who?* of both genders, with its neuter **hwæt**, *what? what sort of a?*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
N.		hwā	hwæt
G.		hwæs	
D.		hwæm (hwām)	
A.	hwone		hwæt
I.			hwȳ, hwon

Hwilc, *which?* **hwæðer**, *which of two?* and **hūlic**, *of what sort?* are declined like strong adjectives (57, 58).

89. Indefinite pronouns.—The indefinites are:—

a) **ān**, *sum, a, a certain*, **ænig**, *any*, **nān**, **nænig**, *no, none*, **ælc**, **gehwile**, *each*, **ægðer**, **āhwæðer**, *either*, **nāhwæðer**, *neither*, **ōðer**, *other*, **swilc**, *such*, are declined like strong adjectives.

b) **āwiht**, **ōht**, *anything*, and **nāwiht**, **nōht**, *nothing*, with the compounds of **-hwega** (**hwæthwega**, *anything*, etc.) are indeclinable.

c) **hwā**, *any one* (and its compounds) is declined like the interrogative.

d) Indefinite relatives are formed from the interrogatives by **swā-swā**: **swā-hwā-swā**, *whoever*, etc.

e) **man** (originally **mann**), *one* (cf. French *on*, Ger. *man*), is used only in the nom. sing.

Verbs.

90. Classification of verbs.— Verbs are either strong (92) or weak (96); besides which there are two small classes of important verbs, called respectively preteritive presents (124 ff.) and anomalous (137 ff.). Weak verbs are in general derivative; and the stem can usually be detected as existing in some other independent word, often a noun or adjective, or the pret. sing. tense-stem of a strong verb.

91. The present stem.— The present stem of a verb is what remains after cutting off the infinitive ending **-an** or **-ian** (in contract verbs, **-n**). The radical vowel is the vowel of this stem; and the consonant or consonants which terminate the stem are, when such exist, called stem-finals. The stem as obtained above is one of the four tense-stems of strong verbs, or of the three tense-stems of weak verbs.

92. Tense-stems of strong verbs.— Strong verbs change the radical vowel to form the different tense-stems, like

the verbs called irregular in Modern English. As in Modern English the verb *drive* has the preterit *drove* and past participle *driven*, so in Old English the same verb has the pret. sing. **drāf** and past participle **drifen**. However, instead of the three tense-stems of Modern English, there are four in Old English for strong verbs, the preterit being subdivided into preterit singular and preterit plural.

The four stems of **drīfan**, *drive*, are:—

PRESENT.	PRET. SING.	PRET. PLUR.	PAST PART.
drīf-	drāf	drif-	drif-

93. Forms derived from each stem.—From the present stem are formed the whole of the present indicative and optative, the imperative singular and plural, the infinitive, the gerund, and the present participle—in all seventeen forms.

From the pret. sing. stem are formed only the 1st and 3d persons singular—two forms.

From the pret. plur. stem are formed the whole pret. plur. of indicative and optative, the whole pret. sing. of the optative, and the 2d person singular indicative—ten forms.

From the past participial stem is formed only the past participle—one form.

94. Commonest forms of the verb.—From the present stem the form in commonest use is the ind. pres. 3d sing.; from the pret. sing. stem, the ind. pret. 3d sing.;

from the pret. plur. stem, the ind. pret. 3d plur. Umlaut (17) and contraction (34) are apt to obscure the origin of the first of these, but not of the other two. Thus from **standan**, *stand* — whose principal parts are **standan**, **stōd**, **stōdon**, **standen** — the ind. pret. 3d sing. is **stōd**, the ind. pret. 3d plur. **stōdon**, but the ind. pres. 3d sing. **stęnt** (instead of **standeð**).

95. Conjugation of a strong verb.—Types are: **bindan**, *bind*; (for contracts) **fōn**, *seize*: —

INDICATIVE.	OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1. binde ; fō	binde ; fō
2. bind(e)st , bintst ; fēhst	binde ; fō
3. bind(e)ð , bint ; fēhð	binde ; fō
Plur. bindað , binde ; fōð	binden ; fōn
Pret. Sing. 1. band ; fēng	bunde ; fēnge
2. bunde ; fēnge	bunde ; fēnge
3. band ; fēng	bunde ; fēnge
Plur. bundon ; fēngon	bunden ; fēngen
Imper. Sing. bind ; fōh	Infin. bindan ; fōn
Plur. bindað , binde ; fōð	Gerund tō bindanne ; tō fōnne
Pres. Part. bindende ; fōnde Past Part. (ge)bunden ; (ge)fangen	

The 2d sing. pres. ind. is sometimes formed in **-sð**. The **ð** is derived from the **ðū** of the personal pronoun, the old ending having been **s**. This **s**, followed by the personal pronoun, became **sð**, which *should* regularly become **st** (34), but does not always.

NOTE. — The ind. and imper. (sometimes opt.) plur. **binde** is used when the verb is immediately followed by a pronoun as subject: **binde wē**, not **bindað wē**, *we bind, let us bind*; **binde gē**, not **bindað gē**, *bind ye*.

96. Conjugation of the weak verb. — Weak verbs form the preterit by the addition to the present stem of **-de** for the singular (ind. pret. 2d sing. **-dest**), and **-don** (**-den**) for the plural. A few verbs take **-e** before the **-de**, and many take **-o**. The vowel of the present stem is never changed before **-ede** and **-ode**, but in some verbs is changed before **-de**; a list of the latter is given in **114**.

The past participle of weak verbs is formed by the addition of **-ed** (**-od**, **-d**).

The **-d** of the endings **-de**, etc., and **-ed**, is changed to **-t** after certain stem-finals (**33**), and is lost in other situations; for details see **113** and **114**. Certain stem-finals also undergo change before the same endings; for details see **114**.

97. Classes of strong verbs. — Under strong verbs are included two principal divisions, according as their tense-stems were originally formed in one manner or another. Strong verbs are accordingly divided into Ablaut Verbs and Reduplicating Verbs. This distinction is mainly historical, and for practical purposes need not be insisted on at the outset.

98. Ablaut verbs. — Of these there are six principal classes, for which see **102–107**.

99. Vowels of the present stem. — To facilitate the assignment of verbs to their proper classes, the follow-

ing table may be useful, in conjunction with 101-110. The Ablaut Classes are distinguished by the Roman numerals, and the Reduplicating Verbs by Red.

SHORT RADICAL VOWEL.	CLASS.
a	VI, Red.
æ	VI
ē	VI
e + r or l (also breccan)	IV
e + any single cons. but r or l	V
e + two cons.	III
i followed by nasal	III, IV
i followed by non-nasal	III, V
q , see a	
u in cuman	IV
u in other verbs	III
ea	VI, Red.
eo	III
ie	III, V, VI
LONG RADICAL VOWEL.	CLASS.
ā	Red.
ǣ	Red.
ē̄	Red.
ī	I.
ō	Red.
ū	II
ēa	VI, Red.
ēo in contract verbs	I, II, V
ēo in other verbs	II.

100. Contract verbs.—Contract verbs are strong verbs whose stem-final was originally **h**. This **h** was lost before vowels (29), and the preceding vowel was then

amalgamated with the following. The resultant diphthong (or vowel) is **ēo** in the case of ten verbs, **ēa** in that of four, and **ō** in that of two. The **ō**-verbs belong to the Reduplicating Class, the **ēa**-verbs to the Sixth Ablaut Class, and the **ēo**-verbs to the First, Second, and Fifth Ablaut Classes.

101. Contract verbs according to classes. — Distributed according to classes, the contract verbs are as follows:—

I. **lēon** (orig. **lihan**), *lend*; **sēon**, *sift*; **tēon**, *censure*; **ǵēon**, *thrive*; **wrēon**, *cover*.

II. **flēon** (orig. **flēohan**), *flee*; **tēon**, *draw*.

V. **gefēon** (orig. **gefehan**), *rejoice*; **plēon**, *venture*; **sēon**, *see*.

VI. **flēan** (orig. **flahan**), *flay*; **lēan**, *blame*; **slēan**, *strike*; **ǵwēan**, *wash*.

Red. **fōn** (orig. **fanhan** > **fōhan**), *seize*; **hōn**, *hang*.

Of these the most important are **tēon**, *censure*, **ǵēon**, *thrive*, **wrēon**, *cover*; **flēon**, *flee*, **tēon**, *draw*; **gefēon**, *rejoice*, **sēon**, *see*; **slēan**, *strike*, **ǵwēan**, *wash*; **fōn**, *seize*, and **hōn**, *hang*.

Tēon, *draw* (II), should be carefully distinguished from **tēon**, *censure* (I); and likewise **sēon**, *see* (V), from **sēon**, *sift* (I). The principal parts of **tēon**, *draw*, are:—

tēon	tēah	tugon	(ge)togen
-------------	-------------	--------------	-----------

of **tēon**, *censure*, are:—

tēon	tāh	tigon	(ge)tigen
-------------	------------	--------------	-----------

But there is a tendency on the part of contract verbs like the latter of these (I) to assume throughout the forms of the former (II).

ġēon, *thrive* (102), has past part. **ġigen** and **ġungen**.

The imp. sing. always ends in **h**, and has a long vowel in verbs of the First, Second, and Reduplicating Classes, a short vowel in the Fifth and Sixth. Examples: (I) **tēon**, *censure*, imp. **tīh**; (II) **tēon**, *draw*, imp. **tēoh**; (V) **sēon**, *see*, imp. **seoh**; (VI) **slēan**, *strike*, imp. **sleah**; (Red.) **fōn**, *seize*, imp. **fōh**.

102. Strong verbs of the First Ablaut Class. —

Stem vowels (normally) **ī**, **ā**, **i**, **i**

Typical verb **drīfan**, *drive*

Four stems **drīfan** **drāf** **drifon** **drifen**

Like **drīfan** are conjugated all strong verbs with **ī** in the present stem. Here belongs any strong verb with **ā** in the first preterit stem, **i** in the second preterit stem, or **i** in the past participial stem. Among the more common are: **bīdan**, *remain*; **bītan**, *bite*; **rīdan**, *ride*; (**ā**)**rīsan**, *arise*; **scīnan**, *shine*; **slītan**, *tear*; **stīgan**, *ascend*; **swīcan**, *abandon*; (**ge**)**wītan**, *go*; **wrītan**, *write*.

Umlaut does not affect the vowel of the present stem (94).

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (33, 34): —

d -stems	bīdan	bītst , bīt(t)
t -stems	bītan	bītst , bīt(t)

s-stems	rīsan	rīst, rīst (rīš)
Ń-stems	snīðan	snīst, snīð (š)
Contracts (101)	wrēon	wrihst, wrihð
Others are normal	drifan	drifst, drifð

The second preterit and past participial stems of the verbs **snīðan**, *cut*, **līðan**, *go*, and **scrīðan**, *proceed*, take **d** instead of **ð** (37): **snidon**, **sniden**, etc. Other verbs in **ð** retain the **ð**.

103. Strong verbs of the Second Ablaut Class. —

Stem vowels	ēo or ū, ēa, u, o			
Typical verbs	bēodan , <i>offer</i> ; brūcan , <i>enjoy</i>			
Four stems	bēodan	bēad	budon	boden
	brūcan	brēac	brucon	brocen

Like **bēodan** are conjugated all strong verbs having **ēo** in the present stem, except some contracts, and like **brūcan** all having **ū**. Here belongs any strong verb having **ēa** in the first preterit stem. Among the more common are: **cēosan**, *choose*; **drēogan**, *endure*; **hrēosan**, *fall*; (for) **lēosan**, *lose*; **tēon**, *draw*; **būgan**, *bow*.

Stems in **s**, **ð**, and contract vowel (37): —

cēosan	cēas	curon	coren
sēoðan	sēað	sudon	soden
tēon (101)	tēah	tugon	togen

Like **cēosan** are formed stems in **s**; like **sēoðan**, **ābrēoðan**, *frustrate*; like **tēon**, **flēon**, *flee*.

Umlaut changes the **ēo** of the present to **ie** (or **ī**),

and **ū** of the present to **ȳ**, in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **forliest**, **brȳcð**.

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (33, 34):—

d-stems	bēodan	bīetst , bīet(t)
t-stems	gēotan	gietst , giet(t)
s-stems	forlēosan	forliest , forlēist (-sð)
g-stems (28)	drēogan	driegst (-hst), driegð (-hð)
Contracts (101)	tēon	tiehst , tiehð
Others are normal	crēopan	criepst , criepð

104. Strong verbs of the Third Ablaut Class.—

Stem vowels various, but all short

Typical verbs **bindan**, *bind*; **helpan**, *help*; **giieldan**, *yield*; **weorpan**, *throw*; **berstan**, *burst*

Four stems	bindan	band	bundon	bunden
	helpan	healp	hulpon	holpen
	giieldan	geald	guldon	golden
	weorpan	wearp	wurpon	worpen
	berstan	bærst	burston	borsten

Like **bindan** are conjugated all strong verbs in **in** or **im** + consonant, besides **iernan**, *run*, **beornan**, *burn*, originally **rinnan**, **brinnan**.

Like **helpan** are conjugated all in **el** + consonant, besides **fēolan**, *reach*, which is irregular.

Like **giieldan** are conjugated all in **iel** + consonant.

Like **weorpan** are conjugated all in **eor** or **eoh** + consonant (21. *b*).

Like **berstan** are conjugated **ðerscan**, *thresh*; **bregdan**, *brandish*; **stregdan**, *strew*; besides **frignan**, *in-*

quire, which resembles it in all except the vowel of the present.

The stems of **weorðan**, *become*, are (37):—

weorðan	wearð	wurdon	worden
----------------	--------------	---------------	---------------

Bregdan and **frignan** may drop **g**, and lengthen the preceding vowel (28): **bræd**, **frīnan**.

Findan, *find*, likewise forms its 3d sing. pret. ind. as **funde**, which is indeed the usual form.

Among the more common verbs are: **drincan**, *drink*; **findan**, *find*; (**on**)**ginnan**, *begin*; **winnan**, *strive*; **limpan**, *happen*; **belgan**, *be angry*; **hweorfan**, *turn*; **feohtan**, *fight*.

Umlaut changes the **eo** of the present to **ie** in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **wierpð**. A similar change, though not due to precisely the same cause (17), is found in presents in **e**, which is converted to **i** or **ie**: **hilpst**, **bierst**.

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (33, 34):—

d-stems	bindan	bintst, bint
t-stems	feohtan	fiehtst, fieht
st-stems	berstan	bierst, bierst
ð-stems	weorðan	wier(ð)st, wierð
nn-stems	winnan	winst, winð (35, b)
Others are normal	singan	singst, singð

The stems of **fēolan**, *reach*, are:—

fēolan	fealh	fulgon (fælon)	folen
---------------	--------------	-----------------------	--------------

Exceptional forms are the 3d sing. pres. ind. of **bregdan** and **stregdan**: **brītt**, **strēt(t)**.

105. Strong verbs of the Fourth Ablaut Class. —

Stem vowels	e	æ	ǣ	o
	i(u)	ō	ō	u
Typical verb	beran , <i>bear</i>			
Four stems	beran , bær , bāeron , boren			

Like **beran** are conjugated **teran**, *tear*; **scieran** (18), *shear*; **cwelan**, *die*; **helan**, *conceal*; **stelan**, *steal*; **hwelan**, *roar*; **brecan**, *break*.

The two irregular verbs of this class are among the most important in the language: **niman**, *take*, and **cuman**, *come*. Their stems are:—

niman	nōm	nōmon	numen
cuman	c(w)ōm	c(w)ōmon	cumen (cymen)

Umlaut changes the **u** of **cuman** to **y** in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **cymst**, **cymð**. A similar change, though not due to precisely the same cause (17), is found in the presents in **e**, which is changed to **i** or **ie**: **bi(e)rst**, **stilð**.

106. Strong verbs of the Fifth Ablaut Class. —

Stem vowels (normally) **e**, **æ**, **ǣ**, **e**

Typical verbs **sprecan**, *speak*; **cweðan**, *say*; **giefan**, *give*; **biddan**, *request*; **gefēon**, *rejoice*

Four stems	sprecan	spræc	sprǣcon	sprecen
	cweðan	cwæð	cwǣdon (37)	cweden
	giefan (18)	geaf	gēafon	giefen

Four stems	biddan	bæd	bædon	beden
	gefēon (101)	gefeah	gefāgon	

Like **sprecan** are conjugated **etan**, *eat*; **tredan**, *tread*; **metan**, *measure*; **wrecan**, *pursue*; and a few others.

Like **cweðan** is conjugated no other verb.

Like **giefan** is conjugated **gietan**, *get* (18).

Like **biddan** are conjugated **licgan**, *lie*; **sittan**, *sit*.

Like **gefēon** is conjugated **sēon**, *see*, except that its pret. plur. is **sāwon**, and past participle **sewen**, **segen**.

Umlaut, or a change analogous to it (17), converts the **e** of the present to **i** in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **cwið**; in contracts we have **ie**, not **īe**, since the vowel of the present was originally short: **siehð**.

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (33, 34): —

d-stems	tredan	tritst, trit(t)
t-stems	gietan	gietst, giet(t)
ð-stems	cweðan	cwist, cwið
g-stems (28)	licgan	ligst (list), ligð (lið)
Contracts (101)	sēon	siehst, siehð
Others are normal	sprecan	spricst, spricð

The vowel of the pret. sing. is sometimes long in verbs in **et**: **æt**, **mæt**. Imp. sing. **bide** (cf. 107).

107. Strong verbs of the Sixth Ablaut Class. —

Stem vowels (normally) **a**, **ō**, **o**, **a**

Typical verbs **faran**, *go*; **slēan**, *strike*; **standan**, *stand*; **hebban**,
raise

Four stems	faran	fōr	fōron	faren
	slēan (101)	slōg	slōgon (37)	slægen (slēgen)
	standan	stōd	stōdon	standen
	hebban (11)	hōf	hōfon	hafen

Like **faran** are conjugated **sacan**, *dispute*, **wacan**, *wake*, **tōsc(e)acan**, *depart*, and one or two others.

Like **slēan** are conjugated **lēan**, *blame*, **ðwēan**, *wash*.

Like **standan** is conjugated no other verb.

In the main like **hebban** are conjugated the following: —

hllehhhan (36), <i>laugh</i>	hlōh	hlōgon (37)	
sclēppan (18), <i>create</i>	scōp (scēop)	scōpon (scēopon)	sceapen
stæppan , <i>step</i>	stōp	stōpon	stapen
swērian , <i>swear</i>	swōr	swōron	sworen

Umlaut changes the **a** of the present to **ę** (æ), and the **ēa** of the present (see 101) to **ie** (not **īe**), in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **stęnt**, **færst**, **sliehð**.

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (34): —

d-stems	standan	stęntst , stęnt
b-stems	hebban	hefst , hefð
Contracts (101)	slēan	sliehst , sliehð
Others are normal	faran	færst , færð

The verbs like **hebban** are peculiar in having umlaut in the present stem, which causes them, in so far, to resemble the Weak Verbs of the First Class (111). Like **sellan**, etc., they have the imp. sing. in **-e**: **hefe**, **swere**, etc. (cf. 117). The umlaut is due to the fact that the stem of this group, unlike that of

most strong verbs, was followed by a **j** (16). Thus the inf. **stæppan** stands for original **stapjan**; were it not for the umlaut-causing **-j-**, the infinitive would have been **stapan**; and so in the other four verbs.

108. Reduplicating verbs. — Stem vowels various.

A peculiarity of this class — shared, however, by a very few verbs of the Sixth Ablaut Class (107) — is that the vowels of the first and fourth stems are identical (with two or three exceptions noted below), and that those of the second and third stems are likewise identical. The vowel (diphthong) of the preterit is sometimes **ēo**, less frequently **ē**.

109. Reduplicating preterits in ēo. — The present stem has **ea** (rarely **a**), **ā**, **ēa**, **ō**, or **ē**.

Typical verbs **feallan**, *fall*; **bannan**, *summon*; **cnāwan**, *know*;
hēawan, *heav*; **flōwan**, *flow*; **wēpan**, *weep*

Four stems	feallan	fēoll	fēollon	feallen
	bannan	bēonn	bēonnon	bannen
	cnāwan	cnēow	cnēowon	cnāwen
	hēawan	hēow	hēowon	hēawen
	flōwan	flēow	flēowon	flōwen
	wēpan	wēop	wēopon	wōpen

Like **feallan** are conjugated verbs in **eal** + consonant, besides **weaxan**, *grow* (originally of the Sixth Ablaut Class, 107): **healdan**, *hold*; **wealdan**, *govern*, etc.

Like **bannan** (very rare) is conjugated **gangan**, *go* (but usually as **gān**, 141).

Like **cnāwan** are conjugated verbs in **āw**, besides **swāpan**, *sweep*: — **blāwan**, *blow*; **sāwan**, *sow*, etc.

Like **hēawan** are conjugated verbs in **ēa**: **bēatan**, *beat*; **hlēapan**, *leap*.

Like **flōwan** are conjugated verbs in **ō**: **blōwan**, *bloom* (not to be confounded with **blāwan**, *blow*); **grōwan**, *grow*; **spōwan**, *thrive*; **rōwan**, *row*.

Like **wēpan** is conjugated no other common verb; in **wēpan** the stem vowel of the present is derived by umlaut from **ō**, the latter reappearing in the past participle.—Umlaut as in 94.

110. Reduplicating preterits in ē. — The present stem has **ā**, **æ**, or **ō**. Umlaut as in 94.

Typical verbs **lāetan**, *let*; **hātan**, *call*; **fōn**, *seize*

Four stems	lāetan	lēt	lēton	lāeten
	hātan	hēt	hēton	hāten
	fōn (101)	fēng	fēngon	fangen

Like **lāetan** are conjugated **drāedan**, *dread*; **rāedan**, *consult*, *read* (usually weak); **slāepan**, *sleep*.

Like **hātan** is conjugated **lācan**, *jump*; **scādan**, **scēadan** (18), *separate*.

Like **fōn** is conjugated **hōn**, *hang* (3d sing. **fēhð**, **hēhð**).

111. Weak verbs of the First Class. — The stem vowel of the present always has umlaut (except that **ēo** sometimes persists, *i.e.*, does not become **īe**). The infinitive ends in **-an** or **-ian**, the latter being infrequent.

112. Weak infinitives in -an. — These take the preterit either (113, 114) in **-de (-te)** or (115) in **-ede**, the past participle in **-ed** or in **-d (-t)**.

113. Weak preterits in -de (-te), with retention of the stem vowel. — Here belong verbs whose stem vowel is long by nature (4), and a number in which the stem syllable is long by position as a result of gemination (36). The past participle is formed in **-ed**, contraction taking place in **t-** and **d-** stems. The infinitive always ends in **-an**. Simplified gemination by 35.

Three stems	hīeran , <i>hear</i>	hīerde	(ge) hiered
	fyllan , <i>fill</i>	fylde (35)	(ge) fylled
	cyssan , <i>kiss</i>	cyste (33, 35)	(ge) cyssed
	settan , <i>set</i>	sette (33)	(ge) sett
	sendan , <i>send</i>	sende	(ge) send(ed)
	lādan , <i>lead</i>	lādde	(ge) lād(ed)
	īecan , <i>increase</i>	īecte (33)	(ge) īeced
	ēhtan , <i>persecute</i>	ēhte	(ge) ēht
	mētan , <i>find</i>	mētte	(ge) mēt(t)
	gierwan , <i>prepare</i>	gierede	(ge) gier(w)ed

Like **hīeran** are conjugated all verbs not belonging to any of the following divisions.

Like **fyllan** are conjugated stems ending in a double consonant, excepting those like **cyssan** and **settan**, and under 114 and 115.

Like **cyssan** are conjugated stems ending in **ff**, **pp**, and **ss**.

Like **settan** are conjugated stems ending in **tt** (imp. sing. **sete**).

Like **sēdan** are conjugated stems ending in a consonant + **d**.

Like **lædan** are conjugated stems ending in a vowel + **d**.

Like **īecan** are conjugated stems ending in **c**, **p**, and **x**.

Like **ēhtan** are conjugated stems ending in a consonant + **t**.

Like **mētan** are conjugated stems ending in a vowel + **t**.

Like **gierwan** are conjugated stems ending in **rw** and **lw**. The forms of the present sometimes retain the **w**, sometimes not.

114. Irregular preterits and past participles.—Certain verbs, in other respects like those of the last paragraph, and whose stems end in **ll**, **cc**, **c** (**nc**, **rc**), or **g** (**cg**, **ng**), form their preterits and past participles from a stem without umlaut. In the case of the **ll**, **cc**, and simple **c**-verbs, to determine, from the present stem, what form the past stem will assume, find the original vowel corresponding to the umlaut vowel of the present, and consider what changes, if any, will be caused by breaking (21). The **l**-verbs take **-de** and **-d**, the **c**- and **g**-verbs **-te** and **-t**. The **c**- and **g**-verbs often insert **-e** before the infinitive ending (18). Stems ending in **c** and **g** change these consonants to **h** before the **t** of the ending.

The list is as follows:—

ll-verbs	cwellan , <i>kill</i>	cwealde	(ge)cweald
	dwllan , <i>deceive</i>		
	sllan , <i>give</i>		
	stllan , <i>place</i>		
	tllan , <i>count</i>		
cc-verbs	cwecc(e)an , <i>shake</i>	cweahte	(ge)cweaht
	drecc(e)an , <i>vex</i>		
	lecc(e)an , <i>moisten</i>		
	recc(e)an , <i>expound</i>		
	strecc(e)an , <i>stretch</i>		
	þecc(e)an , <i>cover</i>		
	w(r)ecc(e)an , <i>wake</i>		
c-verbs	lacc(e)an , <i>seize</i>	lahte	(ge)laht
	racc(e)an , <i>reach</i>	rahte	(ge)raht
	tacc(e)an , <i>teach</i>	tahte	(ge)taht
	recc(e)an , recc(e)an , <i>reck</i>	rohte	(ge)roht
	secc(e)an , <i>seek</i>	sohte	(ge)soht
nc-verbs	þenc(e)an , <i>think</i>	þohte	(ge)þoht
	þync(e)an , <i>seem</i>	þuhte	(ge)þuht
rc-verb	wyrc(e)an , <i>work</i>	worhte	(ge)worht
cg-verb	bycg(e)an , <i>buy</i>	bohte	(ge)boht
ng-verb	bringan , <i>bring</i>	brohte	(ge)broht

The preterit and past participle of **racc(e)an** and **tacc(e)an** should properly have **ā**: **rahte**, etc. This does, indeed, sometimes occur, but is much less common than the **æ**.

115. Infinitives in -an, with preterit in -ede.—Here belong two groups of verbs whose infinitives end in **-an** (exceptionally **-ian**).

(a) The first group comprises the following verbs with stems ending in a double consonant (cf. 11);

frēmman, *perform*; **grēmman**, *provoke*; **trymman**, *confirm*; **ðennan**, *extend*; **wennan**, *accustom*; **dynnan**, *hlynnan*, *resound*; **cnyssan**, *beat*; **sceððan**, *injure* (sometimes strong); **swēbban**, *quiet*; **węcg(e)an**, *agitate*; **ðicg(e)an**, *receive* (sometimes strong). Occasionally these verbs take an infinitive in **-ian** (116).

(b) The second group comprises stems ending in a consonant + either **l**, **n**, or **r**. This group is somewhat irregular, occasionally having preterits like **hyngerde**, instead of the more regular **hyngrede**, **nēmde** for **nēmn(e)de**, *named*, and **ęfnde** for **ęfnede**, *performed*.

Typical verbs	(a) frēmman , <i>perform</i>	frēmede	(ge)frēmed
	(b) hyngnan , <i>hunger</i>	hyngrede	(ge)hyngred

NOTE. — **Łęcg(e)an**, *lay*, is irregular in the preterit and past part.: **łęgde** (**lēde**), (ge)**łęgd** (**-lēd**), instead of **łęgede**, (ge)**łęged**.

116. Infinitives in -ian with preterit in -ede. — Here belong a few weak verbs of the First Class. They have a short stem ending in **r**, or occasionally in **l**, **m**, **n**, or one of the spirants. The vowel of the stem is usually **ę** (**ie**) or **y**. Examples are: **nęrian**, *save*; **hęrian**, *praise*; **byrian**, *pertain*; **hęlian**, *conceal*; **trymian**, *confirm* (see 115. a).

Three stems	nęrian	nęrede	(ge)nęred
-------------	---------------	---------------	-----------

117. Paradigms of the First Class. — For the conjugation of weak verbs of the First Class we may

choose: **hīeran**, *hear* (113); **sēllan**, *give* (114, 36);
frēmman, *perform* (115); **nērian**, *save* (116).

PRESENT.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. 1.	hīere	sēlle	frēmme	nērie
2.	hīerst (23)	sēl(e)st	frēmest	nērest
3.	hīerð	sēl(e)ð	frēmeð	nēreð
Plur.	hīerað	sēllað	frēmmað	nēriað

OPTATIVE.

Sing.	hīere	sēlle	frēmme	nērie
Plur.	hīeren	sēllen	frēmmen	nērien

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.	hīer (23)	sēle	frēme	nēre
Plur.	hīerað	sēllað	frēmmað	nēriað

INFINITIVE.

hīeran	sēllan	frēmman	nērian
---------------	---------------	----------------	---------------

PARTICIPLE.

hīerende	sēllende	frēmrende	nēriende
-----------------	-----------------	------------------	-----------------

PRETERIT.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. 1.	hīerde	sealde	frēmede	nērede
2.	hīerdest	sealdeſt	frēmedeſt	nēredeſt
3.	hīerde	sealde	frēmede	nērede
Plur.	hīerdon	sealdon	frēmedon	nēredon

OPTATIVE.

Sing.	hīerde	sealde	frēmede	nērede
Plur.	hīerden	sealden	frēmeden	nēreden

PARTICIPLE.

Sing.	hīered	seald	frēmed	nēred
Plur.	hīer(e)de	sealde	frēmede	nērede

118. Weak verbs of the Second Class. — These are very numerous. Many are formed from nouns and adjectives (cf. 90). The infinitive always ends in **-ian**, or its equivalent **-ig(e)an** (18). Though the **i** of an ending usually causes umlaut, it does not in these verbs, because of its comparatively late origin, the older termination having been **-ōjon** (that is, **-ō-yon**), which was incapable of causing umlaut, since it was **-ō-**, rather than **-j-** (that is, **-y-**), which immediately followed the stem.

Hence it is easy to distinguish verbs of this Class from verbs in **-ian** of the First Class (116):—

1. Of those verbs there are but few; of these, many.
2. Of those the vowels are always umlauted (usually **e** or **y**); of these, rarely, and only when the verb was formed from a noun or adjective whose vowel was already umlauted.
3. Of those the stem usually ends in **r**; of these, in any consonant or consonant combination.

119. Paradigm of the Second Class. — As a typical verb we may select **lufian**, *love*.

		PRESENT.	
INDICATIVE.		OPTATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Sing. 1.	lufie	lufie	Sing. lufa
2.	lufast		Plur. lufiaſſ
3.	lufaſſ		
Plur.	lufiaſſ	lufien	
Infinitive.	lufian		Part. lufiende

	INDICATIVE.	PRETERIT.	OPTATIVE.
Sing. 1.	lufode		
2.	lufodest		lufode
3.	lufode		
Plur.	lufedon, -odon		lufoden, -eden
Part.	(ge)lufod		

In the endings, **ig(e)** or **g** is frequently found for **i** (18).

Sometimes, instead of **-ode**, the ending is **-ade**, **-ude**, or even **-ede**; but **-ode** is normal.

120. Weak verbs of the Third Class.—These comprise **habban**, *have*; **libban** (**lifian**), *live*; **sæg(e)an**, *say*; **hycg(e)an**, *think*. These are conjugated partly according to the First Class (117), and partly according to the Second (119).

121. Conjugation of habban, have.—**Habban**, *have*; **nabban**, *have not* (29).

	INDICATIVE.	OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1.	hæbbe	hæbbe
2.	hæfst (hafast)	hæbbe
3.	hæfð (hafað)	hæbbe
Plur.	habbað (hæbbað)	hæbben
Pret. Sing.	hæfde, etc.	hæfde
Plur.	hæfdon	hæfden
Imper. Sing.	hafa	
Plur.	habbað	Infin. habban
Pres. Part.	hæbbende	Past Part. (ge)hæfd

	INDICATIVE.	OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1.	næbbe	næbbe
2.	næfst (nafast)	næbbe
3.	næfð (nafað)	næbbe
Plur.	nabbað	næbben
Pret. Sing.	næfde, etc.	næfde
Plur.	næfdon	næfden
Imper. Sing.	nafa	Infin. nabban
Plur.	nabbað	
Pres. Part.	næbbende	Past Part. (ge)næfd

122. Conjugation of libban, *live*. —

	INDICATIVE.	OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1.	libbe	libbe, lifie, etc.
2.	leofast (20)	
3.	leofað	
Plur.	libbað, lifiað	libben, lifien
Pret. Sing.	lifde, etc.	lifde
Plur.	lifdon	lifden
Imper. Sing.	leofa (20)	Infin. libban, lifian
Plur.	libbað, lifiað	
Pres. Part.	libbende, lifiende	Past Part. (ge)lifd

123. Conjugation of sæcg(e)an, *say*. —

	INDICATIVE.	OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1.	sæge	sæge, etc.
2.	sægst, sægst, sagast	
3.	sægð, sægð, sagað	
Plur.	sæcg(e)að	sægen
Pret. Sing.	sægde, sæde (28), etc.	sægde, sæde
Plur.	sægdon, sædon	sægden, sæden
Imper. Sing.	saga, sege	Infin. sæcg(e)an
Plur.	sæcg(e)að	
Pres. Part.	sægende	Past Part. (ge)sægd, (ge)sæd

124. Conjugation of **hyeg(e)an**, *think*. —

INDICATIVE.		OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1.	hyege	hyege , etc.
2.	hygst , hogast	
3.	hygð , hogað	
Plur.	hyeg(e)að	hyegen
Pret. Sing.	hog(o)de , etc.	hog(o)de
Plur.	hog(o)don	hog(o)den
Imper. Sing.	hoga	
Plur.	hyeg(e)að	Infin. hyeg(e)an
Pres. Part.	hygende	Past Part. (ge)hog(o)d

PRETERITIVE PRESENTS.

125. **Preteritive presents**. — A small group of verbs have strong preterits with present meaning (the old presents being lost), and form new weak preterits from these. They are: **witan**, *know*; **āgan**, *own*; **dugan**, *avail*; **unnan**, *grant*; **cunnan**, *know*; **ðurfan**, *need*; **durran** (?), *dare*; **sculan**, *shall*; **munan**, *intend*; **mugan** (?), *can*; **nugan** (?), *suffice*; **mōtan** (?), *may*.

126. **Conjugation of witan**, *know*. — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **wāt**, 2. **wāst**; plur. **wi(e)ton**; pret. **wiste** (**wisse**), etc. Opt. pres. **wi(e)te**, etc.; pret. **wiste** (**wisse**), etc. Imper. **wite**. Infin. **wi(e)tan**. Pres. part. **witende**; past part. **(ge)witen**.

For **wi(e)tan**, etc., is found **wiotan**, etc.

Like **witan** is conjugated **nytan**, *not to know*: **nāt**, etc. Wherever, in the forms of **witan**, **i** (**ie**, **io**) occurs, **y** is here to be substituted.

127. Conjugation of *āgan*, *possess.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. *āh*, 2. *āhst*; plur. *āgon*; pret. *āhte*, etc. Opt. pres. *āge*, etc.; pret. *āhte*. Imper. *āge*. Infin. *āgan*. Pres. part. *āgende*; past part. *āgen*, *own* (*adj.*).

So *nāgan*, *not to possess*.

128. Conjugation of *dugan*, *avail.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. *dēah*; plur. *dugon*; pret. *dohte*, etc. Opt. pres. *dyge*, *duge*, etc. Infin. *dugan*. Pres. part. *dugende*.

129. Conjugation of *unnan*, *grant.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. *an(n)*; plur. *unnon*; pret. *ūðe*. Opt. pres. *unne*, etc.; pret. *ūðe*, etc. Imper. *unne*. Infin. *unnan*. Pres. part. *unnende*; past part. (*ge*)*unnen*.

130. Conjugation of *cunnan*, *know.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. *can(n)*, *canst*; plur. *cunnon*; pret. *cūðe*, etc. Opt. pres. *cunne*, etc.; pret. *cūðe*, *cȳðe*, etc. Infin. *cunnan*. Past part. (*ge*)*cunnen*, and *cūð* (*adj.*).

131. Conjugation of *ðurfan*, *need.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. *ðearf*, 2. *ðearft*; plur. *ðurfon*; pret. *ðorfte*, etc. Opt. pres. *ðyrfe*, *ðurfe*, etc.; pret. *ðorfte*, etc. Infin. *ðurfan*. Pres. part. *ðearfende*.

132. Conjugation of *durran*, *dare.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. *dearr*, 2. *dearst*; plur. *durron*; pret. *dorste*, etc. Opt. pres. *dyrrre*, *durre*, etc.

133. Conjugation of **sculan**, *shall*. — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **sceal**, 2. **scealt**; plur. **sculon**; pret. **sc(e)olde**, etc. Opt. pres. **scyle**, **scule**, etc. Infin. **sculan**.

134. Conjugation of **munan**, *intend*. — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **man**, 2. **manst**; plur. **munon** (**munað**); pret. **munde**. Opt. pres. **myne**, **mune**, etc. Imper. sing. **mun**; plur. **munað**. Infin. **munan**. Pres. part. **munende**; past part. (**ge**)**munen**.

135. Conjugation of **mugan**, *can*. — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **mæg**, 2. **meaht**; plur. **magon**; pret. **meahte**, etc. Opt. pres. **mæge**, etc.

136. Conjugation of **nugan**, *suffice*. — Ind. pres. sing. 3. **neah**; plur. **nugon**; pret. **nohte**, etc. Opt. pres. **nuge**, etc.

137. Conjugation of **mōtan**, *may*. — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **mōt**, 2. **mōst**; plur. **mōton**; pret. **mōste**, etc. Opt. pres. **mōte**, etc.

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

138. Conjugation of **wesan**, **bēon**, *be*. — .

INDICATIVE.	OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1. eom ; bēo	sīe ; bēo , etc.
2. eart ; bist	
3. is ; bið ; neg. nis	
Plur. sind , -t ; sindon ; bēoð	sīen ; bēon

INDICATIVE.		OPTATIVE.	
Pret. Sing. 1.	wæs ; neg. næs wære ; neg. nære wæs ; neg. næs wæron ; neg. næron		wære ; neg. nære wære ; neg. nære wære ; neg. nære wæren ; neg. næren
Imper. Sing.	wes ; bēo	Infin.	wesan ; bēon
Plur.	wesað ; bēoð	Pres. Part.	wesende ; bēonde

139. Conjugation of *willan*, *will*. —

INDICATIVE.		OPTATIVE.	
Pres. Sing. 1.	wil(1)e ; neg. ne(1)le , ny(1)le	{	wille , etc.; neg. nelle , nylle , etc.
2.	wilt ; neg. nelt , nylt		
3.	wil(1)e ; neg. nel(1)e , nyl(1)e		
Plur.	willað ; neg. nellað , nyllað	{	willen ; neg. nellen , nyllen
Pret. Sing.	wolde , etc.; neg. nolde , etc.		wolde ; neg. nolde
Plur.	woldon ; neg. noldon		wolden ; neg. nolden
Imper. Plur.	neg. nellað , nyllað	Infin.	willan
Pres. Part.	willende		

140. Conjugation of *dōn*, *do*. —

INDICATIVE.		OPTATIVE.	
Pres. Sing. 1.	dō		dō , etc.
2.	dēst		
3.	dēð		
Plur.	dōð		dōn
Pret. Sing.	dyde , dydest , dyde		dyde
Plur.	dydon		dyden
Imper. Sing.	dō		
Plur.	dōð	Infin.	dōn
Pres. Part.	dōnde	Past Part.	(ge)dōn

141. Conjugation of *gān*, *go*. —

INDICATIVE.		OPTATIVE.
Pres. Sing. 1.	<i>gā</i>	<i>gā</i> , etc.
2.	<i>gāest</i>	
3.	<i>gāēð</i>	
Plur.	<i>gāð</i>	<i>gān</i>
Pret. Sing.	<i>ēode</i> , etc.	<i>ēode</i>
Plur.	<i>ēodon</i>	<i>ēoden</i>
Imper. Sing.	<i>gā</i>	
Plur.	<i>gāð</i>	Infin. <i>gān</i>
Pres. Part.	<i>gānde</i>	Past Part. <i>(ge)gān</i>

FORMATION OF WORDS.

142. Prefixes. — Many Old English prefixes are self-explanatory. Others, with their meanings, are as follows: —

ā- (1) = ‘up,’ ‘out’ (Ger. *er-*): **āfyllan**, *fill up*, **āscēotan**, *shoot out*.

(2) representing **on**: **āweg** = **on weg**, *away*.

(3) = ‘any’: **āhwær**, *anywhere*.

(4) practically meaningless: **ābīdan**, *await*.

æf-, see **of-**.

æg- = ‘any,’ ‘each’: **æghwā**, *any one*.

æt- (1) = ‘at,’ ‘to’ (Lat. *ad-*): **æt-wītan**, *twit*, **æt-gæd-ere**, *together*.

(2) = ‘from,’ ‘away’: **æt-wīndan**, *escape from*.

and-, **ond-** is found as the prefix of a few nouns; for its meaning see **on-**.

be- (Ger. *be-*):

(1) = ‘about’: **besorgian**, *be anxious about*.

(2) makes an intransitive verb transitive: **behycgan**, *think about, consider*.

(3) privative: **beniman**, *take from, deprive*, **behēafd-ian**, *behead*.

(4) practically meaningless : **bebēodan**, *command*.

ed- (1) = 'counter-,' 're-' (Lat. re-): **edlēan**, *recompense*.

(2) occasionally for **æt-**: **edwītan**, *twit*.

for- (Ger. ver-, für-, vor-) :

(1) = 'away,' 'up,' 'utterly,' 'very,' denoting destruction effected by the action of the simple verb: **fordōn**, *destroy*.

(2) negative: **forbēodan**, *forbid*.

(3) = 'falsely': **forswērian**, *for swear*.

(4) = 'down upon': **forsēon**, *despise*.

(5) = 'in behalf of': **forstandan**, *stand up for*.

(6) = 'fore-': **forscēawian**, *foresee*.

fore- = 'fore-' (Lat. præ-): **foresēon**, *foresee, provide*.

ge- (Ger. ge-, Lat. con-) :

(1) = 'together': **gefēra**, *companion*.

(2) = 'attain by' the action of the simple verb: thus, **winnan**, *fight*, but **gewinnan**, *gain by fighting, conquer*.

(3) usual sign of past participle, when the verb lacks any other prefix: **gegān**, *gone*.

(4) practically meaningless: **gebed**, *prayer*.

mis- = 'mis-': **miswēndan**, *pervert*.

n- (for **ne-**) = 'not': **nā** (= **ne** + **ā**, *not ever*), *not at all*;
nis, *is not*.

of- (1) = 'off,' 'from' (Lat. de-, ab-, pro-, ex-): **ofspring**, *offspring*.

(2) = 'upon': **ofsittan**, *sit upon, oppress.*

(3) denoting offence, injury, death (Lat. ob-):
ofðyncan, *displease*, **ofstingan**, *stab to death.*

(4) = 'attain by' the action of the simple verb:
offaran, *catch up with*, **ofāscian**, *learn by asking.*

(5) intensive: **ofhyngrod**, *very hungry.*

ofer- (1) = 'over': **oferbrædan**, *overspread.*

(2) negative: **ofergietan**, *forget.*

on- (1) = 'on,' 'of': **ondrincan**, *drink of.*

(2) = 'from,' 'out of': **onspringan**, *burst forth.*

(3) = 'un-': **onlūcan**, *unlock.*

(4) intensive: **onstyrian**, *agitate.*

or- = 'without': **orsorg**, *without anxiety*, **orwēne**, *without hope, desperate.*

ōð- = 'away' (Lat. ex-, ab-, de-): **ōðflēon**, *flee away.*

tō- (1) = 'to': **tōcyme**, *advent.*

(2) = 'asunder' (Ger. zer-, Lat. dis-): **tōteran**,
tear apart, **tōcnāwan**, *discern.*

un- (1) = 'un-': **unforht**, *fearless*, **unrīm** (*unnumber*), *multitude.*

(2) = 'bad': **undæd**, *ill deed.*

wiðer- (1) = 'again': **wiðertrod**, *return.*

(2) = 'against': **wiðersaca**, *adversary.*

ymb- = 'around' (Lat. circum-): **ymbgang**, *circuit*,
yumbsittan, *besiege.*

143. Suffixes of masculine nouns. — The more important are **-end**, **-ere**, **-ing**, **-ling**, besides the originally independent words **-dōm**, **-hād**, and **-scipe**. The first four denote persons; the last three, qualities or abstractions. Besides these, there is a masculine suffix **-els**, denoting things.

-end (orig. **-ende**, forming present participles) = ‘-er,’
 ‘-or’: **scieppend**, *creator*. Contract nouns with
 this ending are **fēond**, *enemy*, **frēond**, *friend*.

-ere = ‘-er’: **hearpere**, *harper*, **bōcere**, *scribe*.

-ing (1) = ‘son of’: **Æðelwulfing**, *son of Athelwulf*,
Adaming, *son of Adam*.

(2) more generally: **Cęnting**, *inhabitant of Kent*,
cýning, *king*, **pęning**, *penny*. The **i** sometimes
 causes umlaut, sometimes not.

-ling: **geongling**, *youngling*, **hýrling**, *hireling*.

-dōm (Ger. **-thum**) = ‘-dom,’ ‘-ity,’ ‘-ism,’ ‘-ship,’ ‘-acy’:
Crístendōm, *Christianity*, **cýnedōm**, *kingship*.

-hād (Ger. **-heit**, **-keit**) = ‘-hood,’ ‘-head,’ ‘-ity’: **cild-**
hād, *childhood*, **mægdenhād**, *virginity*.

-scipe (Ger. **-schaft**) = ‘-ship,’ ‘-hood,’ ‘-ness,’ ‘-ity’:
frēondscipe, *friendship*, **fēondscipe**, *enmity*.

-els: **byrgels**, *tomb*, **rāedels**, *riddle*.

144. Suffixes of feminine nouns. — The chief are **-estre**,
-nes, **-ð**, **-ðu** (**-ðo**), **-ung** (**-ing**), and the originally inde-
 pendent **-rāeden**.

-estre = ‘-tress’: **lārestre**, *instructress*.

-nes (Ger. **-nis**) = ‘-ness,’ ‘-ity,’ forms abstracts from the present and past participial stems of verbs, but especially from adjectives: **ēhtnes**, *persecution*, **forsewennes**, *contempt*, **hālignes**, *holiness*.

-ð, -ðu, -ðo = ‘-th’: **hælð**, *health*, **strengðu**, *strength*. This ending was originally **-iða**, the **-i** of which caused umlaut.

-ung (occasionally **-ing**) = ‘-ing,’ ‘-ation,’ forms nouns from the present stem of (usually weak) verbs: **blētsung**, *blessing*, **costung**, *temptation*.

-ræden = ‘-red,’ ‘-ship,’ ‘-ity’: **hierdræden**, *guardianship*, *guard*.

145. Suffixes of neuter nouns. — The two principal, **-lāc** and **-rīce**, were originally independent words: —

-lāc (Mod. Eng. **-lock, -ledge**): **brýdlāc**, *wedding*.

-rīce = ‘rule,’ ‘realm,’ ‘region’: **biscoprice**, *bishopric*, **heofonrice**, *kingdom of heaven*.

146. Adjective suffixes. — The principal are **-en, -ig, -iht, -isc**, and **-ol**, besides the originally independent **-bære, -cund, -fæst, -feald, -full, -lēas, -lic, -mōd, -sum, -weard, -wēnde, -weorð, -wierðe**, and **-wīs**. The first four sometimes cause umlaut, sometimes not.

-en (Lat. **-inus**) = ‘-en’: **līnen**, *linen*, **gylden**, *golden*.

-ig (Ger. **-ig**) = ‘-y’: **ēadig**, *blessed*, **grædig**, *greedy*.

-iht (Ger. **-icht**) = ‘-y’: **hrēodihht**, *reedy*, **stæniht**, **stāniht**, *stony*.

-isc (Ger. *-isch*) = ‘-ish’: forms adjectives from common, but especially from proper nouns: **hæðenisc**, *heathenish*, **Englisc**, *English*.

-ol (Lat. *-ulus*) = ‘disposed to’: **swicol**, *deceitful*.

-bære (Ger. *-bar*, Lat. *-ferus*, *-fer*, *-ger*): **cwealmbære**, *deadly*, **lustbære**, *agreeable*.

-cund = ‘-ly’: **heofondcund**, *heavenly*.

-fæst (Ger. *-fest*) = ‘possessing,’ ‘firm in’: **stedefæst**, *possessing, or firm in, one’s place, steadfast*, **ārfæst**, *merciful, pious*.

-feald (Ger. *-falt*) = ‘-fold’: **fēowerfeald**, *fourfold*.

-full (Ger. *-voll*) = ‘-ful’: **gelēaffull**, *faithful*, **synfull**, *sinful*.

-lēas (Ger. *-los*) = ‘-less’: **ārlēas** (Ger. *ehrlös*), *infamous*.

-lic (Ger. *-lich*) = ‘-ly,’ ‘-al’: **cynelic**, *royal*, **eorðlic**, *terrestrial*.

-mōd (cf. Ger. *-müthig*) = ‘-minded’: **ānmōd** (cf. Ger. *einmüthig*), *unanimous*, **ēaðmōd**, *humble*.

-sum (Ger. *-sam*) = ‘-full,’ ‘-some,’ ‘-able’: **lufsum**, *lovable*, **wynsum**, *winsome*.

-weard (cf. Ger. *-wärts*) = ‘-ward’: **hāmweard**, *homeward, on the way home*, **andweard**, *present*.

-wende = ‘-ary’: **hālwende**, *salutary*.

-weorð, **-wurð** = ‘-worthy’: **ārweorð**, **ārwurð**, *venerable*.

-wierðe, **-wyrðe** (cf. Ger. *-würdig*) = ‘-worthy’: **nyt-wierðe**, *useful*.

-wīs = ‘-wise’: **gescēadwīs**, *intelligent*, **rihtwīs**, *righteous*.

147. Composition. — Compounds are numerous in Old English. In this respect it resembles German and Greek, while Modern English has allowed this power of forming compounds to fall into disuse, largely through the influence of Latin and French. For this reason it would often be easier to make an idiomatic translation into Old English from Greek than from Latin; in its plastic and pictorial quality a page of Old English poetry suggests Homer or Pindar rather than Virgil or Horace, and among Roman poets the earlier, such as Lucretius.

The relation of the first element of compounds to the second should always be noted. The first limits or defines the second, and for this reason takes the stress; but the precise relation of the two elements is now of one sort, now of another. Sometimes it may be expressed by a preposition, sometimes by the sign of a case, sometimes by an adjective: **gærs-hoppa**, **gærs-stapa**, *grasshopper*, *hopper in or through the grass*; **han-crēd**, *cock's-crowing*; **hēah-engel**, *high-angel*, *arch-angel*; **gim-stān**, *gem-stone*, *jewel*.

Although compounds should be studied with reference to the meaning and relation of their components, they should frequently be translated by a simple Modern English word. Thus **gærshoppa** may sometimes be translated by *locust*; **gimstān** should never be translated *gemstone*; and **hēahfæder** should always be rendered by *patriarch* or *father*.

SYNTAX.

148. Object of this sketch.—The object of the present sketch is not to present a complete view of Old English syntax, even in outline, but rather to call attention to such peculiarities as are most likely to cause difficulty. Many constructions common to all the cultivated European languages, especially to the inflected ones, will either be passed over without notice or but briefly touched upon.

Nouns.

149. Subject.—The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. For that of an infinitive, see **169**.

150. Predicate nominative.—A predicate noun (or adjective), denoting the same person or thing as its subject, agrees with it in case. Examples: **ic eom Apollonius; ðæt ic gewurde wædla.**

151. Apposition.—A noun annexed to another noun, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case. Examples: **and wēnde ðæt hēo Diana wære, sēo gyden; Arcestrates (gen.) dohtor ðæs cyninges.**

Note **hīe sume** = *some of them*.

152. Vocative. — The vocative, which is identical in form with the nominative, is used in direct address. It may be preceded by an interjection, the second personal pronoun, or a possessive pronoun; this possessive pronoun, when followed by an adjective, usually takes before the latter the demonstrative pronoun *se*. Examples: *ðū sǣ Neptune; mīn se lēofesta fæder.*

153. Genitive with nouns. — The genitive is distinctively an adnominal case; that is, its principal function is to limit the meaning of a noun. Its sign is *of*. It denotes various relations, not all of which can be strictly defined.

a) Relationship: *ūre ealra mōdor.*

b) Source: *sunnan and mōnan lēoman; ðære hearpan swēg; frēmdra ðēoda ungeðwāernes.*

c) Subject. The noun in the genitive stands for the *author* of the action denoted by the noun upon which the genitive is dependent. Example: *ðīnra halgena earnungum.*

d) Object. This may be known by the possibility of turning the noun upon which it is dependent into a cognate verb, when the noun in the genitive will become the *object* of that verb; for example, in *Frēan egesan*, *Frēan* is an obj. gen., because, if we substitute for the noun *eges*, *fear*, the verb *fear*, the noun *Lord* becomes the object of the verb. Examples: *ðæs dæges liehtinge; līfes tilungum; unscēððigra beswicend; lāswe scēapa and nēata; hyht hāle.*

e) Cause (denoted by *for*): **lēan ðissa swāsenda.**

f) Characteristic: **meregreotan ælces hīwes; trēowum missenlicra cynna; setl his mægenðrymnesse.** Here, perhaps, belongs: **werhādes and wifhādes hē gescēop hīe.**

g) Specification of time: **ānes mōnðes fierst.**

h) Specification of place: **gārsecges īgland** (Latin influence).

i) Unclassified: **ðære nēowolnesse brādnes; ðæt mægen lufe; ðære spræce ende.**

154. Partitive genitive. — The genitive denotes the whole, with words denoting a part.

a) With nouns: **unrīm ceastra; fela gēara; lȳthwōn cwicera cynna.**

b) With pronouns: **manna ænigne; hiera nān; hwilc ēower; gumena gehwæne; hwæthwugu swilces; sē manna.** Note the peculiar **ānra gehwile**, *each one*.

c) With numerals: **eahta fōta; fēower hund wintra.**

d) With superlatives: **bēacna beorhtost.** Similarly, with a cognate noun, to denote eminence: **dryhtna Dryhten.**

155. Genitive with adjectives. — The genitive is used to define an adjective with respect to the part or relation in which the quality is conceived. Such

adjectives are frequently akin to verbs which take the genitive (156), and sometimes correspond to Latin adjectives of inclination in *-ax*. They may be roughly classified as follows:—

a) Want: **dællēas mīnes rēnes; īdel and unnyt gōda** (154. *b)* **gehwilces**.

b) Fulness: **berende** (Lat. *ferax*) **missenlicra fugla**.

c) Desire: **ātes georn**.

d) Retentiveness: **fæsthafol** (Lat. *tenax*) **mīnra gōda**.

e) Knowledge: **wordes wīs**.

156. Genitive with verbs.—The genitive is used with many verbs, mostly such as denote mental action, but also with those of cessation and refusal, and some others. Frequently the underlying notion is a *partitive* one; that is, the object is conceived as affected *in part*.

a) Desire: **friðes wilnedon**.

b) Request: **biddende mīnra gōda**.

c) Rejoicing: **pæs se hlanca gefeah**.

d) Experiment: **wæda cunnedan**.

e) Use: **eardes brūcað**.

f) Care: **gīemden ðæs dæges**.

g) Supposition or belief: **nōhtes elles wēndon; ðæs geliefan**.

- h) Fear: **ne ondræd ðū ðē æniges ðinges.**
- i) Granting: **āra unnan.**
- j) Refusal: **tīðe forwierndest.**
- k) Cessation: **geswāc his weorces.**
- l) Awaiting: **ðæs wordes bād.**
- m) Approaching: **cēoles nēosan.**
- n) Producing: **gāsta strēonan.**

157. Adverbial genitive. — Certain adverbial relations may be expressed by the genitive (cf. 71). Example: **hine gewende ðæs wegēs.**

1. The demonstrative **ðæt** is frequently used in the genitive in various adverbial senses. Thus of time, **ðæs (ðe)** = *from the time that, after, afterwards*; of manner, = *as far as, as*; of cause, = *for this, because*; etc.

158. Genitive with prepositions. — The genitive is occasionally used with certain prepositions, such as **wið, tō,** and **wana.** Examples: **wið ðæs fæstengeates; tō ðæs; ānes wana siextig (78. 5).**

159. Genitive with other cases. — Verbs which take a genitive denoting the thing, may also take a dative or accusative of the person.

a) With dative (including reflexives, 184): **him (164. a) ne ūðe (156. i) God lęngran līfes; nolde gē mē (dat.) wæda tīðian (156. i); gē mē (dat.) ætes forwierndon (156. j); Apollonius**

hiere (164. *c*) *ḡæs ḡancode; ne ondræd* (156. *h*)
ḡū ḡē (161. 1) *æniges ḡinges*.

b) With accusative (including impersonals, 190):
ḡē (acc.) *ōhtes āxian; hine fultumes bædon;*
ḡē twēonie ḡære spræce; mærelīḡendum (161)
miltsa biddan wuldres Āldor (acc.); *ḡegnas*
ḡearle gelyste (190) *gārgewinnes*.

160. Dative in general. — The dative denotes the indirect object, usually the person *to* or *for* or *with* reference to whom something is done. When used with verbs (164), the general notion of the verb may often be regarded as implying some sort of *giving* (or its opposite), if this term be employed in its widest sense.

1. The dative is sometimes used for the instrumental (174): *cleopode micelre stefne*.

161. Dative of benefit or interest. — The sign of this dative is *for*. Examples: *scipu ēow eallum ic wyrce*. Perhaps also: *ḡīnre eorḡan ne rīnḡ*.

1. Akin to this is the *reflexive dative* (184): *ḡæt hīe him (for themselves) wæpnu worhten*.

2. Similar, too, is the *dative of possession*, which, without much change in the sense, might be replaced by the genitive: *him fēollon tēaras of ḡāem ēagam* (so Ger. *ihm fielen Thränen von den Augen*); *him mōn feaht on lāst; wulfum tō willan*.

162. Dative of deprivation. — Some verbs of deprivation (cf. 177) take the dative of the object removed, sometimes with an accusative of the person *from* whom. Examples: **hē hine unscrȳdde ðāem healf-an sci ccelse; ðingum ongierede and genacodode.**

163. Dative of resemblance or approach. — This is self-explanatory.

a) With verbs: **geflit cymð ðāem behealdendum.**

b) With adjectives (cf. 165): **fugole gelīcost.**

164. Dative with various verbs. — Such are verbs of (160) —

a) Giving or imparting: **ðearfum dāelan.**

b) Speaking: **hiere āreahte; him gecȳðan.**

c) Thanking: **Gode ðanciende.**

d) Promising: **behēt mīnum lārēowe.**

e) Serving and benefiting: **hē him ðēnode; frēmmen gehwile oðrum; him fēng God on fultum; manigum genyhtsumian.**

f) Obeying and following: **gehīersumian mīnum willan; ðe hiere folgode.**

g) Pitying: **gemiltsa mē.**

h) Requiting: **forgieldan æghwileum.**

i) Ruling: **ðēodum racian.** Similarly, **ȳðum stilde.**

j) Receiving: **onfēng ðāre wununge.**

k) Pleasing and suiting: **him eallum līcode; ðē gedafenað.**

l) Seeming: **mē ðyncð.**

m) Opposing: **worulde wiðsacan.**

n) Betraying or deserting: **swicað ðē.**

o) Using (rare): **notað cræfte minum.**

165. Dative with adjectives. — The dative is chiefly employed with adjectives signifying *dear, generous, useful, obedient*, etc., and the opposite. Examples: **lidwērigum ēste; Gode ðone lēofan fæder** (*the father dear to God*); **behēfe ic eom cyninge; folcum fracod.**

1. The dative of want or deprivation (cf. 162) is also found here: **Gode orfeorme.**

166. Dative with prepositions. — The dative is by far the commonest case with prepositions. Examples would be superfluous.

1. After the preposition **on** (*in*), certain adjectives, like **mid** and **ufanweard**, agree with the following noun, instead of being treated like nouns governing it in the genitive, as are their counterparts in Mod. Eng. Examples: **on midre ðære sǣ** (so Lat. *in medio mari*, but Mod. Eng. *in the midst of the sea*); **on ðām fæstene ufanweardum.**

167. Dative absolute. — A noun and a participle, not involved in the main construction of the sentence,

may stand by themselves in the dative, and constitute an adverbial clause, most frequently of time. This construction is imitated from the Latin ablative absolute. Examples: **onfangenre his blētsunge; ðisum eallum ðus gedōnum.**

168. Accusative after transitive verbs. — The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative. Examples: **hē swang ðone top; ealne nōrðdæl genōmon.**

1. A special case of the foregoing is the cognate accusative, in which the object is etymologically akin to the verb: **libbað hiera līf.**

169. Subject accusative. — The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative. Examples: **geseah hē sumne fiscere gān; hē gehierde ðone blissesang ūpāstigan.**

170. Accusative of extent. — The accusative may denote extent of time or space. Example: **wæs se storm ealne ðone dæg swīðe micel and strang.**

171. Accusative after impersonals. — Impersonals (190) of appetite or passion govern an accusative of the person suffering. Example: **mē hyngrede.**

172. Accusative after prepositions. — Some prepositions always govern the accusative, others only under

certain circumstances. Those of the former class are **geond**, **ōð**, **ðurh**, and **ymb(e)**; of the latter, a large number that more frequently take the dative (166).

1. Of the second class, **on** (**in**) is perhaps the commonest representative, taking the *dative* when denoting *rest in*, the *accusative* when denoting *motion towards*; this distinction, however, is not invariably observed. Examples of accusative: **inēode on ðæt bæð**; **in ðæt mynster ēode**.

Exceptions to the rule are: **on ðone seofodan dæg**; **mid ðone bisceop**.

173. Two accusatives. — Verbs signifying *to make*, *to name*, *to regard*, and the like, may take a predicate accusative besides the object accusative. Examples: **God hine (obj. acc.) geworhte wundorlicne and fægerne**; **God geciegde ðā drýgnesse (obj. acc.) eorðan**; **hwonne gesāwon wē ðē (obj. acc.) hungrigne?**

174. Instrumental in general. — The instrumental, which in form is sometimes (especially in the plural) indistinguishable from the dative (see 160. 1), denotes *manner*, *means*, *instrument*, or *material*. Its sign is *by* or *with*. Examples: **geseah blīðum andwlitan**; **gestaðolade strangum mihtum**; **gefæstnade folmum**; **gefræt Wade foldan scēatas leomum and lēafum**.

This case is more common in poetry than in prose, where its place is often taken by **mid** with the dative; even in poetry, the simple instrumental sometimes alternates with the dative accompanied by **mid**, *e.g.* (*Andreas*, 320) **sārcwide** occurs in the same construction as **mid oferhygdum**. Occasionally the instrumental is employed where Modern English would use an accusative: **mundum brugdon**, *they waved (with) their hands*.

The instrumental being one of the more difficult cases to master, a few of its regular combinations are separately appended:—

a) With verbs of journeying and transporting, where its sign may almost be regarded as *in*: **cēolum liðan**; **fæðmum fērian**; **sīðe gesōhte**. So with **libban**: **drēamum lifdon**.

b) With verbs of speaking, to indicate voice or language (see also 160. 1): **wordum cwæð**; **ondsweorodon gēnewidum**.

c) With past participles, generally preceding the latter (common in poetry): **sweordum gehēawen**; **hilde gesæged**; **dōme gedȳrsod**.

d) With adjectives (generally in poetry), to denote *in what respect*, or sometimes *instrumentality*: **feðerum hrēmig**; **ęcgum gecoste**; **mundum frēorig**; **synnum wunde**. These last two afford the metrical combinations exhibited in 217. 1—among the commonest in Old English.

175. Instrumental with prepositions. — **Mid**, which frequently takes the dative, is sometimes found with the instrumental, especially in the Anglian dialect; so occasionally **for**. Examples: **mid ealle**; **mid micle sige**; **mid ðȳ rēadestan gōdwebbe**; **for hwȳ**.

176. Adverbial instrumental. — The instrumental may denote adverbial relations, especially *time when*. Examples: **sume dæge**; **ðȳ seofodan dæge**; **ælc gēare**; **word stunde āhōf**.

1. It may also denote the *number of times*: **siextiene sīðum**.

2. The instrumental may denote *the way*: **ðȳ ilcan wege**.

177. Instrumental of deprivation. — Some verbs of deprivation may take an object *of which* in the instrumental (cf. 162). Examples: **māðmum bedæled**; **æhtum benæmde**.

178. Instrumental of difference. — The instrumental denotes the measure of difference. Examples: **micle lēngran**; **ðȳ bealdran**; **þon cymlicor**; **strēngre eallum ðāem ærgedōnum**.

Adjectives.

179. Agreement of adjectives. — Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. This applies also to demonstrative, possessive, and indefinite pro-

nouns, and to participles, when used as adjectives. When used predicatively, however, participles may be uninflected.

180. Strong and weak adjectives. — For the distinction in the use of strong and weak adjectives, see 55.

181. Adjectives as nouns. — An adjective may be used as a noun (see 55). Examples: **ðā ymbsittendan; hwā giefð ðæm uncūðan lifes fultum.**

Adverbs.

182. Use of adverbs. — Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

183. Two negatives. — Two or more negatives strengthen the negation, instead of making an affirmative. Example: **ðīn nis nān wiht.**

Pronouns.

184. Reflexive pronouns. — The reflexive pronoun (82), in the dative (161. 1; cf. 159) or accusative, is used with certain verbs whose counterparts in Mod. Eng. would not necessarily require it.

a) Dative: **worhton him hōcas; bār him eaxe on handa; him land curon; gewāt him; far ðē; cierde wē ūs.**

b) Accusative: **hē geręste hine; ðæt trēow brāet hit; bewęnde hine; hine gemęngde; ēow fýsan.**

185. Relative pronouns. — For these see **87.**

Verbs.

186. Forms of the verb. — Old English verbs are either transitive or intransitive. They have two voices, — active and passive; three moods, — indicative, optative, and imperative — besides the infinitive, gerund, and participles; and five tenses, — present, preterit, perfect, pluperfect, and future. The uses of these forms correspond, in general, to those of the same forms in other languages.

187. Voices. — The forms of the active voice are given in **95**; those of the passive are formed by adding the past participle to the appropriate tense of **wesan** (**bēon**), *be*, or **weorðan**, *become*.

188. Tenses. — Only two independent tenses are distinguished by their stems, — the present and the preterit. The present may also be used for the future; the preterit, for any of the three past tenses. Otherwise the distinctions of tense are indicated by means of auxiliaries, as in Modern English: the future being formed by the infinitive with **sculan**, *shall* (**133**), and

willan, *will* (139); the perfect and pluperfect, by the past participles with the appropriate tenses of **habban**, *have* (121), in the case of transitive verbs, and of **wesan**, *be* (138), in the case of intransitives.

189. Agreement.—A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person. Exceptions are:—

1. When the subject consists of two nouns denoting essentially the same thing, united by a conjunction, the verb in agreement may be in the singular: **sīe sibb and geðwāernes betweenh ūs**.

2. A collective noun may take a verb in the plural: **sēo cnēoris wāgon and lāddon**.

3. A plural verb, with a predicate in the plural, may be introduced by a neuter singular: **ðæt wāron engla gāstas; hit ðonne wāron mīne wāteru**.

NOTE.—The subject is sometimes to be supplied (cf. 190): **hēt ðæt lēoht Dæg**.

190. Impersonals.—Impersonal verbs are those whose subject is an implied **hit**, *it*. They are often transitive, taking an object in the dative or accusative (164. *k, l*; 171). Examples: **mē ðyncð; mē hyngrede; swā gesælde iū; hū hyre æt beaduwe gespēow**. Sometimes they take two cases: **pegnas gelyste gārgewinnes** (159. *b*).

191. Indicative.—The indicative has the functions common to it in most languages.

192. Optative in general. — The optative, sometimes called the subjunctive, is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind. It is employed either in independent sentences or in subordinate clauses. Of these subordinate clauses there are two principal kinds, — substantive or noun clauses, and adverbial clauses. Of these, the noun clauses, generally introduced by *ðæt*, are the more important. Whenever the conjunction *ðæt* can be translated *in order that* or *so that*, it introduces an adverbial clause; otherwise, a noun clause. Other adverbial clauses are those of *place*, *time*, and *manner*. Less frequent are *adjective clauses*, introduced by or implying a *relative pronoun*.

193. Optative in independent clauses. — Under this head falls the use of the optative (*a*) to express a command or an emphatic wish; (*b*) in doubtful questions implying a negative answer; and (*c*) in hypothetical sentences.

a) Command: *bēo nū lēoht; ādl ðē fornime; gān wē sēcean.*

b) Question: *hwæt ðonne mē frēmede gedeorf mīn?*

c) Hypothesis: *sīe ðæt ðū sīe.*

194. Optative in noun clauses. — The noun clause takes the place either of the subject (or predicate nominative) or of the object of a principal clause.

The object clause is commonest after verbs of knowledge, affirmation, command, and desire, such as *know*, *say*, *order*, *wish*, etc.

a) Subject clause: *līcað ðē ðæt Apollonius ðus heonan fare; wēn is ðæt ðū gemēte sumne.*

b) Object clause: *gewite hwæt se geonga mann sīe; ne meahte findan hwile hiera forliden wære; ic ðē bebēode ðæt ðū ðæt nānigum mēnn cȳðe; ic wȳsce ðæt ic eft forlidennesses gefare.*

NOTE.—Certainty is rendered by the indicative: *ic oncnāwe ðæt ðū eart wel gelæred.*

195. Optative by attraction.—This is a name given to the optative found in clauses following another optative. Examples: *sprytte (193. a) sēo eorðe trēow, ðæs sād sīe on him selfum; wēn is ðæt ðū gemēte (194. a) sumne ðæt ðē gemiltsie; ðæs-ðe ðū geare forwite (196. f) hwām ðū gemiltsie; ðæt sum gestrēon ic mē begiete (196. f), ðanan ic mē āfēde.*

196. Optative in adverbial clauses.—These are clauses of place (*where*), of time (*before*, *until*, *when*, *while*), of manner (*as if*), conditional (*if*), concessive (*though*), final (*in order that*), and consecutive (*so that*). Hypothetical or indefinite character in some measure attaches to the optative in each.

a) Place: **ðæt ðū wer gecēose ðær ðū self wille.**

b) Time: **ær se dæg cume; bīd oð-ðæt hē cume.**

c) Manner: **swilce hē cuma wære.**

d) Conditional: **gif ðū ne finde nænne, wend ðonne hider ongēan; swā hit ðē ne mislicie.** But sometimes indicative: **gif ðū mē geliefst.**

e) Concessive: **ðēah ðū stille sīe.**

f) Final: **and gesette hīe on ðære heofonan, ðæt hīe scinen ofer eorðan.** So with **ðæs-ðe**: **ðæs-ðe ðū geare forwite.** Negative: **ðȳ-læs-ðe ðē twēonie.**

g) Consecutive: **ādī ðē fornime, ðæt ðū ne bēo hāl.**

197. Optative in adjective clauses. — Whenever a sentence introduced by an actual or virtual relative implies an element of doubt, it may take the optative. Examples: **gecēose ænne, hwilcne ðū wille** (**hwilcne** is a virtual relative); **swā-hwæt-swā ðū wille.**

198. Imperative. — The imperative is used in commands, sometimes with the second personal pronoun, sometimes without. Examples: **bēo blīðe mid ūs; wite ðū; gē ęfthwērfað tō ciricean.**

199. Infinitive. — The infinitive is construed as a neuter noun, the subject or object of a finite verb.

When the object, it may itself have a subject noun or pronoun in the accusative (169).

a) Subject (or pred. nom., 150): **micel hienð and sceamu hit is nellan.**

b) Object: **nellan wesan; hēt hyre ðīnenne hēafod onwriðan.**

1. An object infinitive is sometimes used for purposes of specification. With verbs of motion this may often be translated by the present participle, occasionally by the infinitive of purpose (= *in order to*). Examples: **cōmon līðan; gewāt him gangan; fēran gāsta strēonan** (purpose).

200. Gerund. — The gerund may usually be translated by the Mod. Eng. infinitive, in a variety of senses. Examples: **cōmon mīnre dohtor tō bid-danne; land swīðe feorr tō gesēceanne; ðā ēstas him beforan lēgde ðe hē him tō bēodanne hāfde.**

Prepositions.

201. Cases governed. — For the cases governed by prepositions, see 158, 166, 172, 175.

1. The preposition sometimes follows its object, or immediately precedes the verb, and at times is difficult to distinguish from an adverb, or a prefix of the verb. Examples: **ðe (87. c) ðū æfter āxodest; ðe ðū swā wel wið gedēst.**

Conjunctions.

202. Correlatives.—Some of the more common correlatives are the following:—

a) *ge* *ge*, *both* *and*.

b) *þe* *þe*, *whether* *or*.

c) *nē* *nē*, *neither* *nor*.

d) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ðā-ðā} \text{ðā} \\ \text{ðā} \text{ðā} \\ \text{ðonne} \text{ðonne} \end{array} \right\},$ *when* *(then)*.

e) *ðēah* *ðēah*, *though* *(yet)*.

f) *swā-swā* *swā*, *so* *as*.

g) *swā* *swā*, *the* *the*.

PROSODY.

203. Old English verse stichic.—Old English verse is rarely strophic, but almost without exception stichic; that is, consists of ungrouped lines, following each other as in Modern English blank verse.

204. The line and the hemistich.—The line of poetry consists of two hemistichs, separated by the cæsure. Example:—

bord and brād swyrd, brūne helmas.

The hemistich may be either normal or expanded. A normal hemistich contains two metrical feet. Example:—

cēne under cumblum.

An expanded hemistich contains three metrical feet. Example:—

swiðmōd sincea āhte.

205. The foot.—A metrical foot is a portion of a line containing one primary stress. The syllable receiving the primary stress may or may not be followed or preceded by one or more lighter or slurred syllables.

Of the lighter syllables following or preceding a primary stress, one may, under certain circumstances, receive a secondary stress (23). A syllable which receives neither primary nor secondary stress is called unstressed.

206. Stressed and unstressed syllables. — The primary stress nearly always falls upon a long syllable; this long syllable may, however, be represented by two syllables, of which the first is short, and the second so light as to admit of syncopation. The substitution of two such short syllables for a single long one is called resolution.

A long syllable is one which contains a long vowel or diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two consonants. A short syllable is one which contains a short vowel followed by a single consonant (4). Long and short syllables, when stressed, are represented in metrical schemes by the macron, —, and the breve, ∪, respectively. Stressed syllables are indicated by the acute or grave accent, according as the stress is primary or secondary. Unstressed syllables, whether short or long, are represented by the oblique cross, ×.

The syllable which receives the primary stress is usually the root syllable of a word, while the lighter or slurred syllables comprise the terminations, enclitics, and proclitics; occasionally, however, the second element of a compound word is reckoned as a slurred syllable, though usually it takes a secondary stress.

207. Classification of feet.—The terms *iambic*, *trochaic*, etc., are used analogically, with reference to stress, and not, as in Greek and Latin prosody, with primary reference to quantity. This being understood, Old English metrical feet may be classified as follows:—

1. **Monosyllabic:** The monosyllabic foot regularly consists of a long syllable under the primary stress, \angle . This foot is never found except in conjunction with one of the dactylic type having a secondary stress (1. *h* to 1. *k*, 216).

2. **Disyllabic:** The disyllabic foot may be either trochaic, $\angle \times$, or iambic, $\times \angle$. In the trochaic foot, the unstressed syllable may be replaced by a long syllable under the secondary stress. The dactyl formed by the resolution of the trochee may be called the light dactyl, to distinguish it from the heavy or normal dactyl, in which the first syllable is long.

3. **Trisyllabic:** The trisyllabic foot is either dactylic, $\angle \times \times$, or anapæstic, $\times \times \angle$. If dactylic, either the second or third syllable has in some cases secondary stress.

4. **Polysyllabic:** If tetrasyllabic, this foot resembles either a first pæon, $\angle \times \times \times$, or a fourth pæon, $\times \times \times \angle$. If it contains a greater number of syllables, it is still essentially dactylic or anapæstic in effect, $\angle \times \times \times \dots$, or $\dots \times \times \times \angle$.

In any of the foregoing feet, resolution may take place, thus apparently increasing the number of typical syllables.

208. Anacrusis. — Before hemistichs beginning with a primary stress, one or more unstressed syllables may occur. These unstressed syllables constitute what is known as the anacrusis. It is rare at the beginning of the second hemistich, but more frequent before the first.

209. Expanded hemistichs. — These are formed by prefixing a foot of the form $\angle \times \dots$ (less frequently \angle , and rarely in the first hemistich $\times \angle$) to a regular hemistich of two stresses. Expanded lines are employed in passages of peculiar elevation and solemnity, or expressive of unwonted agitation. The expanded hemistich has three stresses, instead of the normal two, since the prefixed portion differs from the anacrusis in having a primary stress. As a rule, the first and second stresses of the first hemistich, when expanded, take alliteration, while in the second hemistich the place of the alliterative syllable is unchanged, coinciding normally with the (new) second stress. Example:—

bēaga and beorhtra māðma, hi þæt þære beorhtan idese.

210. Alliteration. — Alliteration is a poetical ornament which is a distinctive feature of Old English verse. It consists in the employment of the same or similar sounds at the beginning of two or more syllables which receive the primary stress. The second hemistich contains one such alliterative syllable, as a rule that which

has the first primary stress; the first hemistich has regularly two, though frequently only one. The alliterative sound must be the same throughout, if consonantal; if vocalic, it is usually different in the three syllables. Examples are: —

- a) *grame gūðfrecaŋ, gāras seŋdon.*
- b) *on ðæt dægred sylf, dynedan scildas.*
- c) *earn ætes georn, ūrigfeðera.*

In expanded lines, the additional foot frequently takes alliteration, thus removing it from one of its normal positions.

211. Alliteration in relation to stress. — The accentual principles observed by Old English poets in their management of alliteration virtually reduce themselves to one: that the most important syllables of the most important words should receive primary stress. It must be borne in mind, however, that the stress is sometimes rhetorical, that is, depends not so much upon the intrinsic weight of the word as upon that which belongs to it in virtue of its relation to other words in the same sentence. For example, a preposition might be expected to have less intrinsic weight than a following noun, yet instances occur where the preposition alliterates.

One general rule is that if a noun and a verb are found in the same hemistich, it is the noun that alliterates.

212. Difference between the two hemistichs.—The first hemistich frequently differs from the second, not only in the number of its alliterative syllables, but also in that of the unstressed syllables admitted between two primary stresses, or in the form of anacrusis.

213. Rime.—Rime and various forms of assonance are occasionally employed by Old English poets, sometimes for the purpose of uniting more closely the two halves of the same line, less frequently to associate the second half of a line with the first or second half of the following line, rarely in formulas or compounds within the same hemistich.

214. Masculine and feminine rime.—Masculine or monosyllabic rime is perfect, when the riming vowels are identical, and are followed by the same consonants or consonant combinations. Example (from *Bēowulf*):—

ēode yrremōd : him of ēagum stōd.

Feminine or polysyllabic (usually disyllabic) rime is perfect when the first riming syllables are perfect masculine rimes and the following syllables are identical. Example:—

scildburh scāron, scēotend wāron.

There are also various sorts of imperfect rime.

215. Kennings.—A characteristic ornament of Old English, as well as of early Teutonic poetry in general,

are the kennings. This term, which is of Norse origin, designates those synonyms or periphrastic phrases which are employed to diversify the expression of a thought, or to avoid the repetition of the same word, usually a noun. Many of these are striking metaphors, but by no means all; some, though metaphorical in their origin, were undoubtedly so familiar to the poet and audience that their peculiar significance was overlooked, and they were regarded as stereotyped and convenient synonyms. Examples of kennings for God are: **ārfæst cyning**, **mīhtig dryhten**, **metod**, **frēa ælmihtig**.

216. Ordinary sequences of long and short syllables.¹— Before proceeding to examine the metrical constitution of the hemistich, it is desirable to consider the ordinary sequences of long and short syllables in Old English, and particularly in Old English poetry.

1. Long syllables followed by short or slurred syllables. A long stressed syllable may be followed:—

- a) by a derivative or inflectional syllable: **scūras** ∠×
- b) by a monosyllabic proclitic: **eft tō** ∠×
- c) by a monosyllabic prefix: **mōd ā(réted)** ∠×
- d) by a derivative or inflectional syllable + a monosyllabic prefix or proclitic: **cēnra tō** ∠××
- e) by a disyllabic proclitic or prefix: **fýnd ofer(wunnen)** ∠××

¹ This paragraph is designed only for reference.

f) by a monosyllabic proclitic + a monosyllabic prefix: **forð on ge(rihte)** $\angle \times \times$

g) by two monosyllabic words: **him ðā se** $\angle \times \times$

h) by two syllables, derivative or inflectional: **mōd-igre** $\angle \underline{\angle} \times$

i) by the second element of a compound word, with or without a derivative syllable interposed: —

(*a*) **scīrmāled** $\angle \underline{\angle} \times$

(*β*) **hildelēoð** $\angle \times \underline{\angle}$

j) by a disyllabic word, with the stress upon its second syllable: **nēar ætstōp** (*Bēow.*) $\angle \times \underline{\angle}$

k) by a derivative or inflectional syllable + a monosyllabic word: **ēaðe mæg** $\angle \times \underline{\angle}$

2. Long syllables preceded by short or slurred syllables. A long stressed syllable may be preceded: —

a) by a monosyllabic prefix: **gefēoll** $\times \angle$

b) by a monosyllabic proclitic: **ðurh mīn(e)** $\times \angle$

c) by a derivative or inflectional syllable: (**frym**)**ða God** $\times \angle$

d) by a derivative or inflectional ending + a monosyllabic prefix or proclitic: (**hlanc**)**a gefeah** $\times \times \angle$

e) by a disyllabic ending: (**lār**)**ena gōd** (*Bēow.*) $\times \times \angle$

f) by a disyllabic proclitic: **syððan frymð(e)** $\times \times \angle$

g) by two monosyllabic words: **ðā ðe hwīl(e)** $\times \times \angle$

3. Long syllables followed by long or stressed syllables. In addition to the cases instanced under 1. *h* and *i*, which belong under the head of secondary stress,

stressed syllables proper are here to be considered. A long syllable may be followed:—

- a*) by a monosyllabic word: **brād swyrd** $\angle \angle (\angle \backslash)$
- b*) when a monosyllable, by the first syllable of a disyllabic word: **dōm āg(on)** $\angle \angle (\angle \backslash)$
- c*) when a monosyllable, by the first syllable of a trisyllabic word: **sang hild(elēoð)** $\angle \angle (\angle \backslash)$
- d*) when the second syllable of a disyllabic word, by the first syllable of a disyllabic word: **(ge)gān hæfd(on)** $\angle \angle (\angle \backslash)$
- e*) when the first syllable of a polysyllabic word (often a compound), by the second syllable of the same word: **nīðheard, burhlēod(um)** $\angle \angle (\angle \backslash)$

4. Short stressed syllables followed by short or slurred syllables. A short, stressed syllable may be followed:—

- a*) by a single unstressed syllable, forming with it two metrical syllables: **cýning** $\cup \times$
- b*) by an unstressed syllable, forming with it the metrical equivalent of a single long syllable, and capable of being substituted for the latter in every position: **æðe(1e)** $\cup \times (= \angle)$

Compounds are metrically regarded, for the most part, as composed of two independent words, but their length, taken in connection with the invariability of their typical forms, restricts the employment of certain compounds to particular metrical schemes. Thus, compounds like **hildenædran** are adapted to hemistichs of the trochaic

type, $\angle \times | \angle \times$; those like **burhlēodum** to the type $\angle | \angle \times \times$.

217. Constitution of the hemistich. — There are five normal types of the hemistich, which may be called respectively (cf. **207**) the 1) trochaic (dactylic), 2) the iambic (anapæstic), 3) the iambic-trochaic, 4) the monosyllabic-bacchic (or -cretic), and the 5) bacchic-monosyllabic. Types 4 and 5 occasionally become trochaic-bacchic and bacchic-trochaic respectively.

Every hemistich ends either in a stressed syllable, or in a stressed syllable followed by a single short syllable (exceptionally by two short syllables, as in **216. 4. b**).

Occasionally a greater number of unstressed syllables than three occur together, but without destroying the character of the verse as belonging to one of the foregoing types.

218. Constitution of the various types. — 1. The first or trochaic (dactylic) type is formed by the union of two feet like those found in 1. *a* to 1. *g* above. Thus: —

biddan wylle	$\angle \times \angle \times$
cwlcera cynna	$\angle \times \times \angle \times$
ealde ge geonge	$\angle \times \times \angle \times$

With anacrusis (**208**): —

oððe sundoryrfes	$\times \times \angle \times \angle \times$
-------------------------	---

Occasionally, by the introduction of two consecutive long syllables, as in 3. *e*, there occur hemistichs of these forms: —

scildburh seāron	∠ ∽ ∠ ×
helmas and hupseax	∠ × × ∠ ∽

A short stressed syllable is rare:—

ārfæst cyning	∠ × ∽ ×
---------------	-----------

2. The second or iambic (anapæstic) type is formed by the union of two feet like those found in 2. *a* to 2. *g* above. Thus:—

se hȳhsta dǣl	× ∠ × ∠
berað linde forð	× × ∠ × ∠
nū ic gumena gehwæne	× × ∽ × × ∽

With extra unstressed syllables in the *first* foot (207. 4):—

þæt hē in þæt būrgeteld	× × × × ∠ × ∠
-------------------------	-----------------

3. The third or iambic-trochaic type is formed by the union of two feet like those found in 1. *a* to 1. *g* and 2. *a* to 2. *g* respectively. Thus:—

and cōmpwige	× ∠ ∠ ×
and gē dōm āgon	× × ∠ ∠ ×
on ðām sigewūge	× × ∽ ∠ ×

Rarely a short stressed syllable:—

of hornbogan	× ∠ ∽ ×
æt ðām æscplegan	× × ∠ ∽ ×

With extra unstressed syllables in the *first* foot:—

þe hīe ofercuman mihton	× × × × ∽ ∠ ×
-------------------------	-----------------

It will be observed that where two long syllables meet in the middle of the hemistich there is such a sequence as in 3. *a* to 3. *e*.

4. The fourth or monosyllabic-bacchic type is formed by the union of a monosyllabic foot with such as are found in 1. *h* and 1. *i* (*a*). Thus:—

mægð mōdigre	∠ ∠ ∼ ×
hæleð higerōfe	∪ × ∪ × ∼ ×

Similarly, the monosyllabic-cretic takes groups like 1. *i* (*β*), 1. *j*, and 1. *k* for the second foot:—

sang hildelēoð	∠ ∠ × ∼
-----------------------	-----------

An example of the trochaic-bacchic type (found only in first hemistichs) is:—

stōpon styrmōde	∠ × ∠ ∼ ×
------------------------	-------------

Where two long syllables belonging to different feet come together in the pure type, we have various cases under 3, the one above being under *c*.

5. The fifth or bacchic-monosyllabic type is formed by the union of such feet as are found in 1. *h* and 1. *i* (*a*) with a monosyllabic foot. Thus:—

scīrmæled swyrd	∠ ∼ × ∠
sigerōfe hæleð	∪ × ∼ × ∪ ×

219. Frequency of the various types.—The relative frequency of the various types is indicated by their order in the last paragraph, though Types 2 and 3 are not far from equal. Thus, in the poem of *Judith*, the percentages are, in round numbers, as follows, not counting expanded lines, which mostly belong to Type 1 (209):—

	FIRST HEMISTICH.	SECOND HEMISTICH.
TYPE 1	47	47
TYPE 2	14	26
TYPE 3	19	19
TYPE 4	15	5
TYPE 5	5	3

220. A specimen of scansion.—The following passage (*Judith*, 164–175), accompanied by the scheme of its scansion, will serve to illustrate the metrical principles contained in the foregoing paragraphs:—

ðrēatum and ðrymmum þrunon and urnon
ongēan ðā þēodnes mægð þūsēndmælum,
ealde ge geonge; æghwylcum wearð
men on ðære medobyrig mōd ārēted,
syððan hie ongēaton þæt wæs lūðith cumen
eft tō ēðle, and ðā ofostlice
hie mid ēaðmēdum in forlēton.
þā sēo glēawe hēt, golde gefrætewod,
hyre ðinenne þancolmōde
þæs herewæðan hēafod onwriðan,
and hyt tō bēhðe blōdig ætȳwan
þām burhlēodum, hū hyre æt beaduwe gespēow.

1.	∠ x x ∠ x		∠ x x ∠ x	1.
2.	x x x ∠ x ∠		∠ x ∠ x	1.
1.	∠ x x ∠ x		∠ x ∠	5.
1.	∠ x x x ∠ x x		∠ x ∠ x	1.
1.	∠ x x x ∠ x		x x ∠ x ∠ x	2.
1.	∠ x ∠ x		x x ∠ x ∠ x	3.
3.	x x ∠ ∠ x		∠ x ∠ x	1.
2.	x x ∠ x ∠		∠ x x ∠ x x	1.
3.	x x ∠ ∠ x		∠ x ∠ x	1.
3.	x ∠ x ∠ x		∠ x x ∠ x	1.
1.	∠ x x ∠ x		∠ x x ∠ x	1.
3.	x ∠ ∠ x		x x x x ∠ x x ∠	2.

READER.



I.

THE CREATION OF THE WORLD.

(Ælfric's Translation of Genesis, I.-II. 3.)

[In the earlier pages, references will be made to the forms of words as they occur in the Vocabulary, whenever there might be difficulty in discovering the latter. Other references are self-explanatory.

The student should by all means be familiar, before beginning this first selection, with the declension of the third personal pronoun (81), the demonstrative *se* (84), the first seven ordinals (78), the conjugation of *wesan* (138) and *weorðan* (95, 104), the prepositions *æfter*, *bufan*, *fram*, *ofer*, *on*, *tō*, and *under*, the particle *ðe* (87. *d*), and the distinction between the two *ðā*'s (84. 1) and the two *ðæt*'s.]

On anginne gescēop ¹ God ² heofonan ³ and eorðan. Sēo ⁴ eorðe sōðlice ⁵ wæs ⁶ idlu and æmtigu; and ðiestru ⁷ wæron ⁶ ofer ⁸ ðære ⁴ nēowolnesse ⁹ brādnesse ¹⁰; and Godes gāst wæs ⁶ gefēred ¹¹ ofer wæteru. ¹² God cwæð ¹³ ðā, "Geweorðe ¹⁴ lēoht"; and lēoht wearð ¹⁵ geworht. ¹⁶ God geseah ¹⁷ ðā ðæt hit ¹⁸ gōd

¹ See *gescieppan*, and 18.

¹⁰ See 166.

² The order is probably determined by the Latin: *creavit Deus*.

¹¹ *wæs gefēred* = Lat. *ferebatur*. See *geferian*.

³ 53. 3.

¹² See *wæter*, and 47. 1, 6.

⁴ See *se*.

¹³ See *cweðan*.

⁵ Lat. *autem*.

¹⁴ See *geweorðan*, and 193. *a*.

⁶ See *wesan*.

¹⁵ See *weorðan*.

⁷ Plural, like Lat. *tenebræ*.

¹⁶ *Wearð geworht* = *facta est*.

⁸ Governs *brādnesse*.

See *gewyrcean*.

⁹ Genitive, dependent on *brādnesse* (153. *i*).

¹⁷ See *gesēon*.

¹⁸ See *hē*.

wæs¹; and hē gedælde² ðæt³ leoht fram ðæm³ ðiestrum.⁴ And hēt⁵ ðæt³ leoht Dæg, and ðā³ ðiestru⁴ Niht. Ðā wæs¹ geworden⁶ æfen and morgen ān dæg.⁷

God cwæð⁸ ðā eft,⁹ “Geweorðe¹⁰ nū fæstnes tōmiddes
5 ðæm³ wæterum,¹¹ and tōtwāme¹² ðā³ wæteru¹¹ fram ðæm
wæterum.” And God geworhte ðā fæstnesse, and tōtwāmde
ðā wæteru ðe¹³ wæron under ðære fæstnesse fram ðæm ðe¹³
wæron bufan ðære fæstnesse; hit wæs ðā swā gedōn.¹⁴ And
God hēt ðā fæstnesse Heofonan.¹⁵ And wæs ðā geworden
10 æfen and morgen oðer¹⁶ dæg.

God ðā sōðlice¹⁷ cwæð, “Bēon¹⁸ gegaderode¹⁹ ðā wæteru
ðe¹³ sind¹ under ðære heofonan, and ætēowie²⁰ drygnes²¹”;
hit wæs ðā swā gedōn. And God geciege²² ðā drygnesse
Eorðan²³; and ðæra³ wætera gegaderunga²⁴ hē hēt Sæs²⁵;
15 God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd²⁶ wæs. And cwæð,²⁷ “Sprytte²⁸
sēo eorðe grōwende²⁹ gærs,³⁰ and sæd wyrcente,³¹ and æppel-

¹ See **wesan**. ² See **gedælan**.

³ See **se**. ⁴ See p. 123, note 7.

⁵ See **hātan**, and 189, note.

⁶ **Wæs geworden** = *factum est*. See **geweorðan**.

⁷ Lat. *dies unus*.

⁸ See **cweðan**.

⁹ Lat. *quoque*.

¹⁰ See **geweorðan**, and 193. *a*.

¹¹ See **wæter**, and 47. 1, 6.

¹² See **tōtwāman**.

¹³ See 87. *d*.

¹⁴ Past part. of **gedōn**.

¹⁵ See 173.

¹⁶ Lat. *secundus*.

¹⁷ Lat. *vero*.

¹⁸ See 193. *a*.

¹⁹ See **gegaderian**, and 62.

²⁰ See **ætēowian**.

²¹ Lat. *arida*, Gr. *ξηρά*.

²² See **geciegan**.

²³ See 173.

²⁴ Acc. plur.

²⁵ Acc. plur.; see **sæ**.

²⁶ See 4.

²⁷ Cf. Mod. Eng. *quoth*.

²⁸ See **sprytan**, and 193. *a*.
Lat. *germinet*.

²⁹ See **grōwan**, and 61.

³⁰ See 31.

³¹ See **wyrcean**, and 61. **Grōwende gærs and sæd wyrcente** = *herbam virentem et facientem semen*.

bære¹ trēow, wæstm² wyrcende æfter his cynne,³ ðæs sǣd sīe⁴ on him⁵ selfum⁶ ofer eorðan ”; hit wæs ðā swā gedōn. And sēo eorðe forðātēah⁷ grōwende wyrt and sǣd berende⁸ bē hiere⁹ cynne, and trēow wæstm wyrcende, and gehwile¹⁰ sǣd¹¹ hæbbende æfter his hīwe¹²; God geseah ðā ðæt hit 5
gōd wæs. And wæs geworden æfen and mērgen¹³ se ðrida¹⁴ dæg.

God cwæð ðā sōðlice,¹⁵ “Bēon nū lēoht on¹⁶ ðære heofonan¹⁷ fæstnesse, and tōdǣlen¹⁸ dæg and niht, and bēon tō¹⁶ tǣc-
num,¹⁹ and tō tīdum,²⁰ and tō dagum,²¹ and tō gēarum.²² And 10
hīe scīnen²³ on ðære heofonan fæstnesse, and āliehten ðā eorðan ”; hit wæs ðā swā geworden. And God geworhte twā²⁴ miclu²⁵ lēoht; ðæt mǣre²⁶ lēoht tō ðæs dāges lieht-
inge,²⁷ and ðæt lǣsse lēoht tō ðære niht²⁸ liehtinge; and steorran hē geworhte. And gesette²⁹ hīe on ðære heofonan, 15

¹ Lat. *pomiferum*, Gr. *καρπυρον*. See 146.

² Acc. sing., after **wyrcende**.

³ See **cynn**.

⁴ See 195.

⁵ Dat. sing.

⁶ See **self**.

⁷ Lat. *protulit*.

⁸ Agrees with **wyrt**. See **beran**.

⁹ Why **hiere**, instead of **his** ?

¹⁰ Nom. sing.

¹¹ Acc. sing.

¹² Lat. *speciem*. See **hīw**.

¹³ Note the different form, — **mērgen** instead of **morgen**.

¹⁴ See 78.

¹⁵ Lat. *autem*.

¹⁶ See 166.

¹⁷ Gen. sing.

¹⁸ See **tōdǣlan**.

¹⁹ See **tācen**, and 24.

²⁰ See **tīd**, and 24.

²¹ See **dæg**, and 24.

²² See **gēar**, and 24.

²³ See 193. *a*. Write the opt. pret. plur. of this verb.

²⁴ See **twēgen**.

²⁵ See **micel**.

²⁶ See 66.

²⁷ What is the relation of the stem-vowel to that of **lēoht** ?

²⁸ For **niht**, instead of **nieht**, see 19. See 153. *d*.

²⁹ See **gesettan**, and 189, note.

ðæt hīe scinen¹ ofer eorðan, and gīemden ðæs dāges² and ðære niht, and tōdælden lēoht and ðiestru; God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd wæs. And wæs geworden æfen and mērgen se fēorða³ dæg.

5 God cwæð ēac swilce,⁴ “Tēon nū ðā wæteru forð⁵ swim-
mendu cynn cucu⁶ on life,⁷ and flēogendu⁸ cynn ofer eorðan
under ðære heofonan fæstnesse.” And God gescēop ðā⁹ ðā
miclan hwalas,¹⁰ and eall libbendu fisc cynn and styriend-
licu,¹¹ ðe¹² ðā¹³ wæteru tugon¹⁴ forð¹⁵ on hiera hīwum, and
10 eall flēogendu cynn æfter hiera cynne; God geseah ðā ðæt
hit gōd wæs. And blētsode¹⁶ hīe, ðus cweðende,¹⁷ “Weaxað,¹⁸
and bēoð gemanigfelde,¹⁹ and gefyllað²⁰ ðære sē wæteru, and
ðā fuglas bēon²¹ gemanigfelde ofer eorðan.” And ðā wæs
geworden æfen and mērgen se fifta dæg.

15 God cwæð ēac swilce, “Læde²² sēo eorðe forð²³ cucu nīe-
tenu²⁴ on hiera cynne, and crēopendu²⁵ cynn and dēor æfter
hiera hīwum”; hit wæs ðā swā geworden. And God geworhte
ðære eorðan dēor æfter hiera hīwum, and ðā nīetenu and eall
crēopendu cynn on hiera cynne; God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd

¹ Opt. pret. = Lat. *lucere*.
What would be the opt. pres.?

² See 156. f.

³ See 78.

⁴ *Ēac swilce* = *etiam*.

⁵ *Producant* = *tēon . . . forð*.

⁶ See *cucu*.

⁷ See *lif*.

⁸ See *flēogan*, and 61.

⁹ Adverb; see 84. 1.

¹⁰ See *hwæl*.

¹¹ Lat. *motabilem*.

¹² Acc.

¹³ Nom. plur.

¹⁴ See *tēon*.

¹⁵ *Tugon forð* = *produserunt*.

¹⁶ See *blētsian*, and 33.

¹⁷ See *cweðan*.

¹⁸ See *weaxan*, and 24.

¹⁹ Past part. in nom. plur.

²⁰ See *gefyllan*.

²¹ See 193. a.

²² See *lædan*.

²³ *Læde . . . forð* = *producat*.

²⁴ See *nīeten*.

²⁵ See *crēopan*.

wæs. And cwæð, “Uton¹ wyrcean mann tō andlīcnesse and tō ūrre² gelīcnesse, and hē sīe³ ofer ðā fiscas,⁴ and ofer ðā fuglas, and ofer ðā dēor, and ofer ealle gesceafta,⁵ and ofer eall ðā crēopendan ðe styriað⁶ ofer eorðan.” God gescēop ða mann tō his andlīcnesse, tō Godes andlīcnesse hē gescēop 5 hine; werhādes⁷ and wīfhādes hē gescēop hīe.

And God hīe blētsode, and cwæð, “Weaxað, and bēoð gemanigfælde, and gefyllað ðā eorðan and gewieldað⁸ hīe, and habbað⁹ on ēowrum¹⁰ gewearde ðære sǣ fiscas, and ðære lyfte fuglas, and eall nīetenu ðe styriað ofer eorðan.” God 10 cwæð ðā, “Efne ic forgeaf¹¹ ēow¹² eall gærs and wyrta sǣd¹³ berenda ofer eorðan, and eall trēowu, ðā-ðe^{13a} habbað sǣd on him selfum hiera āgnes cynnes, ðæt hīe bēon ēow¹⁴ tō mēte; and eallum nīetenum and eallum fugolcynne and eallum ðǣm ðe styriað on eorðan, on ðǣm-ðe¹⁵ is lib- 15 bende¹⁶ lif,¹⁷ ðæt hīe hǣbben him tō¹⁸ gereordianne”; hit wæs ðā swā gedōn. And God geseah eall ðā ðing¹⁹ ðe hē geworhte, and hīe wǣron swīðe gōd. Wæs²⁰ ðā geworden āfen and mērgen se siexta dæg.

¹ = *Let us*.

² See **83**. *Ūrre* properly belongs to both nouns; Lat. *ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram*.

³ See **wesan**.

⁴ See **fisc**.

⁵ See **gesceaft**.

⁶ See **styrian**.

⁷ See **153. f**.

⁸ What is the relation of the stem diphthong to that of **geweald**?

⁹ See **habban**.

¹⁰ See **83**.

¹¹ See **forgiefan**.

¹² See **ǣū**, and **164. a**.

¹³ See **24**. ^{13a} See **87. b**.

¹⁴ See **161. 2**. Auth. Vers.: ‘to you it shall be for meat.’

¹⁵ = *whom*.

¹⁶ See **libban**.

¹⁷ **Libbende lif** = *anima viva*.

¹⁸ See **gereordian**, and **200**.

¹⁹ Acc. plur. Why like the singular?

²⁰ See **189. 1**.

Eornostlice¹ ðā wæron fullfrēmede² heofonas and eorðe and eall hiera frætwung.³ And God ðā gefylde⁴ on ðone sefoðan dæg⁵ his weorc⁶ ðe hē geworhte, and hē gerēste⁷ hine⁸ on ðone sefoðan dæg fram eallum ðæm weorce ðe hē
 5 gefrēmede. And God geblētsode ðone sefoðan dæg and hine gehālgode,⁹ for-ðon-ðe hē on ðone dæg geswāc¹⁰ his weorces¹¹ ðe hē gescēop¹² tō wyrceanne.¹³

¹ Lat. *igitur*.

² See **fullfrēman**. Lat. *perfecti*.

³ Lat. *ornatus*, Gr. *κόσμος*; *array*, or *splendid array*, would perhaps express the original sense.

⁴ Lat. *complevit*.

⁵ Acc. where we should expect dat.; Lat. *die septimo*. See 172. 1.

⁶ Sing., as the Latin shows.

⁷ See **gerēstan**. Why but one **t** in the preterit?

⁸ See 184. *b*.

⁹ See **gehālgian**. From **hālig**;

for loss of **i** see 23. The root is **hāl**; after umlaut of the stem vowel, what would this syllable become, and in what words is it found?

¹⁰ See **geswīcan**.

¹¹ **His weorces** = *ab omni opere suo*. See 156. *k*.

¹² **gescēop tō wyrceanne** = *creavit ut faceret*; Marg. of Auth. Vers., 'created to make.' See 200.

¹³ **Wyrce-** not umlaut of **weorc-**. The relation here is an ablaut one (22): **werc** and **wure** (**worc**); cf. Gr. *ἔργον* and *δργανον*.

II.

TRADES AND OCCUPATIONS.

(From Ælfrie's Colloquy, probably prepared, like his Grammar, for the instruction of English youths in Latin. There are two MSS. — one in the British Museum, the other at Oxford. The Oxford MS. has the rubric: *Hanc sententiam Latini sermonis olim Alfricus abbas composuit, qui meus fuit magister, sed tamen ego, Ælfrie Bata, multas postea huic addidi appendices.* This is virtually Ælfrie Bata's sole title to fame. The Old English, like the Latin, is probably of the late tenth century.)

The Merchant and his Merchandise.

Teacher. Hwæt sægst¹ ðū, mangere²?

Merchant. Ic secge ðæt behēfe³ ic eom ge⁴ cyninge⁵ and ealdormannum,⁶ and weligum, and eallum folce.

¹ See 123.

² Lat. *mercator*. Other Old English terms for *merchant* are *cīepa* and *cīepmann*. From a collateral form of the latter, *cēapmann*, without umlaut, is derived Mod. Eng. *chapman*. How is *chap* related to *cheap*? See the *New English Dictionary* (*New Eng. Dict.*) under these words.

³ Lat. *utilis*. Cf. the Mod. Eng. noun *behoof*.

⁴ *ge . . . and* = Lat. *et . . . et*.

⁵ Carlyle (*Sartor Resartus*, Bk. 3, Chap. 7) has the following:

“*König* (King), anciently *Könning*, means Ken-ning (Cunning), or which is the same thing, Can-ning. Ever must the Sovereign of Mankind be fitly entitled King.” On the other hand Gummere (*Germanic Origins*, p. 270): “At the head of the family we found, of course, the father; and at the head of the state we naturally look for the king. The word ‘king’ means the child or son of the tribe, its representative or even creation; man of race, man of rank. Gradually the king ceases to be re-

⁶ Lat. *ducibus*.

Teacher. And hū?

Merchant. Ic āstige mīn scip mid hlæstum¹ mīnum, and rōwe² ofer sǣlice³ dēlas,⁴ and cīepe⁵ mīn ðing, and byge ðing⁶ dēorwierðu,⁶ ðā on ðisum lande ne bēoð ācennede, and
5 ic hit tōgelǣde⁷ ēow hider mid miclum plihte⁸ ofer sǣ, and hwilum forlidennesses ic ðolie mid lyre ealra ðinga mīnra, unēaðe⁹ cwic⁹ ætberstende.⁹

Teacher. Hwile ðing gelætst ðū ūs?

Merchant. Pællas¹⁰ and sīdan,¹¹ dēorwierðe gimmas and
10 gold, seldeūð¹² rēaf¹³ and wrytgemang,¹⁴ wīn and ġle, elpes¹⁵ bān¹⁵ and mæsling,¹⁶ ær¹⁷ and tin, swefel and glæs, and ðyl-lices¹⁸ fela.

garded as a creation of his race; his ancestry is pushed back to the gods, and his right is quite above all sanctions of popular choice or approval." Which of these views is confirmed by etymology?

¹ Lat. *mercibus*.

² Lat. *navigo*.

³ Lat. *marinas*.

⁴ Lat. *partes*.

⁵ Lat. *vendo*.

⁶ Lat. *res pretiosas*.

⁷ Lat. *adduco*.

⁸ Lat. *periculo*. Mod. Eng. form of **pliht**?

⁹ Lat. *vix vivus evadens*. Note the love for alliteration, even in the Latin.

¹⁰ Lat. *purpurum*. Cf. Spenser (*F. Q.* 2. 9. 37): "In a long purple pall."

¹¹ Lat. *sericum*. From this Latin word (indicating what country?) comes OE. **seol(o)c**. What Mod. Eng. word from the latter (or the equivalent Old Norse (ON.) *silki*)? Cf. Skeat's *Principles of English Etymology* (I.), p. 440 (Skeat, *Prin.*). Other words in which Eng. *l* = Lat. *r* (through OE.) are *plum* = Lat. *prunus*; *purple* = Lat. *purpura*; *turtle* = Lat. *turtur*.

¹² Lat. *varias*, but this looks like a mistake. *Varius* usually = **mis(sen)lic** or **manigfeald**.

¹³ Lat. *vestes*.

¹⁴ Lat. *pigmenta*. Translate, *spice*.

¹⁵ Lat. *ebur*.

¹⁶ Lat. *aurichalcum*.

¹⁷ Lat. *aes*.

¹⁸ See 154. *a*.

Teacher. Wilt¹ ðū sellan ðing ðin hēr eall² swā² ðū hīe gebohtest ðær?

Merchant. Ic nelle. Hwæt ðonne mē frēmede³ gedeorf⁴ mīn? Ac ic wille hīe cīepan hēr luflicor⁵ ðonne ic gebycge ðær, ðæt⁶ sum gestrēon⁷ mē⁸ ic begiete,⁹ ðanan ic mē āfēde,¹⁰ 5
and mīn wīf, and mīnne sunu.

The Choice of Occupations.

Teacher. Hwæt sægst ðū, wīsa? Hwile cræft¹¹ ðē is¹² geðūht¹³ betweox ðās furðra¹⁴ wesan?

Counsellor. Ic seġge ðē, mē is¹⁵ geðūht¹⁵ Godes ðēowdōm¹⁶ betweoh ðās cræftas ealdorscipe¹⁷ healdan, swā-swā hit is¹² 10
geræd on godspelle, “Fyrmost sēceað rīce Godes, and riht-wisnesse¹⁸ his, and ðās ðing eall bēoð tōgeīecte¹⁹ ēow.”

Teacher. And hwile ðē is¹² geðūht betweox worulderæftas²⁰ healdan ealdordōm? ¹⁷

Counsellor. Eorðtilð,²¹ for-ðām se ierðling²² ūs ealle fēt.²³ 15

¹ See 139.

² = *just as*.

³ See 193. *b*.

⁴ Lat. *labor*.

⁵ Lat. *carius*. Possibly mis-written for *lēoflicor*. A literal translation, not regarding the sense; *dēorra* or *dīerra*, from *dēore* or *dīere*, *dear*, would be more normal.

⁶ See 84. 1.

⁷ Lat. *lucrum*. Acc. sing.

⁸ See 161. 1.

⁹ Lat. *adquiram*. See 196. *f*.

¹⁰ See 195.

¹¹ Lat. *ars*.

¹² Conjectural; not in the MSS.

¹³ See *ðyncean*.

¹⁴ Lat. *prior*. Nom. sing.

¹⁵ Lat. *videtur*.

¹⁶ See 143 and 149.

¹⁷ Lat. *primatum*.

¹⁸ See 144.

¹⁹ Lat. *adjicientur*. See *tōgeīecan*, and 62.

²⁰ Lat. *artes seculares*. MS. *cræftas* would.

²¹ Lat. *agricultura*. See 147.

²² Lat. *arator*.

²³ See *fēdan*.

Se smið sægð :

Hwanan ðæm ierðlinge sulhscear¹ oððe culter,² ðe nā gāde³ hæfð būtan of cræfte mīnum ? Hwanan fiscere⁴ angel, oððe scēowyrhtan æl, oððe sēamere nædl ? Nis hit of mīnum
5 geweorce ?

Se geðeahtend⁵ andswarað :

Sōð, witodlice, sægst ðū⁶ ; ac eallum ūs lēofre is wīcian⁷ mid ðæm ierðlinge ðonne mid ðē, for-ðām se ierðling sēleð ūs hlāf⁸ and drenc. Ðū, hwæt sēlest ðū⁶ ūs on smiððan
10 ðīnre būtan īserne⁹ fýrspearcan,⁹ and swēginga¹⁰ bēatendra¹¹ slēcgea¹² and blāwendra bēlga ?

Se trēowwyrhta¹³ sægð :

Hwile ēower¹⁴ ne notað¹⁵ cræfte¹⁶ minum — ðonne hūs,¹⁷ and mislicu fatu, and scipu ēow¹⁸ eallum ic wyrce¹⁹ ?

15 *Se smið²⁰ andwyrta :*

Ēalā trēowwyrhta, for²¹ hwȳ²¹ swā špīcst ðū, ðonne²²

¹ MS. *sylandscear*.

² Lat. *culter*.

³ See 24.

⁴ See 161.

⁵ Lat. *consiliarius*.

⁶ Not in MS.

⁷ Lat. *hospitari* ; see 199. a.

⁸ Lat. *panem*. **Brēad**, which is found in Old English, scarcely has any other sense than that of 1) *fragment*, 2) *broken bread*. Later it acquires its modern meaning. See *New Eng. Dict.*, s.v. *bread*.

⁹ Lat. *ferreas scintillas*.

¹⁰ Lat. *sonitus*.

¹¹ Lat. *tudentium*.

¹² Lat. *malleorum*.

¹³ Lat. *lignarius*. See 147.

¹⁴ See 154. b.

¹⁵ Lat. *utitur*.

¹⁶ See 164. o.

¹⁷ Lat. *domos*.

¹⁸ See 161.

¹⁹ Lat. *fabrico*.

²⁰ Lat. *ferrarius*. MS. **gol-smið** (*sic*).

²¹ Lat. *cur* ; see 175.

²² Lat. *cum*. Other temporal conjunctions used to denote cause are **nū** and **ðā**. Has Mod. Eng. any similar idiom ?

ne furðum¹ ān ðýrel bûtan cræfte mīnum ðū ne² meaht³ dōn⁴?

Se geðeahtend sægð :

Ēalā, gefēran⁵ and gōde wyrhtan! Uton tōweorpan
 hwætlicor⁶ ðās geflitu,⁷ and sīe⁸ sibb and geðwærnes⁹ be-
 tweoh ūs, and frēme¹⁰ ānra¹¹ gehwile¹¹ ōðrum¹² on cræfte
 his, and geðwærien¹³ simle mid ðæm ierðlinge, ðær¹⁴ wē
 bigleofan¹⁵ ūs, and fōdor horsum ūrum habbað. And ðis
 geðeaht ic selle eallum wyrhtum, ðæt ānra¹⁶ gehwile cræft
 his geornlice begange,¹⁷ for-ðām sē, ðe cræft¹⁸ his forlæt, hē¹⁹
 bið forlæten fram ðæm cræfte. Swā-hwæðer²⁰ ðū sīe—swā²¹
 mæsseprēost,²² swā munuc,²³ swā ceorl,²⁴ swā cempa²⁵—begā²⁶
 ðē selfne on ðisum, and bēo ðæt ðū eart; for-ðām micel hienð²⁷
 and sceamu hit is mēnn nellan²⁸ wesan ðæt hē is and ðæt hē
 wesan sceal.²⁹

¹ Lat. *saltem*.

² See 183.

³ Lat. *vales*.

⁴ Lat. *facere*.

⁵ Lat. *socii*; see 152.

⁶ Lat. *citius*; used almost in the sense of the positive; see 76.

⁷ Lat. *contentiones*.

⁸ See 189. 1.

⁹ Lat. *concordia*.

¹⁰ Lat. *prosit*.

¹¹ Lat. *unusquisque*. MS. **urum gehwyleum**.

¹² See 160.

¹³ Lat. *conveniamus*.

¹⁴ Lat. *ubi*.

¹⁵ Lat. *victim*.

¹⁶ See 154. b.

¹⁷ See 194. b.

¹⁸ Acc. sing.

¹⁹ Lat. *ipse*.

²⁰ Lat. *sive*.

²¹ Swā . . . swā = Lat. *sive* . . . *seu*.

²² Lat. *sacerdos*.

²³ Lat. *monachus*, from which the OE. word is derived. For the u cf. OE. **munt** = Lat. *montem*.

²⁴ Lat. *laicus*.

²⁵ Lat. *miles*.

²⁶ MS. **bega oppe behwyrf**. Lat. *exerce*.

²⁷ Lat. *damnum*.

²⁸ MS. **nelle**. See 199. a.

²⁹ Lat. *debet*.

III.

THE DAY OF JUDGMENT.

(From Ælfric's Homilies, vol. 2, pp. 106-108; being a paraphrase of Matt. 25:31-46.)

Witodlice¹ Mannes Bearn cymð² on his mægenðrymme, and ealle ęnglas³ samod mid him tō ðǣm miclan⁴ dōme.⁵ Donne sitt⁶ hē on ðǣm setle his mægenðrymnesse,⁷ and bēoð gegaderode ætforan him ealle ðēoda,⁸ and hē tōscǣt⁹
5 hīe on twā, swā-swā scēaphierde¹⁰ tōscǣt scēap¹¹ fram gātum.¹² Donne gelōgað hē ðā scēap on his swiðran¹³ hand, and ðā gǣt¹⁴ on his winstran. Donne cwið¹⁵ se Cyning Crīst tō ðǣm ðe on his swiðran hand standað, “Cumað gē blētsode¹⁶ mīnes Fæder,¹⁷ and geāgniað ðæt

¹ Lat. *autem*.

² See **cuman**.

³ See **ęngel**. What is the history of this word before it entered Old English?

⁴ See **55**.

⁵ In what modern compound does this meaning of **dōm** persist?

⁶ See **sittan**.

⁷ See **153. f**.

⁸ Nom. plur.

⁹ See **tōscēadan**. Account for the vowel **ǣ**.

¹⁰ In compound words, the vowel of the first syllable is apt

to be shortened in Mod. Eng., the more general principle being that shortening is apt to occur before an accumulation of consonants. Besides **scēaphierde**, *shepherd*, note e.g. **wisdōm**, *wisdom*.

¹¹ Plural; account for the form.

¹² See **24**.

¹³ See **swið**.

¹⁴ See **52**.

¹⁵ See **cweðan**. What is the ind. pret. 3d sing.?

¹⁶ Past part. in nom. plur.

¹⁷ See **43. 8**.

rice¹ ðe ēow² gegearcod wæs fram frymðe middangeardes. Mē³ hyngrede,⁴ and gē mē gereordedon; mē³ ðyrste, and gē mē⁵ scēncton; ic wæs cuma,⁶ and gē mē underfēngon⁷ on ēowrum giesthūsum; ic wæs nacod, and gē mē scrȳddon⁸; ic wæs geuntrumod, and gē mē genēosedon; ic wæs on cwearterne, and gē cōmon tō mē and mē gefrēfredon.⁹”
 Ðonne andswariað ðā rihtwisan¹⁰ Crīste¹¹ and cweðað, “Dryhten, hwonne gesāwe¹² wē ðe hungrigne, and wē ðe gereordedon? oððe ðurstigne, and wē ðe scēncton? oððe hwonne wære ðū cuma,¹³ and wē ðe underfēngon? oððe hwonne gesāwe^{13a} wē ðe untrumne oððe on cwearterne, and wē ðe genēosedon?” Ðonne andwyrte se Cyning ðām rihtwisum ðisum wordum,¹⁴ “Sōð¹⁵ ic ēow sēcge, swā¹⁶ lange swā¹⁷ gē dydon ānum, ðisum lāestan,¹⁸ on mīnum

¹ Still found as the last syllable of *bishopric*.

² See 81.

³ See 190.

⁴ What is the relation of the stem-vowel to that of *hungrig*? See 90.

⁵ Dat.

⁶ Lat. *hospes*.

⁷ See *underfōn*.

⁸ What peculiar senses has the verb *shroud* in Spenser, Shakespeare, or Milton? What form would *scrȳdan* most naturally assume in Mod. Eng. (24)? How can the Mod. Eng. form of the verb *shroud* be accounted for?

⁹ What is the relation of the

stem-vowel to that of *frōfor*? See 90.

¹⁰ Nom. plur. See 181.

¹¹ Dat.

¹² See *gesēon*.

¹³ See 150. ^{13a} See 95, note.

¹⁴ See 174. b.

¹⁵ Lat. *amen*, Eng. *verily*.

¹⁶ = *so*.

¹⁷ = *as*. Notice this early use of *so long as* (= Lat. *quandiu*) in the sense of *inasmuch as*.

¹⁸ The WS. translation of the Gospel has *ānum of ðisum mīnum lāestum gebrōðrum*, which is much more literal. In Ælfrie's version we must understand *lāestan* to be in apposition with *ānum*. See 66.

naman, gē hit dydon mē selfum.¹” Ðonne cwið hē eft
 tō ðæm synfullum, ðe on his winstran healfe standað,
 “Gewītað fram mē, gē āwiergdan, intō ðæm ēcean fýre,
 ðe is gegearcod ðæm dēofle² and his āwiergdum gāstum.
 5 Mē hyngrede, and gē mē ætes³ forwierndon; mē ðyrste,
 and gē mē drincan ne sealdon; ic wæs cuma, and gē mē
 underfōn noldon; ic wæs nacod, nolde⁴ gē mē wæda⁵
 tīðian⁶; ic wæs untrum and on cwearterne, nolde⁴ gē
 mē genēosian.” Ðonne andswariað⁷ ðā unrihtwīsan mǣn-
 10 fullan,⁸ “Lā lēof, hwonne gesāwe⁴ wē ðē hungrigne,⁹ oððe
 ðurstigne, oððe cuman, oððe nacodne, oððe geuntrumodne,
 oððe on cwearterne, and wē ðē noldon ðēnian⁶”? Ðonne
 andwyrte se Cyning him, and cwið, “Sōð ic ēow secge,
 swā lange swā gē forwierndon ānum of ðisum lýtum,
 15 and noldon¹⁰ him on mīnum naman tīðian, swā lange¹¹
 gē mē selfum his³ forwierndon.” Ðonne farað ðā uncyst-
 gan¹² and ðā unrihtwīsan intō ēcre cwicsūsle, mid dēofle
 and his āwiergdum englum; and ðā rihtwīsan gecierrað
 fram ðæm dōme intō ðæm ēcean life.

¹ **Not** = *myself*; **self** agrees with **mē**. The Latin has no original here for **self**; Ælfric adds it to strengthen the expression.

² See 161.

³ See 159.

⁴ See 95, note.

⁵ See 159. What is the Mod. Eng. form of this word?

⁶ See 28; 164. *e*.

⁷ How is the **and-** of this word related to the *anti-* of Eng. *antiphon*?

⁸ See 4.

⁹ See 173.

¹⁰ See 139.

¹¹ Correlative with the **swā lange swā** of the preceding clause.

¹² See 55; 57. 3; 181.

IV.

BEDE'S DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.

(Ecc. Hist., Bk. I., Chap. I.)

[Ælfrie testifies to a translation of Bede's History having been made by Alfred, and so does William of Malmesbury; besides, the MS. of the Cambridge University Library twice has this couplet, —

Historicus quondam fecit me Beda latinum,
Ælfred rex Saxo transtulit ille pius.

On the other hand, it has such undoubted Anglian peculiarities that it has been suggested (by Miller, its latest editor) that "the version may have been executed by Mercian scholars under orders from the king," and that it was possibly made at Lichfield.

The distinction between English idiom and imitation of the Latin should be remarked, wherever possible. Moberly's edition of the Ecclesiastical History, which contains scholarly and interesting notes, may profitably be compared.]

Breton¹ is gārsecges² īgland, ðæt wæs īu gēara Albion hāten. . . . Hit is welig—ðis īgland—on wæstmum and on trēowum missenlicra cynna,³ and hit is gescrepe on lāswe scēapa⁴ and nēata⁵; and on sumum stōwum wīngeardas

Britannia oceani insula, cui quondam Albion nomen fuit. . . . Opima frugibus atque arboribus insula, et alendis apta pecoribus ac jumentis; vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germinans: sed et avium ferax terra marique gene-

¹ Moberly says: "This description of Britain is pieced from the accounts of Plinius, Solinus, Oro-sius, Dio Cassius, and Gildas."

² See 153. *h*.

³ See 153. *f*.

⁴ See 153. *d*.

⁵ What Mod. Eng. word represents this? What OE. noun-stem contains the umlaut of this one?

grōwað. Swilce ēac ðēos eorðe is berende missenlicra fugla¹ and sēwihta. . . . And hēr bēoð oft fangene^{1a} sēolas, and hranas, and mēreswīn; and hēr bēoð oft numene² missenlicra³ cynna weolocscielle⁴ and muscule,
 5 and on ðām bēoð oft gemētte⁵ ðā bētstan⁶ meregreotan⁷ ælces hīwes. And hēr bēoð swīðe genyhtsume weolocas, of ðām bið geworht se weolocreāda tēlg, ðone ne mæg sunne blācan⁸ nē ne regn⁹ wierdan; ac, swā hē bið ieldra,¹⁰ swā hē fægerra bið. Hit hæfð¹¹ ēac — ðis land
 10 — sealtsēaðas; and hit hæfð hāt wæter, and hāt baðu,¹² ælcere ielde¹³ and hāde, ðurh tōdæleda stōwa,¹⁴ gescrēpe.

ris diversi. . . . Capiuntur autem sæpissime et vituli marini, et delphines, necnon et ballenæ: exceptis variorum generibus conchyliorum; in quibus sunt et musculæ, quibus inclusam sæpe margaritam, omnis quidem coloris optimam inveniunt. . . . Sunt et cochleæ satis superque abundantes, quibus tinctura coccinei coloris conficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere; sed quo vetustior est, eo solet esse venustior. Habet fontes salinarum, habet et fontes calidos, et ex eis fluvios balnearum calidarum, omni ætati et sexui, per distincta loca, juxta suum cui-

¹ This genitive after a present participle is exceptional; cf. the Latin for an explanation (155).

^{1a} See **fōn**.

² See **niman**.

³ See p. 130, n. 12. ⁴ Nom. plur.

⁵ From what noun is the stem of **mētan** derived? See 14.

⁶ See 66.

⁷ This word is adapted from the Latin, but simulates a compound of **mære**, *sea*, and **grēot**, *earth*, *gravel*.

⁸ From what adjective is **blācan** derived (17)?

⁹ To what might **regn** contract (28)?

¹⁰ See 65.

¹¹ See 121.

¹² See **bæð**.

¹³ Governed by **gescrēpe**. See 165.

¹⁴ What does *-stow* mean in a proper name like *Chepstow*?

Swilce hit is ēac berende¹ on wēgga ōrum — āres and īsernes, lēades and seolfres. Hēr bið ēac gemētt gagates; sē stān bið blæc gimm; gif man² hine on fȳr dēð,³ ðonne flēoð ðær næddran⁴ onweg.⁵ Wæs ðis īgland⁶ ēac geweorðod mid ðām æðelestum ceastrum⁷ — ānes wana ðrit- 5 igum⁸ — ðā-ðe⁹ wæron mid weallum,¹⁰ and torrum,¹⁰ and geatum, and ðām trumeſtum loçum getimbrede, būtan ōðrum lāessan¹¹ unrīme ceastra.

And for-ðām-ðe ðis īgland under ðām selfum norðdæle middangeardes nīehst līð,¹² and lēohte niht on sumera 10

que modum accomodos. . . . Quæ etiam venis metallorum, æris, ferri, et plumbi et argenti fæcunda, gignit et lapidem gagatem plurimum optimumque: est autem nigro-gemmeus et ardens igni admotus, incensus serpentes fugat. . . . Erat et civitatibus quondam viginti et octo nobilissimis insignita, præter castella innumera, quæ et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, ac seris erant instructa firmissimis.

Et quia prope sub ipso septentrionali vertice mundi jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet; ita ut medio sæpe tempore

¹ Cf. the construction of this word with that above, p. 138, l. 1.

² See 89. e.

³ See 140.

⁴ How did *næddre* become *adder*? Cf. OE. *nafoġār*, Mod. Eng. *auger*. See Skeat, *Prin.*, p. 216.

⁵ There is a parallel form, *āweg*, already in OE. The *ā* is a contraction of *on*. Mention other Mod. Eng. words in which the *a*-represents *on*.

⁶ How does the Mod. Eng. *island* acquire its *s*? See Skeat, *Prin.*, p. 380, and note 3, next page.

⁷ From Lat. *castra*. Cf. the *-caster*, *-chester*, of Lancaster, Winchester, etc. Some of the more important of these cities were York, Colchester, Winchester, Canterbury, and Chester (see Moberly, p. 7).

⁸ Cf. 78. 5; 158. The number does not correspond to the Latin.

⁹ Does this relative have the same antecedent as in the Latin?

¹⁰ *Weall* is from Lat. *vallum*; *torr*, from Lat. *turris*.

¹¹ Agrees with *unrīme*.

¹² See *licgan*, and 28.

hæfð — swā ðæt oft on midre niht geflit cymð¹ ðæm
 behealdendum, hwæðer hit sīe ðe² æfenglōmung, ðe on
 morgen dagung — is on ðæm sweotol, ðæt ðis īgland³
 hæfð micle⁴ lēngran dagas on sumera,⁵ and swā ēac niht⁶
 5 on wintra,⁵ ðonne ðā sūddælas middangeardes.⁷

noctis in quæstionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepus-
 culum adhuc permaneant vespertinum, an jam advenerit
 matutinum . . . : unde etiam plurimæ longitudinis habet
 dies æstate, sicut et noctes contra in bruma.

¹ See **cuman**.

² Lat. *utrum . . . an* = **ðe**
 . . . **ðe** (202. *b*).

³ **īg-** represents **īe-**, the umlaut
 of **ēa**, *water*. **Ēa** goes back to
 the same Indo-European root as
 Lat. *aqua*.

⁴ See 178.

⁵ See 43. 5.

⁶ **Niht** belongs under 52. It
 has already experienced umlaut
 in the nominative, and hence does
 not change in the acc. plur.

⁷ This last clause is supplied by
 the translator.

V.

ÆTHELWALD CALMS THE SEA.¹

(Bede, Eccl. Hist., Bk. V., Chap. I.)

Ic cōm mid twæm² ōðrum brōðrum tō Farne,³ ðæm iglande. Wolde ic sprecaþ mid ðone⁴ ārwierðan fæder Æðelwald. Mid-ðȳ ic ðā wæs mid his gesprece wel gerētt,⁵ and mē blētsunge bæd, and wē hām⁶ hwurfon,⁷ ðā wē ðā wæron on midre⁸ ðære sǣ, ðā⁹ wæs samninga ; heofones smyltnes tōsliten, ðære-ðe¹⁰ wē ær lidon¹¹ ūt; and swā micel winter¹² ūs onhrēas,¹³ and swā rēðe storm cōm, ðæt wē nē mid segle nē mid rōwnesse āwiht framgān¹⁴ meahton, nē wē ūs nōhtes¹⁵ elles wēndon nefne

¹ This story was related by Abbot Guthfrith to Bede. Æthelwald succeeded Cuthbert as the hermit of Farne, dwelling there from 687 to 699, when he died.

² See 79.

³ Two miles from Bamborough. One of the islands of the group was the scene of Grace Darling's heroism in 1858. That inhabited by Æthelwald was the largest.

⁴ The acc. with **mid** is exceptional (172. 1).

⁵ See 113.

⁶ Acc. sing. as adv.; Lat. *domum*.

⁷ Lat. *rediremus*.

⁸ See 166. 1.

⁹ To **ūt** = *interrupta est serenitas qua vehebamur*.

¹⁰ Translate *in* (or *with*) *which*. The Latin shows that the preposition is to be understood.

¹¹ See **liðan**, and 37.

¹² Lat. *hiems*, but no doubt in the sense of *tempest*.

¹³ See **onhrēosan**. What is the ind. pret. plur.?

¹⁴ Lat. *proficere*.

¹⁵ See 156. *g*.

dēaðes¹ selves. Mid-ðȳ wē ðā swīðe lange wið ðām winde
 and wið ðām sē hōlunga² campedon and wunnon,³ ðā æt
 nīehstan lōcedon wē on bæcling, hwæðer wēn⁴ wære⁴ ðæt
 wē ænge⁵ ðinga⁵ furðum ðæt igland gesēcean⁶ meahton,
 5 ðæt wē ær üt of gangende⁷ wæron.⁷ Cierde⁸ wē ūs ðider
 wē cieron, gemetton⁹ wē ūs æghwanan gelīce¹⁰ storme¹⁰
 foresette and foretȳnde, and nænigne hyht¹¹ hāle¹² in ūs
 tō¹³ lāfe¹³ standan.¹³ Ðā wæs æfter langum fæce ðæt wē
 ūre gesihð feorr¹⁴ ūpāhōfon, ðā gesāwon wē in Farne,
 10 ðām iglande, Gode¹⁵ ðone lēofan fæder Æðelwald of his
 dīegelnessum¹⁶ ūtgangende,¹⁷ ðæt¹⁸ hē¹⁸ wolde¹⁸ ūrne sīðfæt
 scēawian, and gesēon hwæt ūs gelumpe,¹⁹ for-ðon hē ge-
 hīerde ðæt gebrec ðæra storma and ðæs weallendes sæs.²⁰
 Mid-ðȳ hē ðā ūs ēac scēawode, and geseah in gewinne
 15 and in ormōdnesse²¹ gesette bēon,²² ðā bīegde hē his

¹ See 156. *g*.

² Lat. *frustra*.

³ See **winnan**.

⁴ Lat. *forte*.

⁵ Lat. *aliquo conamine*. For
ænige see 174; for **ðinga** see
 154. *b*.

⁶ Lat. *repetere*.

⁷ Lat. *egressi eramus*. The
 pres. part. with the verb is some-
 times used in OE. to denote the
 simple past, as here, and not the
 progressive.

⁸ See 95, note.

⁹ To **foretȳnde** = Lat. *invenimus nos undiqueversum pari tempestate præclusos*.

¹⁰ See 174.

¹¹ Acc. sing., the subj. of
standan.

¹² See 153. *d*.

¹³ Lat. *restare*.

¹⁴ Translate, *from a distance*.

¹⁵ Governed by **lēofan**; =
amantissimum Deo. See 165.

¹⁶ Lat. *latibulis*.

¹⁷ Translates the Latin past
 part., *egressum*.

¹⁸ Translate, *that he might, in order to, to*. The Latin has the infinitive.

¹⁹ See 194. *b*.

²⁰ Lat. *fragore procellarum ac ferventis oceani*.

²¹ Lat. *desperatione*.

²² Supply **ūs** as subject acc.
 (169).

cnēowu tō Fæder ūres Dryhtnes Hælendes Crīstes, and
 wæs¹ gebiddende¹ for ūre hǣle and for ūrum līfe. And
 mid-ðȳ hē ðā ðæt gebed gefylde,² hē ðā samod ætgædere
 ge ðone āðundnan³ sǣ gesmylde ge ðone storm gestilde,
 tō⁴ ðon⁴ ðætte⁴ ðurh⁵ eall⁵ sēo rēðnes ðæs stormes wæs¹ 5
 blinnende,¹ and gesyndge⁶ windas ðurh ðone smyltestan
 sǣ ūs æt lande gebrōhton. Mid-ðȳ wē ðā ūp cōmon tō
 lande, and ūre scip ēac⁷ swilce⁷ fram ðām ȳðum ūp
 ābāron, ðā sōna se ilca storm eft hwearf and cōm,⁸ se-ðe
 for⁹ ūrum⁹ intingan⁹ medmicel fæc¹⁰ gestilde, and ealne 10
 ðone¹¹ dæg¹⁰ swiðe micel and strang wæs, ðætte¹² mēnn
 sweotollice ongietan meahon ðætte se medmicla fierst
 ðære stilnesse, ðe ðær becōm, tō¹³ bēnum¹³ ðæs Godes¹⁴
 weres¹⁵ for intingan ūre hǣle¹⁶ heofonlice¹⁷ forgiefen¹⁸ wæs.

¹ See above, p. 142, n. 7.

² Lat. *compleret*.

³ Lat. *tumida*.

⁴ Lat. *adeo ut*, nearly = *so that*.

⁵ Lat. *per omnia*, = *entirely*.

⁶ Lat. *secundi*. What letter (sound) has been lost from the OE. form?

⁷ Lat. *quoque*.

⁸ Supply *eft*. Latin has only one verb, *rediit*.

⁹ Lat. *nostri gratia*.

¹⁰ See 170.

¹¹ Lat. *illo*. Translate, *that*.

¹² From *ðæt-ðe* (34).

¹³ Lat. *ad preces*. Cf. the Mod. Eng. phrase, 'bootless bene.'

¹⁴ Dependent on **weres**.

¹⁵ Dependent on **bēnum**.

¹⁶ Lat. *evasionis*.

¹⁷ Lat. *cælitus* = *from heaven*.

¹⁸ Not *forgiven*, but *given*.

VI.

THE INVASION OF BRITAIN BY THE PICTS AND SCOTS.

(Bede, Eccl. Hist., Bk. I., Chaps. XI., XII.)

Of ðære tīde¹ Romane blunnon² rīcsian on Breotone. Hæfdon hīe Breotona rīce fēower hund wintra,³ and, ðæs fiftan, hundseofontig,⁴ ðæs-ðe⁵ Gaius, oðre naman Julius, se cāsere,⁶ ðæt ilce īgland gesōhte. And ceastra, and
5 torras,⁷ and strāta,⁸ and brycga on hiera rīce geworhte wāeron, ðā wē tō-dæg scēawian magon. Eardodon Bryttas binnan ðæm dīce⁹ tō sūðdæle, ðe wē gemyngodon ðæt Severus,¹⁰ se cāsere, hēt ðwīeres ofer ðæt īgland¹¹ gedīcian.

¹ Lat. *ex quo tempore* = Eng. *from this time forth*.

² See **blinnan**.

³ See **154. c.**

⁴ So the Latin: *post annos ferme quadringentos septuaginta*. But the best calculations make this to have been about sixty years earlier.

⁵ Lat. *ex quo* = Eng. *from the time that*.

⁶ Lat. *Gaius Julius Cæsar*.

⁷ Lat. *farus*, for *pharos*, from Pharos, the name of an island

near Alexandria in Egypt. The lighthouse built on this island gave its name to other light-houses (cf. Fr. *phare*). Here watch-towers are meant.

⁸ Lat. *stratæ*. Are the two words connected? See Skeat, *Prin.*, pp. 68, 432.

⁹ Lat. *intravallum*. Mod. Eng. *ditch* is Southern English; *dike* probably Northern. Cf. Eng. *church* with Scotch *kirk*.

¹⁰ This wall was between the Friths of Forth and Clyde (see

¹¹ Lat. *trans insulam*.

Ðā¹ ongunnon twā ðēoda, Pihtas² norðan, and Scottas westan, hīe onwinnan, and hiera æhta niman and hergian; and hīe fela gēara iermdon and hiendon. Ðā, on ðære unstilnesse, onsēdon hīe ærendwrecan³ tō Rome mid gewritum⁴ and wēpendre bēne; him fultumes⁵ bādon, 5 and him gehēton ēaðmōde hīernesse and singāle under-ðēodnesse,⁶ gif hīe him gefultumoden ðæt hīe meahten

Moberly's Bede, p. 16), but Bede, following Orosius, is no doubt thinking of that between the Tyne and the Solway Frith, which was built by Hadrian (A.D. 120). Severus' wall was built A.D. 207-210.

¹ "[This account] is pieced together as an abridgment of Gildas, xi.-xvi.; but the turgidity of his style is chastened, and his faulty grammar in several places corrected" (Moberly, pp. 26, 27).

² On the Picts the last edition of *Chambers' Encyclopædia* remarks: "Four hypotheses have been formed in regard to the language and origin of the Picts. The first, started by Pinkerton and put by Sir Walter Scott into the mouth of the 'Antiquary,' is that they were Teutons, speaking a Gothic dialect; the second, maintained by Dr. Skene, is that they were Gaelic-speaking Celts; . . . the third, due to Professor Rhys, is that the Picts were non-Aryans, whose language was overlaid by loans from Welsh and

Irish; and the fourth, held by two of the most eminent Celtic scholars of the day, Professor Windisch and Dr. Whitley Stokes, is that they were Celts, but more nearly allied to the Cymry than to the Gael. . . . The conclusion to which we come is that the Picts, whatever traces they show of a non-Aryan racial element, . . . spoke a Celtic language belonging to a branch of Celtic allied to the Cymric, . . . and that this dialect of the Gallo-Cymric stock was a wave of Celtic speech from the continent previous to the Gaulish which held England when Cæsar entered Britain."

³ Lat. *legatos*.

⁴ Lat. *epistolis*.

⁵ See 156. b.

⁶ This pair of phrases renders *subjectionem continuam*. What parallel to the use of such synonymous terms may be found in the English Prayer-Book? How is it to be accounted for?

hiera fiend¹ oferwinnan. Ðā² onsendon³ hīe him micelne
 here tō fultume, and, sōna ðæs-ðe hīe on ðis īgland cōmon,
 ðā campedon hīe⁴ wið hiera fēondum, and him micel wæl
 ongeslōgon, and of hiera⁵ gemārum ādrifon and āfliemdon⁶;
 5 and lārdon ðæt hīe fæsten⁷ worhten him⁸ tō gebeorge wið
 hiera fēondum; and swā, mid micle sige,⁹ hām fōron.¹⁰

Ðā¹¹ ðæt ðā ongēaton ðā āerran gewinnan,¹² ðæt se Roma-
 nisca here wæs onweg gewiten, ðā cōmon hīe sōna mid
 sciphære on hiera landgemāru, and slōgon¹³ ealle and cweald-
 10 on¹³ ðæt hīe gemētton, and swā-swā rīpe ierðe¹⁴ fortrædon and
 fornōmon, and hīe mid ealle¹⁵ foriermdon. And hīe ðā eft
 sendon ārendwrecan tō Rome, and wēpendre stefne him
 fultumes bādon,¹⁶ ðæt¹⁷ se¹⁷ earne ēðel mid ealle¹⁵ ne
 fordilgod ne wære, nē se nama ðære Romaniscan ðeode,¹⁸
 15 se-ðe mid him swā lange scēan¹⁹ beorhte,¹⁹ fram frēmdra

¹ See 46.

² This may be anywhere between A.D. 388 and 420. See Moberly, p. 27.

³ This clause translates *Quibus mox legio destinatur armata*. Note the use of the active for the passive, which also appears in other sentences of the context.

⁴ The legionaries, apparently.

⁵ Of the Britons; Lat. *sociorum finibus*.

⁶ Lat. *expulit*. See above, p. 145, n. 6.

⁷ Lat. *murum*.

⁸ See 184. a.

⁹ Lat. *triumpho*. See 175.

¹⁰ A passage of the Latin is

here omitted in the translation, describing the construction of the (earthen) wall, between the Friths of Forth and of Clyde.

¹¹ These three *ðā*'s respectively = *when*, *then*, and *the*.

¹² Lat. *inimici*.

¹³ Lat. *cædunt*. See above, p. 145, n. 6.

¹⁴ Lat. *segetem*.

¹⁵ **Mid ealle** = *completely*. See 175.

¹⁶ Lat. *implorantes*.

¹⁷ MS. *ðæt*.

¹⁸ Lat. *provinciae*.

¹⁹ Lat. *claruerat*. Is the Old English to be translated as perfect or as pluperfect? See *scīnan* (18),

ðeoda¹ ungeðwærnesse² fornumen and fordilgod bēon sceolde. Ðā wæs eft hƿere³ hider sƿend,⁴ se wæs cumende on ungewēnedre⁵ tīde, on hærfeſte. And hīe sōna wið hīera fēondum gefuhton, and sige hæfdon, and ealle ðā, ðe ðone⁶ dēað⁶ beswīcian⁶ meahton, ofer ðone sǣ norð 5 āfliemdon, ðā-ðe ær, ælce gēare,⁷ ofer ðone sǣ hlōðedon and hƿergedon. Ðā gesægdon Romane on ān⁸ Bryttum⁸ ðæt hīe nō mā ne meahten for hīera gescieldnesse⁹ swā gewinnfullicum¹⁰ fierdum¹¹ swēncte¹² bēon.¹² Ac hīe manedon¹³ and¹³ lǣrdon¹³ ðæt hīe him wǣpnu worhten,¹⁴ 10 and mōdes strēngðe nōmen,¹⁵ ðæt hīe campoden and wīðstōden hīera fēondum.¹⁶ And hīe him ðā ēac tō ræde and tō frōfre fundon ðæt hīe gemānelice fæsten geworhten him tō gescieldnesse — stānenne weall rihtre¹⁷ stīge¹⁷ fram ēastsǣ oð westsǣ, ðær Severus,¹⁸ se cāsere, 15 īu hēt dīcian and eorðweall gewyrcean; ðone man¹⁹ nū tō-dæg scēawian mæg, eahta fōta²⁰ brādne, and twelf fōta²⁰ hēahne.²¹ Swilce ēac on ðæs sǣs wearoðe tō sūð-

¹ See 153. c.² Lat. *improbitate*.³ Lat. *legio*.⁴ Past part.; see 113.⁵ Lat. *inopinata*.⁶ Lat. *evadere*, not *mortem evadere*.⁷ See 176.⁸ On ān = *at once*; it is the Mod. Eng. *anon*, which see in the *New Eng. Dict.*⁹ Lat. *defensionem*.¹⁰ Lat. *laboriosis*.¹¹ Lat. *expeditionibus*.¹² Lat. *fatigari*.¹³ Lat. *monent*. See above, p. 145, n. 6.¹⁴ See 194. b. ¹⁵ See *niman*.¹⁶ The translation here is very free, as is much of this selection.¹⁷ Lat. *recto tramite*; see 160. 1; 176. 2.¹⁸ This is wrong; it is Hadrian's wall that is meant. See p. 144, n. 10, and an article in the *Quarterly Review* for January, 1860.¹⁹ See 89. e. ²⁰ See 154. c.²¹ A comparison of this sen-

dæle, ðanan ðe hīe¹ sciphære² on becōm, torras timbredon
 tō gebeorge³ ðæs sæs. Ðā, sōna ðæs-ðe ðis fæsten geworht
 wæs, ðā sealdon hīe him bȳsena⁴ maniga hū hīe him wāpnu
 wyrcean sceolden, and hiera fēondum wiðstandan⁵; and⁶
 5 hīe ðā grētton, and him cȳðdon ðæt hīe nāfre mā hīe
 sēcean woldon; and hīe sigefæste ofer sǣ fērdon. Ðā⁷
 ðæt ðā Pihtas and Scottas geāxedon, ðæt hīe hām gewitene
 wāron, and ēac ðæt hīe hider nō⁸ eft mā hīe sēcean ne⁸
 woldon, ðā wāron hīe ðȳ⁹ bealdran gewordene, and sōna
 10 ealne norðdæl ðises īglandes oð ðone weall genōmon¹⁰
 and¹⁰ gesetton.¹⁰ Wið ðisum stōd on ðām fæstene ufan-
 weardum¹¹ se earga¹² fēða¹³ Brytta, and ðær forhtiendre¹⁴
 heortan¹⁴ wunode dæges¹⁵ and nihtes.¹⁵ Ðā sōhton hiera
 15 ðām tugon hīe earmlice¹⁶ ādūn of ðām wealle; and hīe
 wāron sōna dēade swā hīe eorðan gesōhton.¹⁷ Hīe ðā
 forlēton ðone weall and hiera byrig,¹⁸ and flugon¹⁹ onweg;

tence with the original will show
 the translator's power and free-
 dom.

¹ Acc. plur.; the Britons.

² Nom. sing.; of the enemy.

The Latin is different.

³ Lat. *prospectum*.

⁴ Lat. *monita*.

⁵ Free translation.

⁶ From this point to the end of
 the sentence = Lat. *et valedicunt*
sociis tanquam ultra non rever-
suri. Quibus ad sua remeantibus.
 Probably A.D. 418.

⁷ From here to **woldon** = Lat.

cognita Scotti Pictique reditus
denegatione.

⁸ See 183. ¹⁰ Lat. *capessunt*.

⁹ See 178. ¹¹ See 166. 1.

¹² Lat. *segnis*.

¹³ Lat. *acies*.

¹⁴ Lat. *tremēti corde*. See
 160. 1.

¹⁵ See 74. **Nihtes** is formed
 on the model of **dæges**, though
 from a feminine **niht**.

¹⁶ Lat. *miserrime*.

¹⁷ The whole sentence is very
 free. ¹⁸ Acc. plur. (52).

¹⁹ See **flēon**.

and hiera gewinnan hīe ēhton and slōgon,¹ and on wæl fieldon. Wæs ðis gefeoht wælgrimre and strēngre eallum² ðāem ārgedōnum.³ For-ðon swā-swā scēap⁴ fram wulfum⁵ and⁵ wildēorum⁵ bēoð fornumene, swā ðā earman ceasterwaran tōslitene⁶ and⁶ fornumene⁶ wæron⁶ fram hiera 5 fēondum, and hiera æhtum⁷ benāemde, and tō hungre gesette.

¹ See **slēan**.

² See **178**.

⁵ Lat. *feris*.

³ Lat. *prioribus*.

⁶ Lat. *discerpuntur*.

⁴ See **47**. What is the modern plural?

⁷ See **177**.

VII.

THE PASSING OF CHAD.¹

(Bede, Eccl. Hist., Bk. IV., Chap. III.)

Cōm² hē³ mid Æðelðrȳðe⁴ of Ēastenglum; and hē wæs hiere ðegna,⁵ and hūses,⁵ and hiere gefērsceipes,⁵ ofer eall ealdormann. Ðā Godes gelēafa ðā wēox, and hāt wæs, ðā

¹ Chad, Bishop of Lichfield, died March 2, 672. See the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*

² In 660.

³ Ōwini. An interesting memorial of him was discovered, at the end of the last century, in the village of Haddenham, near Ely. It is a stone which appears to have formed the base of a cross, and on one of its sides is the following inscription:—

✠ LVCEM . TVAM . OVINO
DA . DEVS . ET . REQVIĒ
AMEN.

This is, according to Palgrave, perhaps one of the most venerable monuments of Saxon antiq-

uity. It long served as a horse-block, but is now in the south aisle of Ely Cathedral. Dean Merivale of Ely has suggested that the words are meant for a pentameter line (the *m* in *lucem* being elided even before a consonant). For further particulars, see Mayor and Lumby's ed. of Bede, p. 429, and Bright's *Early English Church History*, p. 239.

⁴ St. Etheldred, or Audrey (died 679), whose choice of the island of Ely as the site of a monastery led to the erection of the present cathedral. She was the daughter of Anna, king (not queen) of the East Anglians. What is the etymology of our modern word *tawdry*?

⁵ Dependent on **ealdormann**.

ðohte hē ðæt hē sceolde worulde¹ wiðsacan, and ðæt unāswundenlice swā gedyde; and hine middangeardes ðingum tō ðon ongierede² and² genacodode² ðæt he eall forlēt ðā-ðe hē hæfde, nefne his ānfealdne gegierelan, and cōm tō Lāestinga īe, tō ðām mynstre³ ðæs ārwierðan 5
 bisceopes.⁴ Bær him⁵ æxe and adesan on handa; tēcnode in⁶ ðon ðæt hē nālæs tō idelnesse, swā sume oðre, ac tō gewinne, in ðæt⁷ mynster ēode; and ðæt selfe ēac swilce mid dædum gecyðde. And, for-ðon-ðe hē lýt genyhtsumode in smēaunge and in leornunge, hāligra 10
 gewrita, hē ðy⁸ mā mid his handum wann, and⁹ worhte ðā ðing ðe nīedðearflicu wæron. Ðæs¹⁰ is tō tæcne, ðæt hē mid ðone bisceop in ðām foresprecenum wicum¹¹ for his ārwierðnesse and for his geornfulnesse¹² betweoh ðā brōðor wæs hæfd. Ðonne¹³ hīe inne¹⁴ hiera leornunge 15

¹ See 26. The word is originally a compound, from **wer**, *man*, and a hypothetical **ald**, *age* (cf. the adj. **eald**, *old*). From *age of man* to *generation* = *the people living at one time*, *mankind*; and from this to *inhabited earth*, the transitions are not violent. The similar changes in the meaning of the Lat. *sæculum* and Gr. *κόσμος*, especially in Biblical usage, will be found suggestive.

² Lat. *exiit*; two words for one. See 162.

³ From what Latin word? Has it the same meaning in 'York Minster'?

⁴ From what Latin (Greek) word?

⁵ See 184. *a*.

⁶ Translate, *by*.

⁷ Why the accusative?

⁸ What is the form of this word in Mod. Eng.? Wherein does it differ from the other Mod. Eng. word of the same form?

⁹ This clause added by the translator.

¹⁰ Dependent on **tæcne**.

¹¹ Lat. *mansionē*.

¹² The double phrase translates *pro suæ reverentia devotionis*.

¹³ = *When*.

¹⁴ Adverb; contrasted with **ūte**, next line.

and hiera bēcrædinge¹ beēodon, ðonne wæs hē ūte wyrcende, swā-hwæt-swā ðearf gesegen² wæs.²

Ðā hē ðā sume³ dæge³ hwæthwugu swilces⁴ ūte dyde, and his gefēran tō byrig tō ciricean ēodon, swā hīe gelōm-
 5 lice dydon, and se bisceop, āna in ðære ciricean,⁵ oððe in bēcrædinge oððe in gebedum geornfull wæs, ðā gehierde hē sēmninga, swā-swā hē eft æfter ðon sægde, ðā swēt-
 estan stefne⁶ and ðā fægerestan, singendra and blis-
 siendra,⁷ of heofonum oð eorðan āstigan. Ðā stefne⁸ and
 10 ðone sang⁸ hē cwæð ðæt hē ærest gehierde fram ēast-sūðdæle heofones, ðæt is fram hēanesse ðære winterlican sunnan ūpganges; and ðanan tō him styccemælum⁹ nēa-læcton, oð-ðæt hē^{9a} becōm tō ðæcean¹⁰ ðære ciricean ðe¹¹ se
 bisceop in wæs; and, ingangende, eall¹² gefylde, and in
 15 ymbhwyrfte ymbsealde. And hē ðā geornlice his mōd¹³ āðenede¹³ in ðā ðing ðe hē gehierde. Ðā gehierde hē eft swā-swā¹⁴ healfre tīde fæce,¹⁵ of hrōfe ðære ilcan ciricean ūpāstigan ðone ilcan blissesang,¹⁶ and, ðy ilcan wege¹⁷ ðe hē ær cōm, ūp oð heofonas mid unāsęcgendre¹⁸
 20 swētnesse eft hweorfan.¹⁹

¹ MS. *becrædon*.

² Lat. *videbantur*.

³ See 176.

⁴ See 154. *b*.

⁵ Lat. *oratorio loci*. The monks had gone to the church. Cf. below, p. 153, l. 7.

⁶ See 169. For this word see Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1704.

⁷ Lat. *vocem suavissimam cantantium atque letantium*. What adjective is concealed in **bliss-** (see 34)?

⁸ Acc. after **gehierde**.

⁹ See 72.

^{9a} **Se sang**.

¹⁰ Lat. *tectum*, for which l. 17 has **hrōf**.

¹¹ Governed by **in**.

¹² Acc. sing.

¹³ Lat. *animum intenderet*.

¹⁴ Lat. *quasi*.

¹⁵ See 176.

¹⁶ Lat. *letitiæ canticum*. See 169.

¹⁷ See 176. 2.

¹⁸ Lat. *ineffabili*.

¹⁹ Lat. *reverti*.

Dā wunode hē ðær sum¹ fæc¹ tīde,¹ wundriende and
 wafiende; and mid behygdigum mōde ðōhte and smēade
 hwæt ðā ðing bēon sceolden. Dā ontȳnde se bisceop ðæt
 ēagðȳrel² ðære ciricean, and mid his handa slōg tācen,
 swā-swā his gewuna wæs gif hwilc mann ūte wære, ðæt 5
 hē in tō him ēode. Dā ēode hē sōna in tō him. Cwæð
 hē, se bisceop, him tō³: “Gang hraðe tō ciricean,⁴ and
 hāt⁵ ūre seofon brōðor hider tō mē cuman; and ðū ēac
 swilce mid wes.⁶” Dā hīe ðā tō him cōmon, ðā manode
 hē hīe ærest ðæt hīe betwēonan him ðæt mægen⁷ lufe⁸ 10
 and sibbe,⁸ and betwēon⁹ eallum Godes mannum geornlice
 hēolden; and ēac swilce ðā gesetennesse ðæs regollican
 ðēodscipes,¹⁰ ðe hīe fram him geleornodon, and on him
 gesāwon, oððe in ðæra forðgelēoredra fædra dædum oððe
 godcundum gemete, ðæt hīe ðā ungewērgedre¹¹ geornful- 15
 nesse¹¹ fylgden and lāsten.¹² Æfter ðon hē underðiedde,¹³
 and him sægde ðæt se dæg swiðe nēah stōde his forð-
 fōre,¹⁴ and ðus cwæð: “Se lēofa¹⁵ cuma and se lufiend-
 lica,¹⁵ se-ðe gewunode ūre brōðor nēosian, sē cōm swilce

¹ Lat. *aliquantulum horæ* (170).

² In what Mod. Eng. word is a disguised form of -ðȳrel to be found? What is the etymology of *window*?

³ See 201. 1.

⁴ What is the etymology of *church*? From what language is it originally derived?

⁵ See *hātan*.

⁶ Imper. sing. When followed by the adj. *hæl*, what Mod. Eng. word does it give rise to?

⁷ Lat. *virtutem*.

⁸ See 153. *i*.

⁹ Lat. *ad* = *toward*, rather than *among*.

¹⁰ Lat. *instituta disciplinæ regularis*.

¹¹ See 174; 160. 1.

¹² How is this related to the Mod. Eng. verb *last*, and to the German *leisten*?

¹³ Lat. *subjunxit*.

¹⁴ Dependent on *dæg*.

¹⁵ Lat. *amabilis*.

tō-dæg tō mē, and mē of worulde cīegde and laðode. For-ðon gē ðonne nū ƿfthweorfað¹ tō ciricean, and biddað¹ ūre brōðor ðæt hīe mīne forðfōre mid hiera gebedum and bēnum Dryhtne bebēoden²; and swilce ēac hiera selfra
 5 forðfōre, ðære tīd is uncūð,³ ðæt hīe gemynen⁴ mid wæc-
 cenum and gebedum and mid gōdum⁵ forecuman.⁶

Mid-ðy hē ðā ðās word, and ðises gemetes manigu, tō him sprecende wæs, and hīe, onfangenre⁷ his blētsunge,⁷ swīðe unrōte fram him ēodon, ðā hwearf sē⁸ āna⁸ ƿft⁹ in
 10 tō him se-ðe ðone heofonlican sang gehīerde, and hine ēaðmōdlice on eorðan āstrehte fore ðone bisceop, and ðus cwæð: “Mīn fæder, mōt¹⁰ ic ðe ōhtes¹¹ āxian”? Cwæð hē: “Āxa ðæs¹¹ ðū wille.” Ðā cwæð hē: “Ic ðe lā hālsie and bidde for Godes lufe ðæt ðū mē
 15 gesēcge¹² hwæt se sang wære blissiendra ðe¹³ ic gehīerde, of heofonum cumendra¹⁴ ofer ðās ciricean,¹⁵ and, æfter tīde,¹⁶ ƿfthweorfendra tō heofonum.” Andswarode hē, se bisceop: “Gif ðū sanges stefne gehīerde, and ðū heofonlic weorod ongēate ofer ūs ēac cuman, ic ðe
 20 bebēode on Dryhtnes naman ðæt ðū ðæt nānigum mēnn

¹ Here are two independent verbs, where the Latin has *reverentes . . . dicite*.

² Lat. *commendent*.

³ What change of meaning in the modern word *uncouth*? How related to the ancient meaning?

⁴ See 134.

⁵ According to the Latin, *weorcum* should be supplied.

⁶ Dependent on *gemynen*.

⁷ See 167.

⁸ Lat. *ipse solus*, meaning Ōwini.

⁹ Belongs with *hwearf*; *hwearf . . . ƿft* = Lat. *rediit*.

¹⁰ See 137.

¹¹ See 156.

¹² See 194. *b*.

¹³ Refers to *sang*.

¹⁴ Belongs to *blissiendra*.

¹⁵ Lat. *oratorium*. See above, p. 152, n. 5.

¹⁶ Lat. *tempus*.

cȳðe¹ nē¹ secge¹ ær mīnre forðfōre. Ic ðē sōðlice secge ðætte ðæt wæron² engla gāstas ðe ðær cōmon, ðā mē tō ðæm heofonlicum mēdum cīegdon and laðedon ðā ic simle lufode and wilnode. And, æfter seofon dagum, hīe eft-hweorfende³ and cumende³ mē gehēton, and mē ðonne 5 mid him lædan woldon.”

Ðæt wæs swā sōðlice mid dæde gefylled swā him tō⁴ cweden wæs. Ðā wæs hē sōna gehrinen lichamlicre⁵ untrymnesse,⁵ and sēo⁶ dæghwæmlice wēox and hefīgode; and ðā, ðȳ sefoðan dæge,⁷ swā him gehāten wæs, æfter- 10 ðon-ðe his forðfōre getrymede⁸ mid onfangennesse ðæs Dryhtenlican lichaman and blōdes, [ðætte⁹] sēo hālge sāwl wæs onlīesed fram ðæs lichaman hefīgnessum,¹⁰ and mid engla lāttēowdōme¹¹ and gefērsceipe, swā riht¹² is tō geliefanne, ðā ēcean gefēan and ðā heofonlican ēadig- 15 nesse¹³ gestāh and gesōhte. Is ðæt hwilc¹⁴ wundor ðeah- ðe hē ðone dæg his dēaðes, oððe mā,¹⁵ ðone Dryhtnes dæg, blīðe gesāwe, ðone hē simle sorgiende bād oð-ðæt hē cōme?

¹ Lat. *dicas*.

² See 189. 3.

³ These translate the Lat. future part. *redituros*. Supply *would be* in translation, or *would* with the finite verb. The future participle of the following clause, *adducturos*, is translated by a finite verb.

⁴ Governs **him**, or may be regarded as belonging to the following verb (201. 1).

⁵ See 174; 160. 1.

⁶ Dem. pron. Translate by *that*.

⁷ See 176.

⁸ Supply **hē** as the subject.

⁹ The MS. has **ðætte**, but the sense does not require it.

¹⁰ Lat. *ergastulo*.

¹¹ See 33 (lād-).

¹² Lat. *fas*.

¹³ Acc. plur.

¹⁴ Translate, *any*.

¹⁵ Lat. *potius*.

VIII.

THE DANGERS OF GREATNESS.

(From Wulfstan's Homilies, No. 49.)

[Wulfstan — also known by his Latinized name, Lupus — was Bishop of Worcester and Archbishop of York from 1002 to 1023. This homily is one of those attributed to him, but, according to Napier, with insufficient reason, as a portion of it is found in the Blickling Homilies, the manuscript of which bears the date of 971.]

Æghwilec hēah ār, hēr on worulde, bið mid frēcnessum¹ ymbseald²; efne swā³ ðā woruldgeðyngðā bēoð māran, swā ðā frēcnessa bēoð swiðran. Swā wē magon, be ðæm, ðā bȳsena oncnāwan and ongietan.⁴ Ðæt trēow, ðonne, ðe
 5 wiexð⁵ on ðæm wudubearwe, ðæt⁶ hit hlīfað ūp ofer eall ðā ōðru trēowu and bræt^{6a} hit,⁷ ðonne sēmninga storm⁸ gestent, and se stranga wind,⁹ ðonne¹⁰ bið hit swiðlicor gewæged and geswēnged ðonne se ōðer wudu.¹¹ Swā bið ēac gelīce be ðæm hēaclifum and torrum,¹² ðonne hīe

¹ See 144.

² See 114.

³ Swā . . . māran, swā . . . swiðran = *the greater, the fiercer*. Note the tendency to antithesis.

⁴ Observe the redundancy.

⁵ See **weaxan**. ⁶ = *so that*.

^{6a} See **brædan** (34).

⁷ See 184. *b*.

⁸ Note the alliteration.

⁹ Second subject of **gestent**.

¹⁰ Frequently the second correlative, in such pairs as **ðonne . . . ðonne**, **ðā . . . ðā**, need not be translated; it is frequently followed by an inverted order, as here, the verb preceding its subject. See 202.

¹¹ **Se ōðer wudu** = *the rest of the forest, not the other wood*.

¹² Probably here = *crag*.

hlifiað feorr ūp ofer ðā ōðre¹ eorðan, hīe ðonne sēmninga feallan onginnað,² and full ðearlice hrēosan³ tō eorðan. Swilce⁴ ēac be ðæm hēagum⁵ muntum and dūnum,⁶ ðā-ðe hēah standað ofer ealne middangeard, ðā-hwæðre wīte habbað ðæs ealdordōmes, ðæt hīe bēoð geneahhe mid 5 heofonfýre⁷ geðrēade and geðræste, and mid liegum ge-

¹ See p. 156, n. 12.

² This resembles the use of *gin* in Chaucer, almost as an auxiliary tense-sign, like *do* in Mod. Eng., the latter not being thus used in OE. In Chaucer it usually occurs as the preterit *gan*, e.g. in the *Clerk's Tale*, 392: "til the sonne gan descende." See Lounsbury's *History of the English Language*. An interesting parallel is to be found in New Testament Greek, as, for example, Acts 1. 1: "The former treatise I made, O Theophilus, concerning all that Jesus began (ἤρξατο) both to do and to teach." According to Thayer, however (*Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament*), there is in its employment always a sense of *beginning*, in its proper meaning.

³ Dependent, like *feallan*, on *onginnað*. Give the ind. pret. plur.

⁴ It would be interesting to know from what literary source these illustrations are ultimately derived. They remind one of

Shakespeare (*Rich. III.*, 1. 3. 259-260):—

They that stand high have many
blasts to shake them;
And if they fall, they dash them-
selves to pieces.

Cf. also *3 Hen. VI.*, 5. 2. 11-15. No doubt many Elizabethan parallels could be found; I have noted in Chapman, *Byron's Conspiracy*, Act 3, Scene 1 (p. 232 of Shepherd's ed.), and *Byron's Tragedy*, Act 5, Scene 1 (*Ib.*, p. 272). Perhaps the Elizabethans may have derived them from Seneca; cf. the Chorus in Act 4 of the *Hippolytus*, vv. 1123-1143; *Hercules Furens* 201; *Œdipus* 8-11. Seneca may have caught a suggestion from Sophocles, though the parallel is somewhat remote; see the latter's *Antigone*, vv. 712-717, and Horace, *C.* II. 10.

⁵ See 58. 1.

⁶ Redundant. What is *dūn* in Mod. Eng. (24)? Whence is the adverb *down* derived?

⁷ Note the poetical term.

slægene. Swā ðā hēan mihta¹ hēr on worulde hrēosað, and feallað,² and tō lore weorðað, and ðisse³ worulde³ welan weorðað tō sorge, and ðās eorðlican wundor weorðað tō nāhte.⁴

- 5 Ðēah wē ðisse worulde wlēnca⁵ tilien⁶ swīðe, and in wuldre⁵ scēnen⁶ swīðe; ðēah wē ūs gescierpen⁶ mid ðȳ rēadestan gōdwēbbe,⁵ and gefrætween⁶ mid⁷ ðȳ beorhtestan golde,⁵ and mid⁷ ðām dēorwierðestum gimum⁵ ūtan ymbhōn⁶; hwæðre⁸ wē seulon on nearonesse ende⁹
- 10 gebīdan. Ðēah-ðe ðā mihtigestan and ðā rīcestan hāten⁶ him¹⁰ rēste gewyrcean of marmanstāne,¹¹ and mid goldfrætwum and mid gimcynnum eall āstāned, and mid seolfrenum rūwum and gōdwēbbe eall oferwrigen, and mid dēorwierðum wrytgemengnessum eall gestrēded,¹² and
- 15 mid goldlēafum gestrēowod ymbūtan, hwæðre⁸ se bitera dēað ðæt tōdāleð eall. Ðonne bið sēo gleng āgoten,¹³ and se ðrym tōbrocen, and ðā gimmas tōglidene, and ðæt gold tōsceacen, and ðā lichaman tōhrorene¹⁴ and tō dūst¹⁵ gewordene.

¹ This suggests Seneca (*Edipus*, Act 1, v. 11):—

Imperia sic excelsa Fortunæ obja-cent.

² Pleonastic.

³ Genitive, dependent on **welan**.

⁴ Cf. Mod. Eng. *come to naught*.

⁵ Note the alliteration.

⁶ In what mood and tense are these verbs, and why?

⁷ **Mid** governs both the dative and the instrumental (175).

⁸ This word might be omitted in translation; see p. 156, n. 10.

⁹ Object of **gebīdan**.

¹⁰ See 184. a.

¹¹ Which part of this word is native, and which foreign?

¹² An instance of a strong verb (104; cf. 28) which has already become weak in OE.

¹³ Note the parallelism and the enumeration.

¹⁴ From what verb (37)?

¹⁵ See 24.

IX.

DUTIES OF THE RICH TOWARD THE POOR.

(From the same Homily as the last.)

Se Hælend cwæð tō ðæm wlancan¹: “For hwȳ wære
 ðū swā fæsthafol mīnra gōda, ðe ic ðē sealde? Tō
 hwon² rēcelēasodest ðū ðære giefe, ðe ic ðē geaf? Ic ðē
 nū āfierre³ fram mīnre sēlene, ðe ic ðē forgeaf; ðonne
 bist³ ðū wāðla on woruldlife. For hwon² noldest⁴ ðū 5
 geðencean ðæt ic wille⁵ forgielðan æghwilecum mēnn āne
 gōde dæd, ðe for mīnum naman mann gedēð? Mid
 hundtēontigum ic hit him forgielde,³ swā hit is on
 mīnum godspelle gecweden and gesæd,⁶ ‘Swā-hwæt-swā⁷
 gē sēllað ānum of mīnum ðæm læstum,⁸ gē hit simle mē 10
 sēllað,⁹ and ic ēow wið¹⁰ ðæm geselle³ ēcne drēam¹¹ on
 heofonum.’

¹ From what OE. word is the Mod. Eng. *rich* derived (see Skeat, *Prin.*, p. 61)? From what OE. meaning is the modern signification derived?

² Note Wulfstan’s use of **tō** **hwon**, for **hwon**, in the sense of *why*. See 88.

³ See 188. ⁴ See 139.

⁵ Why should not the preterit be used here?

⁶ Pleonastic.

⁷ What portion of this is lost, and how is it replaced, in the Mod. Eng. *whatsoever*?

⁸ See 66.

⁹ Cf. the form of this sentence with that on p. 135, l. 14.

¹⁰ = *in return for*. How is this to be reconciled with other senses of **wið**?

¹¹ Not *dream*, but *joy, bliss*.

Ðū mann, tō hwon eart ðū mē swā ungeðancfull mīnra¹
 giefena? Hwæt! ic ðē gescēop and geliffæste, and æg-
 hwæt² ðæs ðe ðū hæfst³ ic ðē sealde. Mīn is eall ðæt
 ðū hæfst, and ðīn nis nān wiht.⁴ Ic hit eall āfierre
 5 fram ðē; ðū leofa⁵ būtan mē, gif ðū mæge.⁶ Ðē ic hit
 sealde, tō⁷ ðon⁷ ðæt⁷ ðū hit sceoldest¹² ðearfum dælan. Ic
 swērie ðurh mē⁸ selfne ðæt ic eom se ilca God ðe ðone
 weligan and ðone hēanan geworhte mid mīnum handum.
 Ðæt⁹ ic wolde, ðæt ðū mīne ðearfan fēðdest,¹² ðonne hīe
 10 wāeron ðē biddende mīnra¹⁰ gōða,¹⁰ and ðū him simple
 tīðe¹¹ forwierndest. For hwon noldest ðū hit⁹ geðencean,
 gif ðū him mildheortnesse on gecyðdest,¹² ðæt ðū ne
 sceoldest¹² ðæs¹³ nān ðing forlēosan, ðe¹⁴ ðū him dydest,
 nē mē on ðære sēlene ābelgan mīnes¹⁵ āgnes¹⁵? Tō
 15 hwon āgnodest ðū ðē ānum ðæt ic inc¹⁶ bām¹⁷ sealde?
 Tō hwon fēðdest ðū ðē ænne of ðām ðe ic inc¹⁶ bām¹⁷
 gescēop tō¹⁸ welan, and tō¹⁸ wiste, and tō¹⁸ feorhnere?
 Tō hwon hēolde¹⁹ ðū hit ðē ānum and ðīnum bearnum,
 ðæt meahte manigum genyhtsumian²⁰? Unieðe ðē wæs

¹ See 155.¹⁰ See 156. b.² See 89. c.³ See 121.¹¹ Not to be confounded with

⁴ In what two Mod. Eng. words
 does **wiht** appear? From what
 OE. forms are *aught* and *naught*
 derived?

tīde. See 156. j.¹² Optative more regular.⁵ See 122 and 198.¹³ See 154. a.⁶ = *canst*, not *mayst* (135).¹⁴ Refers to its antecedent⁷ = *in order that*.**ðæs**.

⁸ What has this accusative be-
 come in Mod. Eng.?

¹⁵ Dependent on **sēlene**.

⁹ Anticipative of the following
 noun-clause.

¹⁶ Note this rare dual (81).¹⁷ See 79.¹⁸ = *for*, *as*.¹⁹ From what infinitive?²⁰ The sense is pluperfect.

ðæt ðū hit eall ne meahstest gefæstnian, nē mid inseglum beclȳsan. Wēnst ðū ðæt hit¹ ðīn sīe ðæt sēo eorðe ðē forðbringð? Hēo² ðē grēwð,³ and blēwð,³ and sǣd lǣt,⁴ and andlifan bringð. Ic nū āfierre mīnne fultum fram ðē; hafa⁵ ðū æt⁶ ðīnum gewinne ðæt ðū mæge, and æt⁶ ðīnum geswince. Ic ðē⁷ ætbrēde⁸ mīne rēnas,⁸ ðæt hīe ðīnre eorðan⁹ ne rīnen.¹⁰ Ic āfierre fram ðē mīne mildheortnesse, and ðonne bið sōna gecȳðed ðīn iermðu, and ætiewed.

Gif ðū wēre¹¹ ðæt hit ðīn bōcland¹² sīe ðæt ðū on eardast, and on āgne æht¹³ geseald, hit ðonne wāeron¹⁰ mīne wāteru, ðā-ðe on heofonum wāeron, ðonne ic mīne giefe eorðwarum dælde. Gif ðū miht hæbbe,¹¹ dæl rēnas ofer ðīne eorðan. Gif ðū strang sīe, seȝle wāestmas ðīnre eorðan. Ic āhierde mīne sunnan, and hēo gebierht; ðonne forbærnð¹⁵ hēo ealle ðīne æceras, and ðonne bist¹⁵ ðū dæl-lēas¹⁶ mīnes rēnes,¹⁷ and ðē ðonne bið¹⁵ ðīn eorðe īdel and unnyt gōða¹⁸ gehwilces.¹⁹ Mīne ðearfan libbað be mē; gif ðū mæge,¹¹ wuna būtan mē. Mīne ðearfan mē ealne²⁰ weg habbað, and ic hīe nāfre ne forlǣte.”

¹ Anticipative of **ðæt**.

² Refers to what?

³ See 109.

⁴ See lǣdan.

⁵ See 121 and 198.

⁶ = *from*; cf. *at one's hands*.

⁷ See 164. ⁸ See 28.

⁹ See 161.

¹⁰ MS. *rinað*.

¹¹ See 196. *d*.

¹² Land held by **bōc** or charter, *freehold estate*; distinguished from **folcland**, *communal prop-*

erty. The term is explained by the following clause.

¹³ See 172. 1.

¹⁴ See 189. 3.

¹⁵ Are these presents or futures?

¹⁶ See 146.

¹⁷ See 155. *a*.

¹⁸ Dependent on **gehwilces**. See 154. *b*.

¹⁹ Dependent on **īdel** and **unnyt**. See 155. *a*.

²⁰ See 170. Mod. Eng. *always*.

X.

ALFRED'S PREFACE TO BOETHIUS.

(Prefixed to his translation.)

Ælfred cyning wæs wealhstōd¹ ðisse bēc, and hīe of
 Bōclædene² on Ænglisc wende, swā hēo nū is gedōn.
 Hwīlum hē sette word be worde, hwīlum andgiet of
 andgiete, swā-swā hē hit ðā sweetolost and andgiet-
 5 fullicost gerēccēan meahte for ðām mislicum and manig-
 fealdum woruldbisgum ðe hine oft ægðer ge on mōde
 ge on lichaman bisgedon. Ðā bisga³ ūs sind swīðe
 earfoðrīme ðe on his dagum on ðā rīcu becōmon ðe hē
 underfangen hæfde, and ðeah, ðā hē ðās bōc hæfde
 10 geleornod, and of Lædene tō Ængliscum spelle gewend,
 ðā geworhte hē hīe eft tō lēoðe, swā-swā hēo nū gedōn
 is. And nū bitt⁴ and for Godes naman hālsað ælcne
 ðæra ðe ðās bōc rædan lyste,⁵ ðæt hē for hine gebidde,
 and him ne wite gif hē⁶ hit rihtlicor ongiete ðonne hē⁷
 15 meahte; for-ðam-ðe ælc mann sceal be his andgietes
 mæðe, and be his æmettan, sprecað ðæt hē spricð, and
 dōn ðæt-ðæt hē dēð.

¹ **Wealh-** signifies *foreign* (see *walnut*), and sometimes *servant*, orig. *Celtic*, *Celt* (cf. *Wales*, *Welsh*, *Cornwall*), from *Volcæ*, the name of a Celtic tribe (Cæsar, *Gallie War*, Bk. VII.).

² Perhaps originally in contrast to the Latin spoken in Britain.

³ See 51. a.

⁴ Supply **hē**.

⁵ See 190.

⁶ The reader.

⁷ Alfred.

XI.

A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED.

(From the end of his translation of Boethius.)

Dryhten,¹ ælmihtiga God,¹ Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse, and for ðære hālgan rōde tǣcne,² and for Sanctæ Marian mægðhāde, and for Sancti Michaeles gehīersumnesse, and for ealra ðīnra hālgena³ lufan and hiera earnungum, ðæt 5
 ðū mē gewissie⁴ bēð ðonne ic āworhte tō ðē; and gewissa mē tō ðīnum willan, and tō mīnre sǣwle ðearfe,⁵ bēð ðonne ic self cunne⁶; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sǣwle ðearfe; and gestranga mē wið ðæs dēofles³ costnungum; and āfierr fram mē ðā fūlan gālnesse and ælce 10
 unrihtwīsnesse; and gescield mē wið mīnum wiðerwinnum, gesewenlicum and ungesewenlicum; and tǣc mē ðīnne willan⁷ tō wyrceanne; ðæt ic mæge⁸ þē inweardlice lufian tōforan eallum ðingum, mid clǣnum geðance and mid clǣnum lichaman. For-ðon-ðe ðū eart mīn Scieppend,⁹ and mīn 15
 Ālīesend, mīn Fultum, mīn Frōfor, mīn Trēownes, and mīn Tōhopa. Sīe ðē lof and wuldor nū and ā ā ā, tō worulde būtan æghwīlcum ende. Amen.

¹ See 152.

² Governed by **for**.

³ See 153. c.

⁴ See 194. b.

⁵ See 166.

⁶ Optative (130).

⁷ Object of **wyrceanne**.

⁸ See 196. d.

⁹ See 150.

XII.

APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.

[The Old English version of the *Romance of Apollonius*, from which our extract is taken, belongs, according to Wülker, to the second third of the eleventh century; according to Ebert, to its beginning; and according to Riese, most probably to the tenth. The original story was almost certainly written in Greek, probably in the third century of our era, and by an imitator of Xenophon of Ephesus. This is lost, and is only represented by a Latin version, which may have been made in the same century, and in any case not later than the sixth, by a writer of no great education, who introduced Christian terms and conceptions, added some things, and retrenched others. Over a hundred manuscripts of this Latin version are known, of which twelve are in England. Scarcely any two manuscripts agree, and the discrepancies are often great; still, for convenience, they have been grouped into three main classes. To the third of these, which is not the equal of the other two, the immediate original of our version must have belonged, resembling most nearly a manuscript of the Bodleian Library (Laud H. 39), and, at the next further remove, one of the British Museum (Sloan. 1619).

The popularity of the romance is attested not only by the number and variety of the Latin manuscripts, but no less by the mediæval and subsequent translations into almost every modern language. Thus, for example, there is in Old French a romance of *Jourdain de Blaie*, the scene being laid in the time of Charlemagne, and the temple of Diana being converted into a nunnery.

An abridgment of the Latin version found its way into the *Gesta Romanorum*, as No. 153 of that collection. In the twelfth century the story was incorporated into the *Pantheon* of Godfrey of Viterbo, whence it was turned into English verse by Gower, in his *Confessio Amantis* (Pauli's edition 3. 284 ff.; Morley's abridgment, in *The Carisbrooke Library*, pp. 410-431). From Gower it was borrowed by Shakespeare, or whoever was the author of the drama which passes under his name, as the groundwork of *Pericles, Prince of Tyre*; the name Pericles being perhaps adapted from the Pyrocles of Sidney's *Arcadia*. The scenes of *Pericles* which may be compared with our extract are the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 5th of Act II., and the 3d of Act V.

The Old English *Apollonius* was edited by Thorpe, in 1834, from MS. S. 18. 201 of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and to this edition the student

is referred for the spelling and punctuation of the original. It is only a fragment, breaking off in the midst, and recommencing near the end of the tale, as we have indicated below.

Further information will be found in Rohde, *Der griechische Roman*, Leipzig, 1876; Teuffel, *History of Latin Literature*, § 489; Singer, *Apollonius von Tyrus*, Halle, 1895; Zupitza's article on the OE. version in *Herrig's Archiv* 97. 17-35; Warton, *History of English Poetry* 2. 302-303; and Riese's edition of the Latin, which is the standard (Leipzig, 1871), and costs but a trifle.

Besides the Tudor versions, there is an English translation in Thorpe's edition, and another — of course not adhering closely to our text — in Swan's rendering of the *Gesta Romanorum* (Bohn Library)].

The Shipwreck.

Apollonius¹ hīe bæd ealle grētan,² and on scip āstāh.³
 Mid-ðȳ-ðe hīe ongunnon ðā rōwan,⁴ and hīe forðweard
 wāeron on hiera weg, ðā wearð ðære sǣ smyltnes āwēnd
 fǣringa betweox twām tīdum,⁵ and wearð miclu hrēohnes
 āweaht, swā ðæt sēo sǣ cnysede ðā heofonlican tunglu,⁶
 and ðæt gewealc ðæra ȳða hwaðerode mid windum. Ðær-
 tō-ēacan cōmon ēastnorðerne windas, and se angrīslīca
 sūðwesterna wind him ongēan stōd,⁷ and ðæt scip eall

¹ Apollonius, King of Tyre, has fled from the cruelty and treachery of Antiochus, King of Antioch, on a richly freighted vessel, and taken refuge with the citizens of Tarsus. Finding the citizens in extremity, on account of a prevalent famine, he relieves their necessities by liberal gifts, whereupon they erect a statue of him in the market-place. But notwithstanding the gratitude of his beneficiaries, he finds it expedient to leave them, and embarks for

Cyrene, on the African coast. It is at this point that our selection begins.

² Observe the ellipsis, — *bade greet them all* — where the subject of the infinitive is to be supplied.

³ See 28. ⁴ See 199. b.

⁵ Lat. *intra duas horas diei*.

⁶ This seems to be a reminiscence of Virgil, *Æneid* I. 103.

⁷ Lat. (verse): *Hinc Notus, hinc Boreas, hinc horridus Africus instat*.

tōbærst on ðisse egeslican hrēohnesse. Apollonius¹ gefēran ealle forwurdon² tō dēaðe, and Apollonius āna³ becōm mid sunde tō Pentapolim ðāem Cyreniscan lande, and ðær ūpēode on ðāem strande. Ðā stōd hē nacod on ðāem strande, and
 5 behēold ðā sǣ, and cwæð:

“Ealā! ðū sǣ Neptune! manna berēafiend^{3a} and unscēð-
 ðigra beswicend^{3a}! ðu eart wælhrēowra ðonne Antiochus se
 cyning. For mīnum ðingum ðū gehēolde ðās wælhrēow-
 nesse, ðæt ic ðurh ðē gewurde⁴ wādla⁵ and ðearfa, and
 10 ðæt se wælhrēowa cyning mē ðȳ ieð⁶ fordōn meahte.
 Hwider mæg ic nū faran? Hwæs⁷ mæg ic biddan?
 Oððe hwā giefð⁸ ðāem uncūðan⁹ līfes fultum?”

Apollonius and the Fisherman.

Mid-ðȳ-ðe hē ðās ðing wæs sprecende tō him selfum,
 ðā fǣringa geseah hē sumne fiscere¹⁰ gān, tō ðāem hē
 15 beseah, and ðus sārlice cwæð¹¹: “Gemiltsa mē,¹² ðū ealda
 mann, sīe¹³ ðæt ðū sīe. Gemiltsa mē nacodum forlid-
 enum. Næs¹⁴ nā of earmlicum¹⁵ byrdum¹⁶ geboren; and,

¹ The Latin endings of proper nouns are not always a guide to the case (54). Here we have the genitive.

² See **forweorðan**.

³ See **79**. ^{3a} See **43. 6**.

⁴ MS. **gewurðe**.

⁵ See **150**.

⁶ MS. **eaðe**. See **178**.

⁷ See **156. b**.

⁸ Zupitza's emendation for MS. **gif**.

⁹ See **55** and **181**.

¹⁰ See **169**.

¹¹ In the original, he falls at the fisherman's feet, and bursts into tears. What reason may have led to the change?

¹² See **164. g**.

¹³ See **193. c**.

¹⁴ See **189**, note.

¹⁵ Lat. *humilibus*.

¹⁶ Plural, where we should expect the singular.

ðæs-ðe¹ ðū geare forwite hwæm ðū gemiltsie,² ic 'eom Apollonius, se Tyrisca³ ealdormann.⁴

Ðā, sōna swā se fiscere⁵ geseah ðæt se geonga mann æt his fōtum læg, hē mid mildheortnesse hine ūpāhof, and lǣdde hine mid him tō his hūse, and ðā ēstas⁶ him 5 beforan lēgde ðe hē him tō bēodanne hæfde. Ðā gīet hē wolde, be his mihte, mārān ārfæstnesse⁷ him gecyðan; tōslāt ðā his wæfels on twā, and sealde Apollonie ðone healfan dæl, ðus cweðende: "Nim ðæt ic ðē tō seðllanne hæbbe, and gā intō ðære ceastre. Wēn⁸ is⁸ ðæt ðū 10 gemēte⁹ sumne ðæt^{9a} ðē gemiltsie.¹⁰ Gif ðū ne finde¹¹ nænne ðe ðē gemiltsian wille, wēnd ðonne hider ongēan, and genyhtsumien¹² unc¹³ bām mīne lýtlan¹⁴ æhta; far ðē¹⁵ on fiscoð¹⁶ mid mē. Ðēah-hwæðre ic myngie ðē, gif ðū, ful-tumiendum¹⁷ Gode, becymst tō ðinum ærran weorðmynte, 15 ðæt ðū ne forgiete¹⁸ mīnne ðearfendlican gegierelan."

Ðā cwæð Apollonius: "Gif ic ðē¹⁹ ne geðence ðonne mē bēð bið,²⁰ ic wýsce²¹ ðæt ic eft forlidennesses gefare, and ðinne²² gelīcan²² eft ne gemēte."

¹ Here = *in order that*. See 157. 1.

² See 195.

³ Proper adjectives in *-isc*, following the Latin, are often used where we employ the genitive. Translate, *of Tyre*.

⁴ Lat. *princeps*. ⁵ See 143.

⁶ Lat. *epulas*.

⁷ MS. *fæstnesse*. Lat. *pietati*.

⁸ Lat. *forsitan*. ⁹ See 194. a.

^{9a} Neut. for masc. ! ¹⁰ See 195.

¹¹ See 196. d.

¹² See 193. a.

¹³ Note the rare dual (81).

¹⁴ See 55. ¹⁵ See 184. a.

¹⁶ See 172. 1.

¹⁷ See 167. **Gode** is supplied; the Latin has *deo favente*.

¹⁸ See 194. b. ¹⁹ Acc.

²⁰ Present or future? Could Mod. Eng. *is* be used to translate it?

²¹ See 30, and 194. b.

²² Mod. Eng. still has *thy like*. See 181.

The Incidents in the Gymnasium.

Æfter ðisum wordum hē ēode on ðone weg ðe him
 getæht¹ wæs, ðð-ðæt hē becōm tō ðære ceastre geate, and
 ðær inēode. Mid-ðȳ-ðe hē ðōhte hwone hē biddan meahte
 lifes fultumes,² ðā geseah hē ænne nacodne cnapan geond
 5 ðā stræte iernan. Sē wæs mid³ ȝle gesmierwed, and mid
 sciētan begyrd, and bær geongra⁴ manna⁴ plegan⁴ on handa,
 tō ðām bæðstēde⁵ belimpende.⁶ And cleopode⁷ micelre
 stefne,⁸ and cwæð: “Gehiere,⁹ gē ceasterwaran¹⁰! Gehiere,
 gē ȝlðeodige,¹¹ frige and ðeowe, æðele and unæðele! Se
 10 bæðstēde is open.”

Ðā-ðā Apollonius ðæt gehierde, hē hine unscrȳdde ðām¹²
 healfan sciccelse ðe hē on hæfde, and ēode intō ðām ðwēale.¹³
 And mid-ðȳ-ðe hē behēold hiera ānra¹⁴ gehwilcne on hiera
 weorce, hē sōhte his gelīcan,¹⁵ ac hē ne meahte hine ðær
 15 findan on ðām floce. Ðā fāringa cōm Arcestrates, ealre
 ðære ðeode¹⁶ cyning,¹⁷ mid micelre mēnige his manna,¹⁸ and
 inēode on ðæt bæð. Ðā āgan se cyning plegian wið¹⁹ his
 gefērum mid ðoðore.²⁰ And Apollonius hine²¹ gemęngde,²¹

¹ See 187.² MS. *fultum*. See 159. b.³ See 174.⁴ Lat. *lulus juvenales*.⁵ Lat. *gymnasium*.⁶ Modifies *plegan*.⁷ See 20.⁸ See 160. 1. This word is the Chaucerian *stevē*.⁹ See 95, note.¹⁰ This is a compound word, formed of a Latin and an English element. Which is Latin,

and what is its form in that language?

¹¹ Lat. *peregrini*. See 152.¹² See 162. ¹³ Lat. *lavacrum*.¹⁴ See 154. b.¹⁵ Lat. *parem*, Eng. *peer*.¹⁶ Lat. *regionis*.¹⁷ See 151.¹⁸ Lat. *famularum*. See 154. a.¹⁹ Why not *mid*?²⁰ This curious word is very rare in Old English.²¹ Lat. *miscuit se*. See 184. b.

swā-swā God wolde, on ðæs cyninges plegan, and, iern-
ende, ðone ðoðor gelæhte,¹ and, mid swiftre hrædnesse
geslægene,² ongēan gesende tō ðām plegiendan cyninge.
Eft hē āgēan āsende; hē hrædlice slōh, swā hē hine³
næfre feallan ne lēt. Se cyning ðā oncnēow ðæs geongan 5
snellesse,⁴ ðæt hē wiste⁵ ðæt hē næfde his gelīcan on
ðām plegan.⁶ Ðā cwæð hē tō his gefērum: “Gāð ēow
heonan; ðes cniht, ðæs-ðe mē ðyncð,⁷ is mīn gelīca.”

Ðā-ðā Apollonius gehierde ðæt se cyning hine hērede,
hē arn hrædlice, and genēalæcte tō ðām cyninge, and 10
mid gelæredre⁸ handa⁹ hē swang¹⁰ ðone top mid swā
micelre swiftnesse ðæt ðām cyninge wæs geðūht swilce
hē of ielde tō geoguðe gewend wære. And, æfter ðām,
on his cynesetle hē him¹¹ gecwēmlice¹² ðenode¹³; and,
ðā-ðā hē ūtode of ðām bæðe, hē¹⁴ hine¹⁵ lædde be ðære 15
handa, and him¹⁶ ðā siððan ðanan gewende, ðæs weges¹⁷
ðe hē ær cōm.

¹ See 114.

² Lat. *subtili velocitate percussam*. The OE. participle is a little awkward.

³ The ball.

⁴ Lat. *velocitatem*.

⁵ See 126. What is the latest English quotation that you can find for this word?

⁶ This clause is not very clear. The Latin has: *et quia sciebat se (i.e. Archistrates) in pilæ lusu neminem parem habere, ad suos ait, famuli, recedite; hic enim juvenis*, etc.

⁷ Lat. *ut suspicor*. See 157. 1

and 164. *l.* What Mod. Eng. word comes from *mē ðyncð*?

⁸ Lat. *docta*.

⁹ See 51. 3.

¹⁰ Here the English departs from the Latin: *ceroma fricavit eum tanta subtilitate, ut de sene juvenem redderet*. **Top** would seem to signify the same as **ðoðor**.

¹¹ See 164. *e.*

¹² Lat. *gratissime*.

¹³ See 28.

¹⁴ Apollonius.

¹⁵ Archistrates.

¹⁶ See 184. *a.*

¹⁷ See 157.

Ðā cwæð se cyning tō his mannum,¹ siððan Apollonius āgān² wæs: “Ic swērie ðurh ðā gemāenan hāle³ ðæt ic mē nāfre bēt ne baðode ðonne ic dyde⁴ tō-dæg, nāt ic ðurh⁵ hwilces geonges mannes ðēnunge.⁶ Ðā beseah hē
 5 hine tō ānum his manna, and cwæð: “Gā, and gewite hwæt⁷ se geonga mann sīe, ðe mē tō-dæg swā wel gehīersumode.”

Se mann ðā ēode æfter Apollonio. Mid-ðy-ðe hē geseah ðæt hē⁸ wæs mid horgum⁹ sciccelse bewæfed, ðā wende
 10 hē ongēan tō ðāem cyninge, and cwæð: “Se geonga mann ðe¹⁰ ðū æfter āscodest is forliden¹¹ mann.¹¹” Ðā cwæð se cyning: “Ðurh¹² hwæt¹² wāst¹³ ðū ðæt?” Se mann him andswarode, and cwæð: “Ðeah hē hit self forswige,¹⁴ his gegierela hine gesweotolað.” Ðā cwæð se cyning: “Gā
 15 hrædlice, and sege him ðæt¹⁵ ‘se cyning bitt ðe ðæt ðū cume¹⁶ tō his gereorde.’”

Apollonius at the Feast.

Ðā Apollonius ðæt gehīerde, hē ðāem gehīersumode, and ēode forð mid ðāem męnn, oð-ðæt hē becōm tō ðæs cyninges

¹ Lat. *amicos*.

² How is the sense of Mod. Eng. *ago* related to that of this word?

³ This phrase shows Christian influence.

⁴ Note this use of *dōn* to replace a verb of specific meaning.

⁵ Governs *ðēnunge*.

⁶ See 28.

⁷ How does this, as here used, differ in meaning from *hwā*?

⁸ Apollonius. ⁹ Lat. *sordido*.

¹⁰ Governed by *æfter*. See 87. c and 201. 1.

¹¹ Lat. *naufragus*.

¹² Lat. *unde*.

¹³ See 126.

¹⁴ See 196. e.

¹⁵ Confusion of two constructions, the direct and the indirect.

¹⁶ Lat. *ut venias*. Translate by the infinitive, as often in such cases.

healle.¹ Ðā ēode se mann in beforan tō ðām cyninge, and cwæð: "Se forliden² mann is cumen, ðe ðū æfter sēndest³; ac hē ne mæg for sceame ingān būtan scrūde." Ðā hēt se cyning hine sōna gescrȳdan mid weorðfullum⁴ scrūde, and hēt hine ingān tō ðām gereorde.

Ðā ēode Apollonius in, and gesæt, ðær him getæht⁵ wæs, ongēan ðone cyning. Ðā⁶ wearð ðā sēo ðēnung⁷ ingeboren, and, æfter ðām, cynelic⁸ gebēorscipe.⁸ And Apollonius nān ðing ne æt, ðeah-ðe ealle oðre mēnn æton and blīðe wæron. Ac hē behēold ðæt gold, and ðæt 10 seolfor, and ðā dēorwurðan⁹ rēaf, and ðā bēoðas, and ðā cynelican ðēnunga.¹⁰ Ðā-ðā hē ðis eall mid sārnesse¹¹ behēold, ðā sæt sum eald and sum¹² æfestig ealdormann be ðām cyninge. Mid-ðȳ-ðe hē geseah ðæt Apollonius swā sārlice sæt, and eall ðing behēold, and nān ðing ne 15 æt, ðā cwæð hē tō ðām cyninge: "Ðū¹³ gōda cyning, efne, ðes mann ðe¹⁴ ðū swā wel wið gedēst, hē is swīðe æfestfull for ðinum gōde." Ðā cwæð se cyning: "Ðē¹⁵ misðyncð; sōðlice ðes geonga mann ne æfestað on nānum ðingum ðe hē hēr gesieħð, ac hē cȳð¹⁶ ðæt hæfð¹⁷ fela 20

¹ Lat. *ad regem*.

² See 55.

³ Is this present or preterit (113)?

⁴ Lat. *dignis*.

⁵ See 187.

⁶ It has been suggested that the account of this feast may have been imitated from that in *Odys.* 4. 71 ff.

⁷ Lat. *gustatio*, a sort of first course.

⁸ Lat. *cena regalis*.

⁹ See 146.

¹⁰ Lat. *ministeria*.

¹¹ Lat. *dolore*.

¹² Note the curious repetition of *sum*. The Latin has *senex invidus*.

¹³ Lat. *bone rex*. See 152.

¹⁴ Governed by *wið*.

¹⁵ See 164. *l*.

¹⁶ Lat. *testatur*.

¹⁷ See 189, note.

forloren.¹” Ða beseah Arcestrates se cyning blīðum² andwlitan² tō Apollonio, and cwæð: “Ðū geonga mann, bēo³ blīðe³ mid ūs, and gehyht⁴ on God, ðæt ðū mōte self tō ðæm sēlran becuman.”

Entry of the Princess.

5 Mid-ðȳ-ðe se cyning ðās word gecwæð, ðā fāringa ðær ēode in ðæs cyninges geong dohtor,⁵ and cyste hiere fæder and ðā ymsittendan.⁶ Ðā⁷ hēo becōm tō Apollonio, ðā gewende hēo ongēan tō hiere fæder, and cwæð: “Ðū gōða cyning, and mīn se⁸ lēofesta⁹ fæder, hwæt¹⁰
 10 is ðes geonga mann, ðe ongēan ðē on swā weorðlicum setle sitt, mid sārlicum¹¹ andwlitan; nāt¹² ic hwæt hē besorgað.¹³” Ðā cwæð se cyning: “Lēofe¹⁴ dohtor, ðes geonga mann is forliden; and hē gecwēmdede mē manna bēst¹⁵ on ðæm plegan. For-ðām ic hine gelaðode tō
 15 ðisum ūrum gebēorscipe. Nāt ic hwæt hē is, nē hwanan hē is; ac gif ðū wille witan hwæt hē sīe, āsca hine, for-ðām ðē¹⁶ gedafenað¹⁷ ðæt ðū wite.¹⁸”

Ðā ēode ðæt mæden tō Apollonio, and mid forwand-iendre¹⁹ spræce cwæð: “Ðeah ðū stille²⁰ sīe and unrōt,

¹ See **forlēosan**, and **37**.

² Lat. *hilari vultu*. See **174**.

³ Lat. *epulare*.

⁴ Lat. *spera*. See **197**.

⁵ What state and period of civilization is indicated by the presence of the girl at the banquet?

⁶ See **181**.

⁷ See **202. d**.

⁸ Redundant, according to our conceptions. See **152**.

⁹ Lat. *optime*.

¹⁰ Lat. *quis*.

¹¹ Lat. *flebili*.

¹² See **126**.

¹³ Lat. *dolet*.

¹⁴ See **55**. Lat. *dulcis*.

¹⁵ See **66** and **154. d**. Nom., belonging to **hē**.

¹⁶ See **164. k**.

¹⁷ Lat. *decet*.

¹⁸ See **194. a**.

¹⁹ Lat. *verecundo*.

²⁰ See **59**.

ðeah¹ ic ðīne æðelborennesse² on ðē gesēo. Nū³ ðonne,³ gif ðē⁴ tō hefig ne ðynce,⁵ sege mē ðinne naman, and ðīn gelimp⁶ āreçe mē.” Ðā cwæð Apollonius: “Gif ðū for nīede⁷ āscast æfter mīnum naman, ic seçege ðē, Ic hine forlēas on sǣ. Gif ðū wilt mīne æðelborennesse witan, 5 wite ðū ðæt ic hīe forlēt on Tharsum.⁸” Ðæt mǣden cwæð: “Sege mē gewislicor,⁹ ðæt ic hit mæge understandan.” Apollonius ðā sōðlice hiere āreahte¹⁰ eall¹¹ his gelimp, and æt ðære spræce¹² ende him¹³ fēollon tēaras of ðām ēagum. 10

Mid-ðȳ-ðe se cyning ðæt geseah, hē bewende hine ðā tō ðære dehter,¹⁴ and cwæð: “Lēofe dohtor, ðū gesyn-godest, mid-ðȳ-ðe¹⁵ ðū woldest witan his naman and his gelimp. Ðū hæfst nū geednīwod his eald sār,¹⁶ ac ic bidde ðē ðæt ðū giefe him swā-hwæt-swā ðū wille. 15 Ðā-ðā ðæt mǣden gehierde ðæt hiere wæs āliefed fram hiere fæder¹⁷ ðæt¹⁸ hēo ær hiere¹⁹ self¹⁹ gedōn wolde, ðā cwæð hēo tō Apollonio: “Apolloni, sōðlice ðū eart ūre²⁰;

¹ Second correlative = Lat. *tamen*. Translate *yet*, or omit (201. e).

² Lat. *nobilitatem*.

³ Are these notes of time? The Latin has nothing similar.

⁴ See 164. l.

⁵ See 196. d.

⁶ Lat. *casus tuos*. Observe the general resemblance to the story of Dido, in the *Æneid*.

⁷ MS. *neode*. Lat. *necessitatis*.

⁸ See p. 165, n. 1.

⁹ Lat. *apertius*.

¹⁰ See 114.

¹¹ Plural.

¹² See 153. i.

¹³ See 161. 2.

¹⁴ See 52. 2.

¹⁵ Lat. *dum*.

¹⁶ Lat. *veteres ei renovasti dolores*, a reminiscence of the Virgilian (*Æn.* II. 3) *jubes renovare dolorem*.

¹⁷ See 43. 8.

¹⁸ = *what*.

¹⁹ Lat. *ipsa*.

²⁰ Note this predicate use of *ūre*, = Lat. *noster es* (cf. *Æn.* II. 149).

forlæ̃t ðīne murenunge¹; and, nū² ic mīnes fæder³ lēafe
 hæbbe, ic gedō⁴ ðē weligne.” Apollonius hiere ðæs ðan-
 code,⁵ and se cyning blissode on his dohtor welwillend-
 nesse,⁶ and hiere tō cwæð: “Lēofe dohtor, hāt fēccēan
 5 ðīne hearpan,⁷ and gecīeg ðē tō ðīnum frīend,⁸ and āfiersa
 fram ðām geongan his sārnesse.”

A Lesson in Music.

Ðā ēode hēo ūt,⁹ and hēt fēccēan hiere hearpan. And
 sōna swā hēo hearpian ongann, hēo mid wynsumum sange
 gemengde ðære hearpan swēg. Ðā ongunnon ealle ðā
 10 mēnn hīe hērian on hiere swēgcræfte; and Apollonius
 āna¹⁰ swīgode. Ðā cwæð se cyning: “Apolloni, nū ðū
 dēst¹¹ yfele, for-ðām-ðe ealle mēnn hēriað mīne dohtor
 on hiere swēgcræfte,¹² and ðū āna hīe, swīgende,^{12a} tælst.¹³”
 Apollonius cwæð: “Ēalā, ðū gōda cyning, gif ðū mē
 15 gelīefst,¹⁴ ic sēcge ðæt ic ongiete ðæt sōðlice ðīn dohtor
 gefēoll¹⁵ on swēgcræft, ac hēo næfð hine nā wel geleornod;
 ac hāt mē¹⁶ nū sēllan ðā hearpan, ðonne wāst¹⁷ ðū nū ðæt
 ðū gīet nāst.¹⁷” Arcestrates se cyning cwæð: “Apolloni,

¹ Lat. *mærorum*.

² *Now, or since?*

³ See 43. 8.

⁴ Future sense, *will make*. See

173.

⁵ See 159. a.

⁶ Lat. *benignitate*.

⁷ Lat. *lyram*.

⁸ This clause is not altogether clear. It seems to stand for the Lat. *exhilara convivium*, though

of course it does not translate these words.

⁹ Not in the Latin.

¹⁰ See 79.

¹¹ See 140.

¹² Lat. *arte musica*.

^{12a} For *swīgende*.

¹³ Lat. *vituperas*.

¹⁴ See 196. d.

¹⁵ Lat. *incidit*. Translate, *has chanced*.

¹⁶ See 164. a.

¹⁷ See 126.

ic oncnāwe sōðlice ðæt ðū eart¹ on eallum ðingum wel gelæred."

Ðā hēt se cyning sællan Apollonie ðā hearpan. Apollonius ðā ūtēode, and hine scrȳdde, and sætte ænne cynehelm upon his hēafod, and nōm ðā hearpan on his hand, and inēode, and swā stōd ðæt se cyning and ealle ðā ymb-sittendan wēndon ðæt hē nāre Apollonius, ac ðæt hē wāre Apollines,² ðāra hāðenra god. Ðā wearð stilnes and swīge³ geworden innan ðære healle. And Apollonius his hearpenægl genōm, and hē ðā hearpestrēngas mid cræfte āstyrian ongan, and ðære hearpan swēg mid wynsumum sange gemēngde.⁴ And se cyning self, and ealle ðe ðær andwearde wāron, micelre stefne cleopodon and hine hēredon. Æfter ðisum forlēt⁵ Apollonius ðā hearpan, and⁶ plegode, and fela fægerra ðinga⁷ ðær forðtēah,⁸ ðe ðæm folce ungecnāwen wæs and ungewunelic. And him⁹ eallum ðearle līcode ælc ðāra ðinga⁷ ðe hē forðtēah.

Sōðlice, mid-ðȳ-ðe ðæs cyninges dohtor geseah ðæt Apollonius on eallum gōdum cræftum swā wel wæs getogen,¹⁰ ðā gefēoll hiere mōd on his lufe. Ðā, æfter ðæs bēorscipes geendunge, cwæð ðæt mæden tō ðæm cyninge: "Lēofa¹¹

¹ See 194, note. ² Apollo.

³ We are reminded of *Æn.* II. 1, *Conticuere omnes.*

⁴ To this sentence there corresponds in the Latin:—

arripuit plectrum, animumque accommodat arti;
cum chordis miscetur vox cantu modulata.

⁵ Lat. *deponens.*

⁶ The rest of this sentence paraphrases: *induit statum comicum et inauditas actiones expressit, deinde tragicum.*

⁷ See 154. a, b.

⁸ Lat. *expressit.*

⁹ See 164. k.

¹⁰ See *getēon*. What relation has *getogen* to Mod. Eng. *wanton*?

¹¹ See 55.

fæder, ðū līfdest mē, lȳtle¹ ær,¹ ðæt² ic² mōste² giefan Apollonio swā-hwæt-swā ic wolde of ðinum goldhorde." Arcestrates se cyning cwæð tō hierē: "Gief him swā-hwæt-swā ðū wille.³" Hēo ðā swīðe blīðe ūtēode,⁴ and
 5 cwæð: "Lārēow⁵ Apolloni, ic giefe ðē, be mīnes fæder lēafe, twā hund punda⁶ goldes,⁷ and fēower hund punda⁶ gewihtes⁸ seolfres,⁷ and ðone mæstan dæl dēorwurðes⁹ rēafes, and twēntig ðēowa¹⁰ manna.¹⁰" And hēo ðā ðus cwæð tō ðām ðēowum mannum: "Berað ðās ðing mid
 10 ēow, ðe ic behēt Apollonio mīnum lārēowe, and lēcgeað innan būre¹¹ beforan mīnum frēondum." Ðis wearð ðā ðus gedōn, æfter ðære cwēne hāse¹²; and ealle ðā mēnn hierē giefan hēredon ðe¹³ hīe gesāwon. Ðā sōðlice geendode se gebēorscipe, and ðā mēnn ealle ārison,¹⁴ and
 15 grēttan ðone cyning and ðā cwēne, and bādon hīe gesunde bēon,¹⁵ and hām gewendon. Ēac swilce Apollonius cwæð: "Ðū gōda cyning, and earmra¹⁶ gemiltsiend, and ðū cwēn, lāre¹⁶ lufiend, bēon gē gesunde.¹⁷" Hē beseah ēac tō ðām ðēowum mannum, ðe ðæt mæden him
 20 forgiefen hæfde,¹⁸ and him cwæð tō: "Nimað ðās ðing mid

¹ Lat. *paulo ante*. See 178.

² Translate by the infinitive sign, *to*. The OE. follows the Latin.

³ See 197.

⁴ Not in Latin.

⁵ Lat. *magister*.

⁶ See 154. *c*.

⁷ See 153. *f*.

⁸ See 174.

⁹ MS. *deorwurðan*.

¹⁰ Lat. *servos*.

¹¹ Lat. *triclinio*.

¹² See the derivation of Mod. Eng. *behest*.

¹³ Refers to *mēnn*.

¹⁴ So in *Bēowulf* (653-655): "Werod eall ārās; grētte þā . . . guma oðerne, . . . and him hæl ābēad."

¹⁵ Lat. *vale dicentes*.

¹⁶ See 153. *d*.

¹⁷ Lat. *valete*.

¹⁸ See 188.

ēow, ðe mē sēo cwēn forgeaf, and gān¹ wē sēcean ūre giesthūs, ðæt wē mægen ūs² geręstan.”

Apollonius as Teacher.

Ðā ādrēd ðæt mæden ðæt hēo nāfre eft Apollonium ne gesāwe swā³ hraðe swā hēo wolde; and ēode ðā tō hiere fæder, and cwæð: “Ðū gōda cyning, līcað ðē wel ðæt Apollonius, ðe ðurh ūs tō-dæg gegōdod⁴ is, ðus heonan fare,⁵ and cumen yfele męnn and berēafien hine?” Se cyning cwæð: “Wel ðū cwæde. Hāt hine⁶ findan hwær hē hine mæge weorðlicost⁷ geręstan.” Ðā dyde ðæt mæden swā hiere beboden⁸ wæs; and Apollonius onfēng ðære wununge ðe him betæht wæs, and ðær inēode, Gode⁹ ðanciende, ðe him ne forwiernde¹⁰ cynelices weorðscipes and frōfre. Ac ðæt mæden hæfde unstillē¹¹ niht, mid ðære lufe onæled ðæra worda¹² and sanga ðe hēo gehierde æt Apollonie. And nā lęng¹³ hēo ne gebād ðonne hit dæg wæs, ac ēode sōna swā hit lēoht wæs, and gesæt beforan hiere fæder¹⁴ będde. Ðā cwæð se cyning: “Lēofe dohtor, for hwȳ¹⁵ eart¹⁶ ðū ðus ærwacol?” Ðæt mæden cwæð: “Mē āweahton ðā gecneordnessa¹⁷ ðe ic giestran-dæg¹⁸ gehierde. Nū bidde ic

¹ See 193. a.

² See 184. b.

³ Swā . . . wolde not in Latin.

⁴ Lat. *ditatus*.

⁵ See 194. a.

⁶ MS. *him*.

⁷ See 76.

⁸ See 187.

⁹ See 164. m.

¹⁰ See 159. a.

¹¹ Lat. *inquietam*.

¹² Dependent on *lufe*.

¹³ See 77. ¹⁴ See 43. 8.

¹⁵ See 175. ¹⁶ See 138.

¹⁷ Lat. *studia*. Translate, *accomplishments*.

¹⁸ Lat. *hesterna*. Is *giestran* related to the Latin word?

ðē, for-ðām,¹ ðæt ðū befæste² mē ūrum cuman,³ Apollonie, tō⁴ lāre.⁴” Ðā wearð se cyning ðearle geblissod, and hēt fēccean Apollonium, and him tō cwæð: “Mīn dohtor giernð ðæt hēo mōte leornian æt ðē ðā gesæligan
 5 lāre ðe ðū canst⁵; and, gif ðu wilt ðisum ðingum⁶ gehiersum bēon, ic swērie ðē, ðurh mīnes rīces mægenu,⁷ ðæt swā-hwæt-swā ðū on sǣ forlure, ic ðē ðæt on lande gestaðelie.⁸” Ðā-ðā Apollonius ðæt gehierde, hē onfēng ðæm⁹ mæden tō lāre, and hiere tæhte swā wel swā hē
 10 self geleornode.¹⁰

The Three Suitors.

Hit gelamp ðā æfter ðisum, binnan fēawum tidum,¹¹ ðæt Arcestrates se cyning hēold Apollonius hand on handa; and ēodon swā ūt on ðære ceastre stræte. Ðā, æt nīehstan, cōmon ðær gān¹² ongēan hīe ðrīe gelārede¹³
 15 weras and æðelborene, ðā lange ær gierndon¹⁴ ðæs cyninges dohtor. Hīe ðā ealle ðrīe tōgædere ānre stefne¹⁵ grētton ðone cyning. Ðā smercode¹⁶ se cyning, and him tō beseah,

¹ Lat. *itaque*.

² Lat. *tradas*.

³ Lat. *hospiti*.

⁴ Lat. *studiorum percipiend-
orum gratia*.

⁵ Cf. Chaucer, *Miller's Tale* 18: “I *can* a noble tale.” This sense occurs as late as the middle of the 17th century; Lovelace has: “Yet *can* I music too.” So Jonson, *Magnetic Lady* 1. 1: “She *could* the Bible in the holy tongue.”

⁶ Lat. *desiderio nata meæ*. See 165.

⁷ Lat. *vires*.

⁸ Lat. *restituum*.

⁹ See 164. j.

¹⁰ Here follows, in the Latin, an account of how the girl feigned illness, on account of her love for Apollonius.

¹¹ Lat. *post paucos dies*.

¹² See 199. 1.

¹³ Lat. *scholastici*.

¹⁴ Lat. *in matrimonium petierunt*. Pluperfect (188).

¹⁵ See 160. 1.

¹⁶ Lat. *subridens*.

and ðus cwæð: "Hwæt is ðæt, ðæt gē mē ānre stefne grēttan?" Ðā andswarode hiera ān, and cwæð: "Wē bādon gefyrn ðīnre dohtor; and ðū ūs oft hrædlice mid¹ ȝlcunge¹ geswēncstest.¹ For-ðām wē cōmon hider tō-dæg ðus tōgædere. Wē sindon ðīne ceastergewaran, of æðelum 5 gebyrdum² geborene; nū bidde wē ðē ðæt ðū gecēose ðē³ æenne of ūs ðrīm, hwilcne ðū wille ðē³ tō⁴ āðume habban." Ðā cwæð se cyning: "Nabbe gē nā gōdne⁵ tīman ārēdod.⁶ Mīn dohtor is nū swīðe bisig ymb hiere leornunga.⁷ Ac, ðȳ-læs-ðe⁸ ic ēow ā leng slæce,⁹ āwritað ēowre naman on 10 gewrite, and hiere morgengiefe¹⁰; ðonne āsēnde ic ðā gewritu mīnre dehter, ðæt hēo self gecēose hwilcne ēower¹¹ hēo wille." Ðā dydon ðā cnihtas swā; and se cyning nōm¹² ðā gewritu, and geinseglode hīe mid his hringe, and sealde Apollonio, ðus cweðende: "Nim nū, 15 lārēow Apolloni, swā hit ðē ne mislīcie,¹³ and bring ðīnum lāringmædene.¹⁴" Ðā nōm Apollonius ðā gewritu, and ēode tō ðære cynelican healle.¹⁵

¹ Lat. *differendo crucias*.

² Lat. *natalibus*.

³ See 161.

⁴ Cf. Mod. Eng. 'take to wife.'

⁵ Lat. *apto*.

⁶ MS. *aredodne*.

⁷ Lat. *studiorum*.

⁸ Lat. *ne*.

⁹ Lat. *videar . . . differre*.

¹⁰ Lat. *dotis quantitatem*. The present given on the morning

after marriage, according to Teutonic usage. Cf. Mod. Ger. *Morgengabe*.

¹¹ MS. *eowerne*.

¹² See 105.

¹³ Lat. *sine contumelia tua*; an apology for sending Apollonius on an errand. See 196. c.

¹⁴ Lat. *discipulæ*.

¹⁵ Lat. *domum*. The Latin adds *introivit cubiculum*.

The Princess Chooses.

Mid-ðām-ðe ðæt mæden geseah Apollonium, ðā cwæð
 hēo: “Lārēow, hwȳ gāest ðū āna¹?” Apollonius cwæð:
 “Hlāfdige²—næs gīet yfel wīf³—nim ðās gewritu, ðe
 ðīn fæder ðē sēnde,⁴ and rād.” Ðæt mæden nōm, and
 5 rādde ðāra ðrēora cnihta naman; ac hēo ne funde⁵ nā
 ðone naman ðæron ðe hēo wolde. Ðā hēo ðā gewritu
 oferrād hæfde, ðā beseah hēo tō Apollonio, and cwæð:
 “Lārēow, ne ofðyncð⁶ hit ðē gif ic ðus wer gecēose?”
 Apollonius cwæð: “Nā; ac ic blissie swīðor⁷ ðæt ðū
 10 meaht, ðurh ðā lāre ðe ðū æt mē underfēnge, ðē self on
 gewrite gecȳðan hwilene hiera ðū wille.⁸ Mīn willa is
 ðæt ðū ðē wer gecēose ðær ðū self wille.⁹” Ðæt mæden
 cwæð: “Ēalā lārēow, gif ðū mē lufodest, ðū hit besorg-
 odest.¹⁰” Æfter ðisum wordum hēo mid mōdes¹¹ ānrād-
 15 nesse¹¹ āwrāt oðer gewrit, and ðæt geinseglode, and
 sealde Apollonio. Apollonius hit ðā ūt bær on ðā
 strāte,¹² and sealde ðām cyninge. Ðæt gewrit wæs ðus
 gewriten: “Ðū gōða cyning, and mīn se lēofesta fæder,

¹ The OE. is not clear. The Latin has: *Quid est quod singularis cubiculum introisti?*

² Lat. *domina*. How is **hlāfdige** related in meaning to **hlāford**?

³ Not clear either in the Latin or the English. Some MSS. have, *nondum mulier et mala*; one has, *non unquam mulier fuit mala*.

⁴ Translate, *has sent*. See 188.

⁵ See 104. ⁶ Lat. *dolet*.

⁷ Translate, *rather*. See 76.

⁸ She has evidently learned from him how to write, according to the English. The Latin has: *Immo gratulor quod habundantia studiorum percepta me volente nubis*.

⁹ See 196. c.

¹⁰ Lat. *doleres*. Indicative, where the optative might be expected.

¹¹ Lat. *amoris audacia*.

¹² Lat. *forum*, as above, p. 178, l. 13.

nū ðīn mildheortnes mē lēafe sealde ðæt ic self mōste
cēosan hwilcne wer ic wolde, ic sēcge ðē tō sōðum, ðone
forlidenan mann ic wille; and gif ðū wundrie ðæt swā
sceamfæst¹ fāmne¹ swā unforwandiendlice² ðās word
āwrāt, ðonne wite³ ðū ðæt ic hæbbe ðurh weax āboden,⁴ 5
ðe nāne sceame ne can,⁵ ðæt ic self ðē for sceame sēcgean
ne meahte.”

Ðā-ðā se cyning hæfde ðæt gewrit oferræd,⁶ ðā nyste
hē hwilcne forlidenne hēo nēmdē. Beseah ðā tō ðām
ðrīm cnihtum, and cwæð: “Hwile ēower is forliden?” 10
Ðā cwæð hiera ān, se hātte Ardalius: “Ic eom for-
liden.”⁷ Se oðer him andwyrde, and cwæð: “Swiga ðū.
Ādl ðē fornime,⁸ ðæt ðū ne bēo⁹ hāl nē gesund. Mid
mē ðū bōccræft¹⁰ leornodest, and ðū nāfre būtan ðære
ceastre geate fram mē ne cōme. Hwær gefōre¹¹ ðū for- 15
lidennessē?” Mid-ðy-ðe se cyning ne meahte findan
hwilc hiera forliden wære,¹² hē beseah tō Apollonio, and
cwæð: “Nim ðū, Apolloni, ðis gewrit, and ræd hit;
ēaðe mæg geweorðan ðæt ðū wite ðæt ic nāt, ðū ðe
ðær andweard wære.”¹³ Ðā nōm Apollonius ðæt gewrit, 20
and rædde. And sōna swā hē ongeat ðæt hē gelufod

¹ Lat. *pubica virgo*.

² Lat. *impudenter*; one MS. *impru-
denter*.

³ See 198.

⁴ Lat. *mandavi*.

⁵ See above, p. 178, n. 5.

⁶ Lat. *perlectis*.

⁷ On *for-* see Coleridge, *Omni-
ana* (Bohn ed., p. 414): “It is
grievous to think how much less

careful the English have been to
preserve than to acquire. Why
have we lost, or all but lost, the
ver or *for* as a prefix, — *fordone*,
forwearied, etc.; and the *zer* or
to, — *zerreissen*, to rend, etc.?”

⁸ See 193. *a*.

⁹ See 196. *g*.

¹⁰ Lat. *litteras*.

¹¹ See 107.

¹² See 194. *b*.

¹³ Is this optative?

wæs fram ðæm mædene, his¹ andwlita¹ eall¹ ārēadode.¹
 Ðā se cyning ðæt geseah, ðā nōm hē Apollonies hand,
 and hine² hwōn fram ðæm cnihtum gewende, and cwæð:
 “Wāst³ ðū ðone forlidenan mann?” Apollonius cwæð:
 5 “Ðū gōda cyning, gif ðīn willa bið, ic hine wāt.” Ðā
 geseah se cyning ðæt Apollonius mid rōsan⁴ rude⁴ wæs
 eall oferbræded.⁵ Ðā ongeat hē ðone cwide, and ðus
 cwæð tō him: “Blissa, blissa, Apolloni, for-ðām-ðe mīn
 dohtor gewilnað ðæs⁶ ðe mīn willa is. Ne mæg sōðlice
 10 on ðyllicum ðingum⁷ nān⁸ ðing geweorðan būtan Godes⁹
 willan.” Arcestrates beseah tō ðæm ðrīm cnihtum, and
 cwæð: “Sōð¹⁰ is¹⁰ ðæt ic ēow ær sæde, ðæt gē ne cōmon
 on gedafenlicre¹¹ tīde mīnre dohtor tō biddanne, ac
 ðonne¹² hēo mæg hīe fram hiere lāre geæmetgian, ðonne
 15 sēnde ic ēow word.¹³”

Ðā gewendon hīe hām mid ðisse andsware, and Arcestrates
 se cyning hēold forð on Apollonius hand, and hine
 lædde hām mid him, nā swilce hē cuma wære,¹⁴ ac swilce
 hē his āðum wære. Ðā, æt nīehstan, forlēt se cyning
 20 Apollonius hand, and ēode āna intō ðæm būre ðær his
 dohtor inne wæs, and ðus cwæð: “Lēofe dohtor, hwone
 hæfst ðū ðē gecoren tō gemæccēan¹⁵?” Ðæt mæden¹⁶
 ðā fēoll tō hiere fæder fōtum, and cwæð: “Ðū ārfæsta¹⁷

¹ Lat. *erubuit*.

² See 184. b.

³ See 126. Lat. *invenisti*.

⁴ Lat. *roseo rubore*.

⁵ Lat. *perfusam*.

⁶ See 156. a.

⁷ Lat. *hujusmodi negotio*.

⁸ See 183.

⁹ A Christian trait.

¹⁰ Lat. *certe*.

¹¹ Lat. *apto*. See p. 179, l. 8.

¹² See 202. d.

¹³ Note the English idiom. The Latin has, *mittam ad vos*.

¹⁴ See 196. c. ¹⁵ Lat. *conjugem*.

¹⁶ See 28. ¹⁷ Lat. *piissime*.

fæder, gehīer ðīnre dohtor willan.¹ Ic lufie ðone for-
 lidenan mann, ðe wæs ðurh ungelimp² beswicen²; ac,
 ðȳ-læs-ðe³ ðē twēonie⁴ ðære spræce, Apollonium ic wille,
 mīnne lārēow; and gif ðū mē him ne selest, ðū forlætst
 ðīne dohtor.” Se cyning ðā sōðlice ne meahte āræfnian⁵ 5
 his dohtor tēaras, ac ārærde hīe ūp, and hiere tō cwæð:
 “Lēofe dohtor, ne ondræd ðū ðē æniges⁶. ðinges.⁶ Ðū
 hæfst gecoren ðone wer ðe mē wel līcað.” Eode ðā ūt,
 and beseah tō Apollonio, and cwæð: “Lārēow Apolloni,
 ic smēade mīnre dohtor mōdes willan; ðā āreahte hēo 10
 mid wōpe⁷ betweox oðre spræce, ðās ðing ðus cweðende:
 ‘Ðū geswōre Apollonio, gif hē wolde gehīersumian mīnum
 willan on lāre, ðæt ðū woldest him geinnian⁸ swā-hwæt-
 swā sēo sē him ætbræd.⁹ Nū, for-ðām-ðe hē gehīersum
 wæs ðīnre hāse and mīnum willan, ic fōr æfter him 15
 [mid willan and mid lāre¹⁰].’”

¹ Lat. *desiderium*.

² Lat. *fortuna deceptum*.

³ OE. *ðȳ-læs-ðe* gives Mod. Eng. *lest*. What phonological rule determines the final *t*?

⁴ See 159. *b* and 196. *f*.

⁵ Lat. *sustinens*.

⁶ Lat. *de aliqua re*.

⁷ Lat. *lacrimis* (cf. *Æn.* III. 348).

⁸ Lat. *dares*. ⁹ Lat. *abstulit*.

¹⁰ The OE. MS. breaks off at **him**. I have supplied what follows according to the Latin, *voluntate et doctrina*. The story thus continues in the Latin: After the marriage, Apollonius

hears of the death of King Antiochus, and, with his wife, sets sail for Antioch. There follow the events related in the Shakespearean *Pericles*, in the main as in Acts III., IV., and V., though with not a few differences. The infant daughter has grown up, and, after a variety of experiences, has been restored to Apollonius. His queen is priestess of Diana of Ephesus, and thither he proceeds, being warned by an angel in a dream to make that, instead of Tarsus, his next goal. At this point the OE. fragment recommences.

Apollonius relates his Adventures.

Dā wæs hiere¹ gecyðed, ðe ðær ealdor² wæs, ðæt ðær wære sum cyning, mid his āðume and mid his dehter, mid miclum giefum. Mid-ðām-ðe hēo ðæt gehierde, hēo hīe selfe mid cynelicum rēafe gefrætwode and mid pur-
 5 prān gescrȳdde, and hiere hēafod mid golde and mid gimum geglengde, and, mid miclum fæmnena hēape ymbtrymmed,³ cōm tōgēanes ðām cyninge. Hēo wæs sōðlice ðearle wlitig; and, for ðære miclan lufe ðære clānnesse,⁴ hīe sēdon ealle ðæt ðær nāre nān Dianan
 10 swā gecwēme⁵ swā hēo.

Mid-ðām-ðe Apollonius ðæt geseah, hē mid his āðume and mid his dehter tō hiere urnon,⁶ and fēollon ealle tō hiere fōtum, and wēndon⁷ ðæt hēo Diana wære, sēo gyden, for hiere miclan beorhtnesse and wlite. Ðæt hālig⁸ ærn⁸
 15 wearð ðā geopenod, and ðā lāc⁹ wæron ingebrohte, and Apollonius ongan¹⁰ ðā spreca and cweðan: "Ic fram

¹ The wife of Apollonius.

² Chief, *i.e.* chief priestess.

³ Lat. *virginum constipata cattervis*. An epic trait. Thus in the *Æneid* (4. 136), Dido goes forth, *magna stipante caterva*. Thus in the *Odyssey* (16. 413), Penelope "went on her way to the hall, *with the women her hand-maids*." And thus in *Beowulf* (923-925), Hrothgar

tryddode tīrfæst getrume micle
 cystum gecyðed, and his cwēn mid
 him
 medostīg gemæt mægðā hōse.

⁴ Lat. *castitatis*.

⁵ Lat. *gratam*. See 165.

⁶ See 104. Does this verb agree with its subject?

⁷ Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 243 ff.: —

I not whether sche be womman or
 goddesse;
 But Venus is it, sothly as I gesse.

⁸ Lat. *sacrario*. *Ærn* forms part of the Mod. Eng. *barn*; what does the other element of this word stand for?

⁹ Lat. *muneribus*.

¹⁰ Lat. *cæpit*.

cildhāde wæs Apollonius genēmned, on Tyrum geboren. Mid-ðām-ðe ic becōm tō fullum andgiete,¹ ðā næs nān cræft² ðe wære³ fram cyningum begān, oððe fram æðelum mannum, ðæt ic ne cūðe.⁴ . . . Ðā wearð ic on sǣ forliden, and cōm tō Cyrenense. Ðā underfēng mē Arcestrates se cyning mid swā micelre lufe ðæt ic æt nīehstan geearnode ðæt hē geaf mē his ācennedan⁵ dohtor tō gemæccēan. Sēo⁶ fōr ðā mid mē tō onfōnne mīnum cynerīce, and ðās mīne dohtor, ðe ic beforan ðē, Diana, geandweard hǣbbe, ācēnde on sǣ, and hiere gāst 10 ālēt. Ic ðā hīe mid cynelicum rēafe geserȳdde, and mid golde and gewrite on ciste ālēgde, ðæt sē, ðe hīe funde, hīe weorðlice bebyrgde⁷; and ðās mīne dohtor befæste⁸ ðæm mǎnfullestem⁹ mannum⁹ tō fēdanne.¹⁰ Fōr mē ðā tō Egypta lande fēowertīene gēar on hēofe. Ðā ic 15 ongēan cōm, ðā sǣdon hīe mē ðæt mīn dohtor wære forðfaren,¹¹ and mē wæs mīn sār eall geednīwod.”

The Recognition.

Mid-ðām-ðe hē ðās ðing eall āreaht hǣfde, Arcestrate sōðlice, his wīf, ūp ārās and hine ymbclypte. Ðā nyste nā¹² Apollonius, nē¹³ ne¹³ geliefde, ðæt hēo his gemæccea 20

¹ Lat. *scientiam*.

⁷ See 196. *d*.

² Lat. *ars*. ³ See 197.

⁸ Lat. *commendavi*.

⁴ I have omitted the portion which relates to his adventures before his shipwreck.

⁹ MS. *manfullestan mannan*.
Lat. *nequissimis hominibus*.

⁵ Translate, *own*.

¹⁰ Lat. *nutriendam*.

¹¹ Lat. *defunctam*.

⁶ Used almost as personal pronoun. From what source is Mod. Eng. *she* derived?

¹² See 183.

¹³ How do *nē* and *ne* differ in meaning?

wære,¹ ac scēaf² hīe fram him. Hēo ðā micelre stefne cleopode, and cwæð mid wōpe: "Ic eom Arcestrate ðin gemæcece, Arcestrates dohtor ðæs cyninges, and ðū eart Apollonius mīn lārēow, ðe mē lārdest. Ðū eart se for-
 5 liden a mann ðe ic lufode. . . . Hwær is mīn dohtor?" Hē bewende hine ðā tō Thasian,³ and cwæð: "Ðis hēo is." And hīe wēopon ðā ealle, and ēac blissedon.⁴ And ðæt word sprang geond eall ðæt land ðæt Apollonius, se mæra cyning, hæfde funden his wīf. And ðær wearð
 10 ormæte⁵ bliss, and ðā organa wæron⁶ getogene,⁶ and ðā bieman geblāwene, and ðær wearð blīðe gebēorscipe gegearwod betweox ðæm cyning and ðæm folce. And hēo gesette hiere gingran, ðe hiere folgode, tō sācerde, and, mid blisse and hēofe ealre ðære mægðe on Efesum,
 15 hēo fōr mid hiere were, and mid hiere āðume, and mid hiere dehter, tō Antiochian, ðær Apollonio wæs ðæt cynerīce gehealden.⁷ . . .

The Fisherman's Reward.

Ðisum eallum ðus gedōnum,⁸ ēode Apollonius, se mæra cyning, wið ðā sǣ. Ðā geseah hē ðone ealdan fiscere,
 20 ðe hine ær nacodne underfēng. Ðā hēt se cyning hine

¹ See 194. b. ² Lat. *repellit*.

³ More properly, 'Tharsian'; but cf. Shakespeare's *Thaisa*.

⁴ Cf. Macaulay's "With weeping and with laughter still is the story told."

⁵ Lat. *ingens*.

⁶ Lat. *disponuntur*. Translate, *were played*.

⁷ At this point there is an account of Apollonius' travels among his former acquaintances, rewarding them according to their deserts, and cheering the last hours of Archistrates, who divides his kingdom between his daughter and Apollonius.

⁸ See 167.

færlice gelæccean, and tō ðære cynelican¹ healle¹ gelædan. Ðā-ðā se fiscere ðæt geseah, ðæt hine ðā cēpan² woldon niman, ðā wēnde hē ærest ðæt hine man sceolde ofslēan; ac, mid-ðām-ðe hē cōm intō ðæs cyninges healle, ðā hēt se cyning hine lædan tōforan ðære cwēne, and ðus cwæð: 5
 “Ēalā, ðū ēadge cwēn, ðis is mīn tācenbora,³ ðe mē nacodne underfēng, and mē getāhte ðæt ic tō ðē becōm.” Ðā beseah Apollonius se cyning tō ðām fiscere, and cwæð: “Ēalā, welwillenda⁴ ealda,⁵ ic eom Apollonius se Tyrisca, ðām ðū sealdest healfne ðinne wāfels.” Him 10
 geaf ðā se cyning twā hund gyldenra⁶ pēninga,⁶ and hæfde hine tō gefēran ðā-hwile-ðe hē lifde. . . .

The End.

Æfter eallum ðisum Apollonius se cyning . . . welwillendlice lifde mid his gemæccean seofon⁷ and hund-seofontig gēara, and hēold ðæt cynerīce on Antiochia, 15
 and on Tyrum, and on Cyrenense. And hē lifde on stilnesse and on blisse ealle ðā tīd his līfes æfter his earfoðnesse. And twā bēc hē self gesette be his fare⁸; and āne āsette on ðām temple Diane, oðre on bibliotheca. 20

Hēr endað ge wēa ge wela Apollonius ðæs Tyriscan.

¹ Lat. *palatium*.

² Lat. *militibus*.

³ Lat. *paranympus*. The OE. word properly translates Lat. *signifer*. Render here by *groomsman*; the fisherman had con-

ducted him, as it were, to his bride.

⁴ Lat. *benignissime*.

⁵ See 55 and 181.

⁶ Lat. *sestertia auri*.

⁷ But Lat. *quatuor*.

⁸ Lat. *casus*.

Ræde¹ se ðe wille; and gif hīe hwā² ræde, ic bidde
 ðæt hē ðās āwēdednesse ne tæle, ac ðæt hē hele swā-
 hwæt-swā ðæron sie tō tæle.³

¹ See 193. *a*.

² *Any one*. Still found in the
 phrase, 'as *who* should say'
 (*Macb.* 3. 6. 42). In Dekker's

Satiromastix (A.D. 1602) there oc-
 curs, "Suppose *who* enters now."

³ Cf. Alfred's adjuration at p.
 162, l. 12 ff.

XIII.

THE SIX DAYS' WORK OF CREATION.

(From Ælfrie's Hexameron.)

[This may serve as a commentary on Selection I., which, it will be remembered, is a translation by Ælfrie. Of the present work its editor, Norman, says (p. vii): "The treatise which is styled by Hickes in his 'Thesaurus' the 'Hexameron of St. Basil' is by no means a literal translation of the well known work of that father, but is partly original, and partly compiled from that work, and from the commentaries of the Venerable Bede upon Genesis. The author of it, from internal evidence, may be pronounced to be Ælfrie, as frequent references are made to his homilies, and to his epistles on the Old and New Testament."

Of Basil's (d. 379) delivery of the original Hexameron, there is a brief, but spirited, account in Villemain's *Tableau de l'Éloquence Chrétienne au IV^e Siècle* (p. 116 ff.), from which we extract the following: "It is more interesting to survey him in the act of instructing the poor inhabitants of Cæsarea, elevating them to God by the contemplation of nature, and explaining to them the miracles of creation in discourses where the science of the orator who had been trained at Athens is concealed under a persuasive and popular simplicity. Such is the subject of the homilies which bear the name of *Hexameron*. Together with the errors in natural philosophy which are common to all antiquity, they contain many correct views, and descriptions at once felicitous and true."]

On ðǣm forman dæge ūre Dryhten gescēop seofonfeald¹
weorc: ðæt wǣron ealle ęnglas; and ðæs lēohtes anginn;
and ðæt antimber ðe² hē of gescēop siððan gesceafta; ðǣ
ūplican heofonan and ðǣ niðerlican eorðan; ealle wæter-
scipas³; and ðǣ wiðgillan sǣ; and ðæt ūplice⁴ lyft; eall 5
on ānum dæge. Ðǣ ęnglas hē geworhte on⁵ wundorlicre

¹ See 146.

² Governed by of.

⁴ MS. uplican.

³ See 143, and p. 226, note 22.

⁵ Translate, of.

fægernesse, and on¹ micelre strængðe,² manige ðusenda, ealle lichamlēase, libbende on gāste; be ðām wē sǣdon hwilum ær sweotollicor on gewrite. Næs nā God būtan lēohte ðā-ðā hē lēoht gescēop,—hē is him self lēoht ðe
 5 onlēht³ eall ðing; ac hē gescēop ðæs dāges lēoht, and hit siððan geēacnode mid ðām scīnendum tunglum, swā-swā hēræfter sægð.⁴ Dāges lēoht hē gescēop, and tō-drǣfde ðā ðiestru, ðæt ðā gesceafta gesewenlice wurden ðurh ðæs dāges liehtinge on lenctenlicre⁵ tīde; for-ðām
 10 hē on lenctentīde, swā-swā ūs lārēowas secgeað, gescēop ðone forman dæg ðisse worulde — ðæt is on gerīmcræfte xv cl. Aprilis⁶ — and siððan ðā gesceafta, swā-swā wē secgeað hēr. Ðā ūplican heofonas, ðe englas onwuniað, hē geworhte ēac ðā on ðām ilcan dāge; be ðām wē
 15 singað on sumum sealme⁷ ðus: *Opera manuum tuarum sunt celi* — “Ðīnra handa geweorc sindon heofonas, Dryhten.” Eft on oðrum⁸ sealme sang se ilca wītga: *Ipsē dixit, et facta sunt; ipse mandavit, et creata sunt* — “Hē self hit gecwæð, and hīe wurdon geworhte; hē self
 20 hit bebēad, and hīe wurdon gesceapene.” Ðæt wæter and sēo eorðe wæron gemęngde oð ðone ðriddan dæg; ðā tōdyde hīe God, swā-swā hēræfter sægð on ðisse gesetnesse. Ðæt lyft hē gescēop tō ūres līfes strangunge; ðurh ðæt wē orðiað, and ēac ðā nīetenu; and ūre fnǣst
 25 āteorað gif wē ātēon ne magon, mid ūrum orðe, intō ūs

¹ Translate, *of*.⁴ = *it saith, is described*.² From what adjective? The original ending is -iðā.⁵ From *lencten* is derived Mod. Eng. *Lent*.³ How is this stem related to *lēoht*? Cf. Jn. 1. 9.⁶ March 18.⁷ Ps. 102. 25.⁸ Ps. 33. 9.

ðæt lyft and eft útāblāwan, ðā-hwīle-ðe wē bēoð cuce. Ðæt lyft is swā hēah swā-swā ðā heofonlican¹ wolenu, and ēac ealswā brād swā-swā ðære eorðan brādnes. On ðære² flēogað fuglas, ac hiera fiðru ne meahthen nāhwider hīe³ āberan gif hīe ne ābære sēo lyft.

5

Secunda die fecit Deus firmamentum — “On ðæm oðrum dæge ūre Dryhten geworhte firmamentum,⁴” ðe mēnn hātað rodor. Sē⁵ belȳcð⁶ on his bōsme ealle eorðan⁷ brādnesse,⁷ and binnan him is gelōgod eall ðes middan-geard; and hē æfre gæð ābūtan swā-swā iernende hwēol, 10 and hē næfre ne stęnt stille on ānum, and on ānre węndinge. Ðā-hwīle-ðe hē æne betyrnð, gāð witodlice forð fēower and twēntig tīda — ðæt is ðonne ealles ān dæg and ān niht. Ðone rodor God gehēt heofon. Hē is wundorlice hēalīc and wīd on ymbhwyrfte; sē⁵ gæð 15 under ðās eorðan ealswā⁸ dēop swā bufan, ðeah-ðe ðā ungelāredan mēnn ðæs⁹ geliefan ne cunnon. And God ðā tōdælde ðurh his dryhtenlican miht ðā niðerlican wæteru ðe wæron under ðæm rodore fram ðæm uplicum wæterum ðe wæron bufan ðæm rodore. Be ðæm uplicum 20 wæterum āwrāt se wītga¹⁰ ðus: *Laudate eum cæli cælorum, et aquæ quæ super cælos sunt, laudent nomen Domini* — “Hēriað hine heofonas, ðāra heofona heofonas, and ēac ðā wæteru ðe bufan heofonas sind, hērien hīe Godes

¹ Translate, *of heaven*.

⁵ Nearly = **hē**.

² Nearly = **hiere**. **Lyft** fluctuates in gender, in this extract, between fem. and neut.

⁶ See **belūcan**.

⁷ See **24**.

³ Acc. plur.

⁸ What is the difference of derivation between *also* and *as*?

⁴ How is this word rendered in

⁹ See **156. g**.

p. 124, l. 4.

¹⁰ Ps. 148, 4.

naman." Ðus sægð ðæt hālge gewrit. Ne hēriað ðā wæteru mid nānum wordum God, ac ðurh ðā gesceafta, ðe hē gescēop wundorlice, his miht is gesweotolod, and hē bið swā gehæred.

5 On ðæm ðriddan dæge ūre Dryhten gegaderode ðā sǣlican¹ y̅ða fram ðære eorðan brādnesse. Sēo eorðe wæs æt fruman eall ungesewenlic, for-ðām-ðe hēo eall wæs mid y̅ðum oferðeaht²; ac God hīe āsyndrode fram ðæm sǣlicum y̅ðum on hiere āgenne stēde, swā-swā hēo
10 stęnt oð ðis.³ Hēo ne līð⁴ on nānum ðinge, ac on⁵ lofte⁵ hēo stęnt ðurh ðæs Ānes miht ðe⁶ eall ðing gescēop; and hē eall ðing gehielt⁷ būtan geswince, for-ðām-ðe his nama is *Omnipotens Deus*, ðæt is on Ænglisc, "Ælmihtig God." His willa is weore, and hē wērig ne bið, and his
15 micle miht ne mæg nāhwær swincan, swā-swā se wītga⁸ āwrāt be him, cweðende, *Quia in manu ejus sunt omnes fines terræ* — "For-ðām-ðe on his handa sindon eall ðære eorðan gemæru." Ðā sǣ hē gelōgode swā-swā hēo līð⁴ gīet wiðinnan ðā eorðan on hiere ymbhwyrfte; and ðeah-
20 ðe hēo brād sīe, and gebieged gehū, and wundorlice dēop, hēo wunað eall swā-ðeah on ðære eorðan bōsme binnan hiere gemærum. God self geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd wæs swā, and hēt ðā eorðan ārodlice spryttan grōwende gærs, and ðā grēnan wyrta mid hiera āgnum sǣde tō manig-
25 fealdum lǣcecræfte⁹; and ðā wyrta sōna wynsumlice

¹ Translate, *of the sea*.

² See 114.

³ *Until this, until now*.

⁴ See 28.

⁵ Mod. Eng. *aloft*.

⁶ Refers to Ānes.

⁷ See *gehealdan*. Present or preterit ?

⁸ Ps. 95. 4.

⁹ Cf. *Rom. and Jul.* 2. 3. 15 ff.

grēowon,¹ mid manigfealdum blōstmum, mislice geblēode. God hēt hīe ēac spryttan, ðurh his godeundan miht, manigfeald trēowcynn, mid hiera wāestmum, mannum tō ofetum and tō oðrum nīedum. And sēo eorðe, sōna swā-swā hierē² God bebēad, stōd mid holtum āgrōwen, and 5 mid hēalicum cēderbēamum and mid manigum wudum on hiere wīdgilnesse, mid æppelbærum trēowum and mid ortgeardum, and mid ælcum trēowcynne mid hiera āgnum wāestmum.

On ðām fēorðan dæge ūre Dryhten gewwæð, “Geweorðen 10 nū lēoht” — ðæt sind, ðā lēohtan steorran on ðām heofonlican rodore — “ðæt³ hīe tōdāelan mægen dæg fram niht, and hīe bēon tō tācne, and tīda gewyrcean dagum and gēarum, and scīnen on ðām rodore, and onliehten ðā eorðan.” God geworhte ðā sōna twā scīnendu lēoht, 15 miclu and mæru, mōnan and sunnan — ðā sunnan on mērgen tō ðæs dæges liehtinge, ðone mōnan on æfen mannum tō liehtinge on nihtlicre tīde mid getācnungum. And ealle steorran hē ēac ðā geworhte, and hē hīe gefæstnode on ðām fæstan rodore, ðæt hīe ðā eorðan 20 onliehten mid hiera manigfealdum lēoman, and ðæs dæges giēmden⁴ and ēac ðære niht, and ðæt lēoht tōdælden and ðā ðiestru on twā. Nāeron nāne tīda on ðām gēarlicum getæle ær-ðām-ðe se ælmihtiga Scieppend gescēop ðā tunglu tō gēarlicum tīdum, on manigum 25 getācnungum, on lēnctenlicre emnihte — swā-swā lārēowas sēcgeað on gerīmeræfte, xii kl. Aprilis.⁵ And ne bēoð

¹ See **grōwan**.³ Cf. p. 125, l. 9 ff.² Dat. sing.⁴ Cf. p. 126, l. 1 ff.⁵ March 21; cf. p. 190, l. 12.

nāfre Ēastron¹ ær se dæg cume ðæt ðæt lēoht hæbbe ðā
 ðiestru oferswīðed, ðæt is, ðæt se dæg bēo lēngra² ðonne
 sēo niht. Be ðæm oðrum tīdum cwið ðeos ilce bōc swā-
 swā God sǣde him self tō Noe: "Sǣdtīma and hǣrfest,
 5 sumer and winter, ciele and hǣtu, dæg and niht, ne
 geswīcað nāfre." Ne standað nā ealle steorran on ðæm
 stēapan rodore, ac hīe³ sume³ habbað synderlicne gang
 beneoðan ðæm rodore, mislice geēndebyrde; and ðā, ðe
 on ðæm rodore standað, tyrnað⁴ æfre ābūtan mid ðæm
 10 brādan rodore on ymbhwyrfte ðære eorðan, and hīera⁵
 nān ne field⁶ of ðæm fæstan rodore ðā-hwīle-ðe ðeos
 woruld wunað swā gehāl. Eall swā gǣð sēo sunne,⁷ and
 sōðlice se mōna,⁷ ābūtan ðās eorðan mid brādum ymb-
 hwyrfte, eall swā feor beneoðan swā-swā hīe bufan ūs gāð.
 15 On ðæm fīftan dæge ūre Dryhten gescēop of wætere
 ānum ealle fiscas on sǣ and on ēaum, and eall ðæt on
 him criepð,⁸ and ðā miclan hwalas on hīera cynrēnum,

¹ A plural (see the verb) used as singular. **Ēastre** (North. **Ēostre**) was, as Bede tells us, the name of a goddess whose festival was celebrated at the vernal equinox; it is a derivative of **ēast** (*east*, cognate with Skr. *ushās*, dawn), and this indicates that she was originally a goddess of the dawn. Bede adds that the passover-tide was so called, "Consuetudo antiquæ observationis vocabulo gaudia novæ solemnitatis vocantes,"

² See 65.

³ See 151.

⁴ From the Greek word *τόρνος*, one of whose senses is *lathe-chisel*, comes the Greek, and hence the Latin (*tornare*) verb meaning 'to turn in a lathe,' and hence 'to fashion,' 'smooth'; from the Latin is derived the English verb.

⁵ Dependent on **nān**.

⁶ See **feallan**.

⁷ Are these genders what one would expect? What determines them?

⁸ See **crēopan**.

and ēac eall fugolcynn ealswā of wætere, and forgeaf
 ðæm fuglum flyht geond ðās lyft, and ðæm fiscum sund
 on ðæm flōwendum ȳðum. God hīe geblētsode ðā, ðus
 cweðende tō ðæm fiscum, “Weaxað¹ and beoð gemanig-
 fælde, and gefyllað ðā sē”; and ēac, “Ðā fuglas bēon
 gemanigfælde bufan ðære eorðan”; and hit gewearð ðā
 swā. Ðā fuglas, sōðlice, ðe on flōdum wuniað, sindon
 flaxfēte be Godes forescēawunge, ðæt hīe swimman
 mægen and sēcean him fōdan. Sume bēoð langsweorede,²
 swā-swā swanas³ and ielfetan, ðæt hīe ārācean him
 mægen mēte⁴ be⁵ ðæm grunde. And ðā, ðe be⁶ flāsce
 libbað, sindon cliferfēte,⁷ and scearpe gebilode,² ðæt hīe
 bītan mægen on⁸ sceortum sweorum, and swiftran⁹ on
 flyhte, ðæt hīe gelimplice bēon tō hiera līfes¹⁰ tilungum.
 Nis nā eall fugolcynn on Ʒngla ðeode, nē on nānum
 earde ne bið nāht ēaðe eall fugolcynn, for-ðām-ðe hīe
 fela sindon, micle on wāestme, and hīe mislice flēogað,
 swā-swā ūs bēc seġgeað sweetollice be¹¹ ðæm.

¹ Cf. p. 126, l. 11 ff.

² Not past participles, though with the same ending.

³ **Swanas** and **ielfetan** are here virtually identical; in ON. **swanr** is the poetical, **ālft** the ordinary designation. **Swan** has been doubtfully derived from the root of Lat. *sonare*, and **ielfete** (cf. the ON. form) from that of Lat. *albus*.

⁴ Object of **ārācean**.

⁵ Here = *from*; cf. ‘by the roots.’

⁶ Cf. “Man shall not live by bread alone.”

⁷ **Clifer-** is apparently related to *cleave* = *adhere*.

⁸ Translate, *with*. ⁹ See 64.

¹⁰ An interesting word, related to Mod. Eng. *leave*, Germ. *b(e)leiben*, Gr. *ὑπαρῆν* = *hold out, persist*; originally, therefore, *life = a holding out, continuance*. In German, *body*, one of its older meanings, is the commoner one for *Leib*. Here = *livelihood*.

¹¹ So in Fielding's *Amelia* (8.2);

On ðæm siextan dæge ūre Dryhten gecwæð: "Ācenne¹
 sēo eorðe nū cucu nīetenu on hiera cynrēne, and ðā
 crēopendan wyrmas, and eall dēorcynn on hiera cyn-
 rēnum." Hwæt²! ðā God geworhte, ðurh his wunderlican
 5 miht, eall nīetencynn on hiera cynrēnum, and ðā wildan
 dēor ðe on wudum eardiað, and eall ðæt fiðerfēte³ bið,
 of ðære foresædan eorðan, and eall wyrmcynn ðā-ðe
 crēopende bēoð, and ðā rēðan lēon,⁴ ðe hēr on lande ne
 bēoð, and ðā swiftan tiges,⁴ and ða sellican pardes,⁴
 10 and ðā egeslican beran, and ðā ormætan elpas, ðā-ðe on
 Ēngla ðēode ācennede ne bēoð, and fela oðru cynn ðe gē
 ealle ne cunnon. Ðā bēoð langsweorede ðe libbað be
 gærse, swā-swā olfend⁵ and assa, hors and hrȳðeru,
 hēadēor and rāhdēor, and gehwile oðru; and ælc bið
 15 gelimplic tō his lifes tilunge. Wulfas, and lēon, and
 witodlice beran, habbað strangne sweoran, and sciertran⁶
 be⁷ dæle,⁷ and māran tūscas, tō hiera mētes tilunge, for-
 ðām-ðe hīe libbað hiera lif⁸ be rēāflāce, swā-swā gehwile
 oðru dēor⁹ ðe dēriað ðæm oðrum. Ðā elpas bēoð swā
 20 micle swilce oðre muntas,¹⁰ and hīe magon libban ðrēo
 hund gēara, and man mæg hīe wēnian tō wīge mid

"I always love to speak *by* people
 as I find"; Shak., *M. V.* 1. 2. 58:
 "How say you *by* the French
 lord?"

¹ Cf. p. 126, l. 15 ff.

² Translate, *Lo!*

³ **Fiðer**-isakin to Lat. *quattuor*.

⁴ From Latin. With **pard** cf.
 Shakespeare's "Bearded like the
pard."

⁵ Not *elephant*, but *camel*. **Elp**
 (longer form, **elpend**) is *elephant*.

⁶ See 65.

⁷ Translate, *in part*.

⁸ See 168. 1.

⁹ Cf. Shakespeare's (*King Lear*
 3. 4. 143): "Mice and rats and such
 small *deer*." What is the German?

¹⁰ So the ME. *Bestiary* (ca.
 1220) says (l. 604): "Elpes arn

cræfte, swā ðæt męnn wyrceað wīghūs him on uppan,
and of ðāem feohtað on hiera fierdinge; ðonne fliehð ælc
hors¹ āfæred² ðurh ðā elpas, and, gif him hwā wiðstęnt,
hē bið sōna oftreden.³ Ac wē nellað nā swiðor nū ymb
ðis sprecau.

On ðāem ilcan dæge ūre Dryhten wolde mannan ge-
wyrcean of ðāere ilcan eorðan, for-ðām-ðe on ðisum fierste
āfēoll se dēofol of ðāere hēalican heofonan, mid his
gegadum, for his ūpāhāfednesse, intō helle wite. Ūre
Dryhten cwæð be him on his hālgan godspelle,⁴ *In veri-* 10
tate non stetit, quia veritas non est in eo — “Hē ne wunode
nā on sōðfæstnesse, for-ðām-ðe sēo sōðfæstnes nis nātes-
hwōn on him.” God hine geworhte wundorlicne and
fægerne. Ðā sceolde hē, gif hē wolde, weorðian his
Scieppend mid micelre ēaðmōdnesse, ðe hine swā mārne 15
gescēop. Ac hē ne dyde nā swā, ac mid dyrstigre
mōdignesse cwæð⁵ ðæt hē wolde wyrcean his cynesetl
bufan Godes tunglum, ofer ðāera wolcna hēanesse on
ðāem norðdæle, and bēon Gode gelīc. Ðā forlēt hē
ðone Ælmihtigan, ðe is eall sōðfæstnes, and nolde 20
habban his hlāfordscipe, ac wolde bēon him self on his

in Inde riche, on bodi borlic
[burly] *berges ilike*.”

¹ This seems to indicate that Ælfric employed Ambrose's adaptation of Basil's *Hexameron*, since the original does not contain this thought. Ambrose has (Bk. VI., Chap. V.): “Quid faciat eques, cum equus ejus perterrefactus tantæ bestiæ immanitate diffu-

giat.” Above, where elephants are compared to mountains, Basil has, *βουβὸν τῖνές σάρκινοι*; Ambrose, “velut quidam mobiles montes versantur in præliis,” etc.

² So Shak., *Macb.* 5. 1. 41: “A soldier, and afeard.”

³ See 142.

⁴ Jn. 8. 44.

⁵ Isa. 14. 13,

selfes anwealde. Ðā næfde hē nāne fæstnunge, ac fēoll sōna ādūne, mid eallum ðām englum ðe æt his rāde wæron, and hīe wurdon āwende tō āwiergdum dēoflum. Be ðām cwæð¹ se Hælend hēr on ðisum life, “Ic geseah
 5 ðone scuccan swā-swā scīnende lieget feallende ādūn drēorig of heofonum,” for-ðām-ðe hē āhrēas ungerydelice.

Ðā wolde God wyrcean, ðurh his wundorlican miht, mannan of eorðan, ðe mid ēaðmōdnesse sceolde geearnian ðone ilcan stēde on ðære engla gefērrādene ðe se dēofol
 10 forworhte mid his dystignesne; and God self cwæð ðā, swā-swā ūs sægð ðeos bōc, *Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram et similitudinem nostram, et reliqua*, etc., ðæt is on Ængliscre spræce, “Uton gewyrcean mannan tō ūre anlicnesse and tō ūre gelīcnesse, ðæt hē anweald
 15 hæbbe ofer eallum fiscum, and ofer fugolecynne, and ofer wildēorum,² and ofer eallum gesceafte.” Hēr gē magon gehieran ðā hālgan ðrīnesse and sōðe ānesse ānre godcundnesse. “Uton wyrcean mannan”—ðær is sēo hālge ðrīnes. “Tō ūre anlicnesse”—ðær is sēo ānes, tō
 20 ānre anlicnesse, nā tō ðrīm anlicnessum. On ðæs mannes sāwle is Godes anlicnes, for-ðām is se mann sēlra³ ðonne ðā sāwullēasan nīetenu, ðe nān andgiet nabbað ymb hiera āgenne Scieppend. God ðā geworhte of ðære eorðan lāme,⁴ mid his hālgum handum, mannan tō his anlic-
 25 nessee, and āblēow on his ansiene liflicene blæd; and hē wearð mann geworht on libbendre sāwle. God self ðā siððan gescēop him naman Adam, and of his ānum ribbe

¹ Lk. 10. 18.

² What is the etymology of *wilderness*? Cf. 35.

³ See 66.

⁴ See 24.

worhte him gemacan.¹ Hiere nama wæs Ēva, ūre² ealra mōdor. And God hīe ðā geblētsode mid ðisse blētsunge, “Weaxað and bēoð gemęnigfelde, and gefyllað ðā eorðan, and habbað ēow anweald ofer ðā eorðan, and ofer sǣ fiscum, and ofer ðǣm flēogendum fuglum, and ofer eallum 5 ðǣm nīetenum ðe styriað ofer eorðan.” God gescēawode ðā eall his weorc, and hīe wǣron swiðe gōd. And se siexta dæg wearð swā geęndod.

And God ðā gefylde on ðǣm sefoðan däge his weorc ðe hē worhte on wundorlicum dihte, and hine³ ðā geręste, 10 and ðone dæg geblētsode, for-ðām-ðe hē on ðǣm sefoðan däge geswāc his weorces.⁴ Næs hē nā wērig, ðeah-ðe hit swā āwriten sīe; nē he mid ealle ne geswāc ðā gesceafta tō ednīwianne,⁵ ac hē geswāc ðæs dihtes⁴ ðæs dēoplican cræftes, swā ðæt hē selde cūðe siððan scieppan nolde, ac 15 ðā ilcan geednīwian oð ęnde ðisse worulde, swā-swā ūre Hǣlend on his hālgan godspelle gecwæð,⁶ *Pater meus usque modo operatur, et ego operor*, ðæt is on Ēnglisc, “Mīn Fæder wyrcð gīet oð ðisne andweardan dæg, and ic ēac wyrce.” Ēlce gēare⁷ bið orf ācenned, and męnn- 20 isce⁸ męnnu⁸ tō mannum ācennede, ðā-ðe God gewyrceð swā-swā hē geworhte ðā ārran; and hē ne sciepeð nāne sǣwle būtan ðǣm eildum ānum, and eall nīetenu nabbað nāne sǣwle.⁹

¹ In Chaucer's *Sir Thopas* we have: “For in this world no woman is Worthy to be my make.” So in Spenser (*F. Q.* 3. 11. 2): “That was as trew in love as turtle to her make.”

² See 153. a.

³ See 184. b.

⁴ See 156. k.

⁵ See 142.

⁶ Jn. 5. 17.

⁷ See 176.

⁸ Translate, *human beings*.

⁹ Based upon Basil 82, where he is combating the theory of the transmigration of souls.

XIV.

THE SONG OF THE GLEEMAN.

(Beowulf 89-100.)

[Hrothgar, King of the Danes, builds a spacious hall for the assembly of his retainers. There, from time to time, they are entertained by minstrelsy, — sometimes that of a professional gleeman, and sometimes improvised by one of the warriors, or even by the king himself (cf. *Iliad* 9. 185-189).

In reading the poetry, the paragraph of the Preface relating to the retention of MS. forms should be borne in mind.]

þær wæs hearpan swēg,

swutol sang scopes.¹ Sægde sē þe cūþe [90]

frumsceaft fīra feorran rēccan,

cwæð² þæt se Ælmihtiga³ eorðan worhte,

¹ For the accord of harp and voice see p. 175, l. 11, and *Odyssey* 8. 266: "Now as the minstrel touched the lyre, he lifted up his voice in sweet song."

² Thorkelin, the first editor of *Beowulf*, already noticed the resemblance between this song and that of Iopas in Virgil (*Æn.* 1. 740-747), though this is Christianized in its execution. An earlier sketch of the same conception was that in the *Georgics* (2. 475-482), of which Coning-

ton says: "Virgil probably had in his mind here not only Lucretius and the Greek didactic poets, such as Xenophanes, Empedocles, and Aratus, but the legendary reputation of the poetic teachers of early Greece, such as Orpheus and Musæus. His own notion of an ancient bard is that of a hierophant of nature. . . . The conception belongs not to Augustan Rome, but to primitive Greece, where science was theological and imaginative, and verse the natu-

³ Cf. p. 124, l. 4 ff.

wlitebeorhtne wang, swā¹ wæter bebūgeð²;
 gesette³ Sige hrēpig sunnan⁴ ond mōnan⁴
 lēoman tō lēohte landbūendum, [95]
 and gefræt wade foldan scēatas
 5 leomun⁵ ond lēafum; lif ēac gescēop
 cynna⁶ gehwylcum pāra þe cwice hwyrfaþ.⁷
 Swā ðā drihtguman drēamum lifdon
 ēadiglice. [100]

ral vehicle of all knowledge and thought. It had, however, been partially realized by Lucretius, "whose example exercised a strong influence on Virgil's imagination." As to the possibility of an Old English poet's being familiar with Virgil, compare the testimony of Bede (*Eccl. Hist.* 4. 2) concerning the pupils of Theodore and Hadrian: "Usque hodie supersunt de eorum discipulis qui Latinam Græcamque linguam

æque ut propriam, in qua nati sunt, norunt."

¹ Almost = *which*. In archaic German *so* is thus used: "Von allen, *so* da kamen."

² This phrase is found again in the *Andreas*. See p. 216, l. 18.

³ Cf. p. 125, l. 12 ff. ⁴ See 153. b.

⁵ See *him*, and 174.

⁶ Dependent upon *gehwylcum* (154. b).

⁷ Here ends the song. The rest refers to Hrothgar's retainers.

XV.

THE ROUT OF THE ASSYRIANS.

(From the Judith.)

[Of this extract Ten Brink has said (*Early English Literature*): "To a lucid, well-constructed narrative are joined epic profusion, vigor, and animation. In the highest degree effective is the portrayal of Judith's return to Bethulia, of the warlike advance of the Hebrews, of the surprise of the Assyrian camp, the terror of the Assyrian nobles, who dare not disturb their lord in his rest, and finally of the disbandment and flight of the heathen host."

The portion here given omits the discovery of Holofernes' dead body by the Assyrians. It is based upon the Apocryphal book of Judith, the first few verses of the fifteenth chapter, especially verses 2, 5, 7, and 11. For further particulars see my edition of the *Judith*.

Attention is called to the device employed for indicating parallel or synonymous expressions, which have constituted one of the chief difficulties of OE. poetry. The device consists in the enclosure between reference-letters of the parallel expressions, the synonyms being designated by the same letters. For an example, see p. 204, ll. 5-7.]

pā wurdon blīðe burhsittende,¹
 syððan hī gehȳrdon² hū sēo hālge³ spræc [160]
 ofer hēanne⁴ weall. Hēre wæs on lustum,
 wið þæs fæstengeates⁵ folc ōnette,
 5 weras wif sƿomod⁶; wornum and hēapum,
 ðrēatum⁷ and ðrymmum þrungon and urnon
 ongēan ðā pēodnes mægð pūsendmāelum, [165]

¹ See 28.

² See 19.

⁶ Here almost = **and**. Through-

³ See 55.

⁴ See 58. 1.

out the following poetry, remem-

⁵ **W18** sometimes governs the

ber 25.

genitive; see 158.

⁷ See 220.

- ealde ge geonge; æghwylcum¹ wearð
 men on ðære medobyrig mōd² ārēted,³
 syððan hie ongēaton þæt wæs⁴ Iūðith cumen
 eft tō ēðle,⁵ and ðā ofostlice
 5 hie⁶ mid ēaðmēdum in forlēton. [170]
 þā sēo glēawe⁷ hēt golde gefrætewod⁸
 hyre ðīnenne⁹ þançolmōde⁹
 þæs herewæðan hēafod¹⁰ onwriðan,
 and hyt¹¹ tō¹² bēhðe¹² blōdig¹³ ætýwan
 10 þām burhlēodum,¹⁴ hū hyre æt beaduwe¹⁵ ge- [175]
 spēow.¹⁶
 A Spræc¹⁷ ðā sēo æðele tō eallum þām folce:—
 “Hēr gē magon sweotole, sigerōfe hæleð,¹⁸
 lēoda ræswan,¹⁸ on ðæs lāðestan
 hæðnes heaðorinces hēafod starian,
 15 x Holofernus¹⁹ unlyfigendes,²⁰ [180]
 þe ūs mōnna mæst²¹ *morðra* gefrēmede,

¹ Belongs to **men**.

² Subject.

³ What is the normal form of this word (113)?

⁴ Note the auxiliary: *was come*, not *had come*.

⁵ See 23.

⁶ Acc. sing.

⁷ See 181.

⁸ Modifies **glēawe**.

⁹ Acc. sing.

¹⁰ Object of **onwriðan**.

¹¹ For **hit**.

¹² = *as a sign*.

¹³ Modifies **hyt**.

¹⁴ Construe, and **ætýwan hyt, blōdig, þām burhlēodum, tō bēhðe hū hyre**, etc.

¹⁵ Unusual form for **beadwe**, from **beadu**.

¹⁶ See 190.

¹⁷ For the order cf. Tennyson's line from the song in *The Princess*: "Rose a nurse of ninety years."

¹⁸ See 152.

¹⁹ Genitive.

²⁰ **y** is sometimes found for **i**, as well as for **ie** (19).

²¹ **Mæst** seems to have two

- sārra ^asorga^a, and þæt swȳðor¹ gȳt²
 ȳcan² wolde; ac him ne ūðe³ God
 lengran lifes,⁴ þæt hē mid læððum ūs
 eġlan mōste⁵; ic him ealdor⁶ oðþrong⁷ [185]
 5 þurh Godes fultum. Nū ic ^bgumena^b gehwæne⁸
 pyssa¹ ^bburglēoda^b biddan wylle,¹
^brandwiggendra^b, þæt gē recene ēow⁹
 fȳsan¹⁰ tō gefeohte; syððan ^cfrymða God^c,
^carfæst Cyning^c, ēastan sēnde [190]
 10 lēohtne lēoman, berað ^dlinde^d forð,
^dbord^d for brēostum and byrnhoṃas,
 scīre helmas in sceaðena gemong.
 fyllan² ^efoletogan^e fāgum sweordum,
 fāge ^efrumgāras^e. Fȳnd² syndon ēowere¹¹ [195]
 15 gedēmed tō dēaðe and gē ^fdōm^f āgon,¹²
^ftīr^f æt tohtan, swā ēow getācnod hafað¹³
 mihtig Dryhten þurh mīne hand.”
 Þā wearð ^gsnelra^g werod snūde gegearewod,

senses and two constructions in this and similar passages. In one it apparently = *chiefest*, and is construed with the preceding genitive; in the other = *most in number*, and is construed with the following genitive. Cf. *Andr.* 1447: “þā þe heardra mæst hearma gefrēmedan”; *Bēow.* 2645: “forðām hē manna mæst mārða gefrēmede”; etc.

¹ See above, p. 203, n. 20.

² See 19; 199. 1.

³ See 129.

⁴ See 159. *a*.

⁵ See 137.

⁶ Neuter.

⁷ See 142.

⁸ LWS. acc. of *gehwā*. See 154. *b*.

⁹ See 184. *b*.

¹⁰ Opt. pres. 2 plur.

¹¹ Construe, *ēowere fȳnd syndon gedēmed*, etc.

¹² See 127. What two words in this line have the same root? Which is the derivative?

¹³ Is this the usual form?

^gcēnra^g tō campe; stōpon¹ cynerōfe [200]
 secgas and gesīðas, bāron [sige]pūfas,
 fōron tō gefeohte forð on gerihte,
 hæleð² under helmum of³ ðære hālgan byrig
 5 on⁴ ðæt dægrēd sylf; ^adynedan^a scildas,
 hlūde ^ahlummon^a. þæs se hlanca gefeah⁵ [205]
 wulf in walde,⁶ and se wanna hrefn,
 wælgīfre fugel: wistan⁷ bēgen
 þæt him⁸ ðā pēodguman pōhton⁹ tilian
 10 fylle¹⁰ on fāgum; ac him flēah¹¹ on lāst
 earn ætes¹² georn, ūrigfeðera,¹³ [210]
 salowigpāda¹⁴ sang hildelēoð,
 hyrnednebbas. Stōpon ^bheaðorincas^b,
^bbeornas^b tō beadowe ^cbordum^c¹⁵ beðeahte,

¹ See **stæppan**.

² Nom. plur. See 43. 9.

³ = *from*, not *of*.

⁴ = *at*.

⁵ See **gefēon**.

⁶ Is this the usual form?

See 21.

⁷ Irregular for **wiston** (126).

⁸ Not reflexive.

⁹ See **ðencean**.

¹⁰ = *feast*. See *Iliad* 22. 42:
 "Then quickly would dogs and
 vultures devour him on the
 field."

¹¹ See **flēogan**.

¹² See 155. c.

¹³ See Shelley's description of
 the rooks, in the *Lines written*
among the Euganean Hills:—

Gathering round with wings all
 hoar,

Through the dewy mist they soar.

* * * * *

So their plumes of purple grain,
 Starred with drops of golden rain,
 Gleam, etc.

Perhaps Milton may have bor-
 rowed the word from OE. in *Il*
Pens. 146: "dewy-feathered
 sleep."

¹⁴ Note the three similar epi-
 thets of the **earn**.

¹⁵ **Bord**, *border*, like **rand**,
 same meaning (see above, p. 204,
 l. 7), is poetically used for *shield*.
 So Gr. *trvs* (akin to Eng. *withe*)
 meant a) a circle or rim made of
willow; b) the outer edge or *rim*
 of the shield (like *ἀνρυξ*); c) the

- 3^c hwealfum lindum^c,¹ þā ðe hwīle² ær
 4^c lððeodigra³ ^aedwīt^a poledon, [215]
 hæðenra ^ahosp^a; ^bhim^b þæt hearde wearð
 æt ðām æscplegan⁴ eallum⁵ forgolden
 5^b Assyrium^b, syððan Ebrēas
 under gūðfanum gegān⁶ hæfdon⁶
 tō ðām fyrdrwīcum. Hīe ðā frōmlīce [220]
 lēton forð flēogan flāna scūras,
^childenædran^c of hornbogan,
 10^c strælas^c stēdehearde; styrmdon hlūde
 grame gūðfreca, gāras⁷ sēndon
 in heardra gemang. ^dHæleð^d wæron yrre,⁸ [225]
^dlandbūende^d lāðum cynne,
 stōpon ^dstyrnmōde^d, ^dstercedferhðe^d
 15 wrēhton unsōfte ealdgenīðlan⁹

round *shield* itself. A good illustration of its use is in Euripides, *Tro.* 1196–97, where Hecuba is speaking of Hector's shield. Potter translates: —

Yet how sweet to trace
The mark of his strong grasp, and
on the verge
Of thy high orb (trvos) the sweat.

¹ The material for the weapon, *linden* for *shield*.

² Acc. sing.: *for a time*.

³ Dependent on *edwīt*.

⁴ On *ash* as the designation of a *spear*, see Shakespeare, *Coriol.* 3. 5. 112–115: —

Let me twine
Mine arms about that body, where
against

My grained *ash* an hundred times
hath broke,
And scarr'd the moon with splinters.

See also *Iliad* 22. 225 (where μέλιη, *ash*, is used for *spear*): “Stood leaning on his bronze-pointed (χαλκογλῶχινος, like the ærgescōd of *Bēowulf* 2778) *ashen-spear*.” For *æscplega* cf. ‘sword-play.’

⁵ Agrees with *him* (164. *h*).

⁶ Note this pluperfect, formed with an auxiliary.

⁷ What is the meaning of the *gar-* in Mod. Eng. *garlic*?

⁸ See 19.

⁹ Acc. plur. (168).

medowērige¹; mundum² brugdon
scealcas of scēaðum scīrmæled swyrd³ [230]

Ʒegum gecoste,⁴ slōgon eornoste

Assiria⁵ °ōretmæcgas°,

5 °nīðhyegende°, nānne ne sparedon

pæs ^fherfolces^f hēanne⁶ ne rīcne

^fcwicera manna^f þe hīe ofereuman mihton. [235]

* * * * *

Him⁷ mōn⁸ feaht on lāst,

mægenēacen⁹ folc, oð se mæsta dæl

10 pæs heriges¹⁰ læg hilde gesæged

on ðām sigewōnge, sweordum¹¹ gehēawen, [295]

wulfum tō willan,¹² and ēac wælgifrum

fuglum tō frōfre. Flugon ðā ðe lyfdon

lāðra lindwiggendra.¹³ Him on lāste fōr

15 swēot Ebrēa¹⁴ ^asigor¹⁵ geweorðod^a,

^adōme gedȳrsod^a; him¹⁶ fēng ^bDryhten God^b [300]

fægre on¹⁷ fultum,¹⁷ ^bFrēa ælmihtig^b.

°Hī^c ðā frōmlīce fāgum swyrdum

°hæleð higerōfe^c herpað¹⁸ worhton

¹ Acc. plur.; agrees with **eald-geniðlan**.

² See 174.

³ Acc. plur.; irregular for **sweord**.

⁴ Agrees with **swyrd**. See 174. *d*.

⁵ Gen. plur.

⁶ From **hēan**, not **hēah**.

⁷ The Assyrians.

⁸ See 89. *e*.

⁹ See 147.

¹⁰ See 44. 2.

¹¹ See 174. *c*.

¹² = (*as*) *a delight to wolves*.

See 161. 2.

¹³ Depends on **ðā**.

¹⁴ Gen. plur.

¹⁵ Inst. without ending.

¹⁶ The Hebrews.

¹⁷ = *to (their) help*. For the construction see 164. *e*.

¹⁸ Irregular for **herpað** (for **-pæð**).

- purh lāðra gemōng, linde hēowon,
 scildburh scēaron: ^ascēotend^a wāeron [305]
 gūðe gegremede, ^aguman Ebrēisce^a;
 þegnas on ðā tid þearle gelyste¹
 5 gārgewinnes. Þær on grēot gefēoll
 se hȳhsta² dāel hēafodgerīmes
^aAssiria^a ealdorduguðe,³ [310]
^alāðan cynnes^a: lȳthwōn becōm
 cwicera⁴ tō cȳððe. Cirdon² cynerōfe,
 10 wiggend⁵ on wiðertrod, ^bwælsceļ^b oninnan,⁶
^brēocende hrāw^b; rūm⁷ wæs tō nimanne
 lōndbūendum on ðām ^clāðestan^c, [315]
 hyra ^cealdfēondum unlyfigendum^c
 heolfrig hērerēaf, — hyrsta⁸ seȳne,²
 15 bord and brād swyrd, brūne helmas,
 dȳre² mādmas. Hæfdon dōmlīce
 on ðām folcstēde fȳnd⁹ oferwunnen [320]
 ēðelweardas,¹⁰ ealdhettende⁹
 swyrdum āswēfede¹¹; hīe on swaðe reston,
 20 þā ðe him tō līfe lāðost wāeron
 cwicera cynna. Ðā sēo cnēoris eall,

¹ See 190. ² See 19.

³ Either dependent upon, or parallel to, **hēafodgerīmes**.

⁴ Dependent on **lȳthwōn**.

⁵ For **ig** is sometimes found, as here, **igg**. What does this signify?

⁶ Governs **wælsceļ** and **hrāw**; the latter is an acc. plural.

⁷ Translate, *there was a chance*

for the natives to capture from the most hated ones (lāðestan for -um).

⁸ These nouns are all acc. plur.

⁹ Acc. plur. ¹⁰ Nom. plur.

¹¹ Supply **hæfdon**. With **āswēbban**, in the sense of 'slay,' cf. the similar use of the Lat. *sopire* and the Gr. *ἐννύξειν* (the latter in Sophocles).

mægða mærost, ānes mōnðes fyrst,¹ [325]
 wlanc² wundenlocc² wāgon³ and læddon³
 tō ðære beorhtan byrig Bethuliam
 helmas and hupseax,⁴ hāre byrnan,
 5 gūðsceorp gumena golde gefrætewod,
 mærra⁵ mādma þonne mōn ænig [330]
 āsēcgan mæge searopŋcelra⁶;
 eal þæt ðā ðeodguman þrymme geēodon,
 cēne⁷ under cumblum on cŋpwięe
 10 þurh Iūdithe⁸ glēawe lāre
 mægð⁸ mōdigre. *Hī* tō mēde⁹ hyre [335]
 of ðām sīðfate¹⁰ sylfre¹¹ brōhton
 eorlas æscrōfe Holofernes¹²
 sweord and swātigne¹³ helm, swylce ēac sīde byrnan,
 15 gerēnode rēadum golde, and eal þæt se rinca baldor
 swīðmōd¹⁴ since¹⁵ āhte oððe sundoryrfes,¹⁵ [340]
 bēaga¹⁵ and beorhtra mādma,¹⁵ hī þæt pære beorhtan
 idese
 āgēafon gearopŋcolre.

¹ See 170.

² Agreeing with *cnēoris*.

³ See *wegan*, and 189. 2.

⁴ Acc. plur.

⁵ Comp. and gen. plur.; see 60.

2. The position would seem to require *mærran mādmas*.

⁶ Depends on *ænig*.

⁷ Modifies, or is parallel to, *ðeodguman*.

⁸ Gen. sing.

⁹ See Mayhew, *OE. Phonology*, § 365.

¹⁰ See 43. 2; here the *a* intrudes even into the sing.

¹¹ For *selfre* (166).

¹² Genitive.

¹³ Lit. *sweaty*, but in poetry *swāt* usually = *blōd*.

¹⁴ Agrees with *baldor*.

¹⁵ Dependent on *eal*.

XVI.

SELECTIONS FROM THE ANDREAS.

[The *Andreas* is a poem of about 1722 lines (the numbering differs according to the edition). Jacob Grimm considered it and the *Elene* to be (Preface to his edition, p. iv) "the most ancient and instructive productions of Old English poetry, next to the *Bēowulf*." With the help of Thilo, Grimm discovered (pp. xvi ff.) its source to be the *Acts of Andrew and Matthew*, written in Greek, and now published in Tischendorf's *Acta Apostolorum Apocrypha*, pp. 132-166. Besides this poem, there is a prose version which may be profitably consulted, and which is to be found in Bright's valuable *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, pp. 113-128. It is believed by many scholars that both these versions were made from a Latin translation of the Greek original, but this cannot be said to have been demonstrated, at least for the poem. The Greek original is discussed at length by Lipsius, *Die apokryphen Apostelgeschichten und Apostellegenden*, pp. 546 ff. A portion of the Greek, corresponding to lines 235-349, is printed in Appendix III.

According to Lipsius, the scene of the poem is the northern coast of the Black Sea; though the Old English poet had Africa in mind (cf. l. 198), perhaps because the region about Colchis had by some been called the inner or second Ethiopia. The Marmedonia (l. 30) or Mermedonia of our text has been identified with Myrmecium, Gr. *Μυρμήκιον*, near the modern Yenikale, in the Crimea. Here are supposed to have dwelt the Cimmerians of Homer, and here, in classic times, were settled various Scythian tribes. Of the Tauri (Crimea was anciently the *Tauric* Chersonesus) Herodotus says (4. 103): "They sacrifice to the virgin all who suffer shipwreck, and any Greeks they meet with driven on their coasts, in the following manner: having performed the preparatory ceremonies, they strike the head with a club; some say they throw the body down from a precipice. . . . The Tauri themselves say that this deity to whom they sacrifice is Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon" (cf. Euripides' *Iphigenia in Tauris*, and Goethe's *Iphigenie*). This reputation clung to the region, for Tertullian says (*Adv. Marcionem* 1. 1): "Pontum ferocissimas gentes inhabitare, parentum cadavera cum pecudibus cæsa convivio convorantes." Nor was the evil fame of the district diminished by the fact that Huns were settled here from the fourth to the sixth century, then Goths, and afterward Tartars.

The story of the poem, up to the beginning of our extract, is briefly this: St. Matthew was in imminent danger among the Mermedonians, a race of cannibals. In this extremity God appears to Andrew, and exhorts him to go to Matthew's assistance, which, after some reluctance, he prepares to do.

Bits of translation and interesting comments (not always correct), embracing much of our extract, are given by Brooke, *Hist. Early Eng. Lit.* pp. 169 ff., 413 ff.]

Conversation between Andrew and the Sea-Captain.

Gewāt¹ him pā ^aon ūhtan^a ^amid ærdæge^a [235]

ofer sandhleoðu tō sæs faruðe

prīste on geþance, ond his þegnas mid,

gangan² on grēote; gārsecg³ hlynede,⁴

5 bēoton brimstrēamas. Se beorn wæs on⁵ hyhte,⁵

syððan hē on waruðe wīdfæðme⁶ scip [240]

mōdig gemētte. þā cōm ^bmorgen torht^b,

^bbēacna beorhtost^b, ofer breomo snēowan,^c

hālīg of heolstre; heofoncandel⁷ blāc⁸?

¹ See 184. a. ² See 199. 1.

³ Sweet (*Engl. Stud.* 2. 314–316) explains this word as being, not a compound of **gār** and **secg** (= *spear* + *man*, according to Bosworth, as if a personification like Neptune with his trident; or = *spear* + *sedge*, with Leo, the tips of the waves being likened to spears), but as arising by metathesis from the Runic word **gāsric** (cf. the name of the Vandal king, Gaisaricus), as if **gās** + **ric**. The **gās-** would correspond to Old Norse **geisa**, to

chafe, rage; the **-ric** as in Ger. *wüterich*; so that **gāsric** would = *the rager*.

⁴ Brooke translates this line: “Trampled o’er the shingle. Thundered loud the ocean.”

⁵ Nearly = *joyful, rejoiced*. Gr. ‘rejoiced with very great joy.’

⁶ Poetic license; Gr. ‘a little ship.’ Cf. the Homeric *κοίλη νηὺς*.

⁷ = *the sun*. Of ‘candle’ the *New Eng. Dict.* says: “One of the Latin words introduced at the English Conversion, and long associated chiefly with religious

⁸ See **blīcan**.

- ofer lagoflōdas. Hē ðær ^clidweardas^c
 prymlice prȳ ^cþegnas^c geseah,¹ [245]
^cmōdiglice męnn^c, on męrebāte
 sittan sīðfrōme, swylce hīe ofer sǣ cōmon.²
 5 þæt³ wæs Drihten sylf, dugeða⁴ Wealdend,⁴
 ēce, ælmihtig, mid his ęnglum twām.
 Wǣron ^dhīe^d on gescirplan ^escipfērendum^e, [250]
^deorlas^d onlice ^eēaliðendum^e,
 þonne hīe on flōdes fæðm⁵ ofer feorne weg
 10 on cald wāter cēolum⁶ lācað.⁷
 Hīe ðā gegrētte sē ðe on grēote stōd,
 fūs⁸ on⁸ faroðe fręgn, reordade:— [255]
 “Hwanon cōmon⁹ gē cēolum līðan,
 mācræftige męnn, on męrepissan
 15 āne¹⁰ ægflotan? hwanon ēagorstrēam
 ofer ȳða gewealc ēowic¹¹ brōhte?”
 Him þā ęndswarode ælmihti¹² God, [260]
 swā¹³ þæt ne wiste sē ðe þæs wordes bād,¹⁴

observances. . . . This sacred character of the word bears on the OE. poetic compounds.” Cf. *Rom. and Jul.* 3. 5. 9.: “Night’s candles are burnt out.” See also Shakespeare’s metaphorical sense of *lamp*, and cf. the Gr. *λαμπάς*, Lat. *lampas*, in poetical use.

¹ Not in MS.

² = *had come*.

³ What is the antecedent of *þæt*?

⁴ = *Lord of hosts*,

⁵ = *expanse*, originally *embracing arms, embrace*.

⁶ Not *keel*, but *ship*.

⁷ The radical meaning is, *to move in any swift or impetuous manner*.

⁸ = *ready, eager for*. One would expect the acc. *faroð*.

⁹ See 200. 1.

¹⁰ Inst. sing.

¹¹ See 81. 1.

¹² See 28.

¹³ = *in such a manner*. One is inclined to substitute *ŷēah*, as making better sense.

¹⁴ See *bīdan*, and 156. l.

- hwæt sē manna wæs meðelhēgendra,¹
 þe hē þær on waroðe wiðþingode: —
 “Wē of Marmedonia mægðe syndon
 feorran gefērede; ūs mid flōde bær [265]
 5 on hranrāde² ^ahēahstefn³ naca^a,
^asnellīc sāmearh^{a4} snūde⁵ bewunden,⁵
 oð-þæt wē þissa lēoda land gesōhton
 wære⁶ bewrecene, swā ūs wind fordrāf.”
 Him þā Andreas ēaðmōd oncwæð: — [270]
 10 “Wolde ic þē biddan, þēh⁷ ic þē ^bbēaga^b lýt
^bsincweorðunga^b syllan meahte,
 þæt þū ūs gebrōhte ^cbrante⁸ cēole^c,
^chēa hornscipe^c ofer hwæles ēðel
 on þære mægðe; bið⁹ ðē meorð¹⁰ wið God, [275]
 15 þæt þū ūs on lāde līðe weorðe.”
 Eft him ondsvarode æðelinga Helm¹¹
 of¹² yðlīde, engla Scippend: —
 “Ne magon þær gewunian wīdfērende,

¹ Cf. the Homeric μέροψ as an epithet, and in later use as an equivalent, of *men, mortals* (so *Il.* 2. 285), and see p. 222, l. 9.

² With this sense of *rād, road*, may be compared the Gr. κέλευθος, πόρος, as in the Homeric ἰχθυόεντα κέλευθα (*Od.* 3. 177), *fishy roads*; see also Æschylus' πόρον οἰωνῶν (*Prom.* 281), *track of birds*.

³ Cf. the Gr. ὑψίπρπος.

⁴ Cf. *Od.* 4. 708: “Swift ships, that serve men for horses on the sea” (ἀλὸς ἵπποι). See p. 226, l. 2.

⁵ = *encompassed with speed, swift*.

⁶ An unusual word for *ocean*.

⁷ In this poem, *ea* (ēa) not seldom becomes *e* (ē), especially before palatal consonants (10).

⁸ See 174. *a*.

⁹ Future sense, as frequently with *bið*.

¹⁰ Anglian form for WS. *mēd*, related to Gr. μισθός (*Mayhew, OE. Phon.* § 365).

¹¹ Not *helmet*, but *protector*.

¹² = *from*, as often.

- nē þær ęlpēodige eardes¹ brūcað, [280]
 ah in þære ceastre cwealm² prōwiað,
 þā ðe feorran þyder feorh³ gelædap³;
 ond þū wilnast⁴ nū ofer wīdne mēre,
 5 þæt ðū on þā fægðe þīne fēore spilde? ”
 Him þā Andreas āgef ondsware: — [285]
 “ Ūsic lust hwēteð⁵ on þā lēodmearce,
 mycel mōdes hiht⁶ tō þære mēaran byrig,
 þēoden⁷ lēofesta, gif þū ūs þīne⁸ wilt
 10 on mērefaroðe miltse gecyðan.”
 Him ondswarode ęngla þēoden, [290]
 Neregend⁹ fīra, of nacan¹⁰ stefne: —
 “ Wē ðē ēstlice mid ūs willað
 fęrgan⁹ frēolice ofer fīsces¹¹ bæð¹¹
 15 efne tō þām lande, þær¹² þē lust myneð
 tō gesēcanne, syððan¹³ gē ēowre [295]
 “ gafulrædenne ” āgifen habbað,
 “ sceattas gescrifene ”; swā ēow scipweardas
 āra¹⁴ ofer yðbord unnan willað.”
 20 Him¹⁵ þā ofstlice Andreas wið,
 winepearfende, wordum mælde: — [300]

¹ See 156. e.

² Acc.

³ Periphrastic for ‘go.’

⁴ Elliptic, like Shakespeare’s (*M. W. 3. 2. 88*) “I *will* to my honest knight.”

⁵ A following verb of motion understood.

⁶ Here = *bent*.

⁷ Formed from *ðēod*, as *dryht-*

en from *dryht*; cf. *cyning*, with a different ending, from *cyn*.

⁸ Agrees with *miltse*.

⁹ See 18.

¹⁰ Gen. sing.

¹¹ Kenning (215) for ‘ocean.’

¹² Almost = *that*. Cf. *there* in *Mod. Eng. thereto*.

¹³ = *as soon as*.

¹⁴ MS. *aras*. See 156. i.

¹⁵ Governed by *wið*.

“Næbbe ic fæted gold ne feohgestreōn,
welan ne wište,¹ ne wīra gespann,
landes² ne locenra bēaga,³ þæt ic pē mæge ^alust^a
āhwettan,

^awillan^a in worulde, swā ðū worde becwist.⁴”

5 Him pā beorna Breogo, pær⁵ hē on bolcan sæt, [305]
ofer waroða⁶ geweorp⁶ wiðþingode:—

“Hū gewearð pē pæs,⁷ wine lēofesta,
ðæt ðū sēbeorgas sēcan woldes,⁸
mērestreāma gemet,⁹ mādmmum bedæled

10 ofer cald cleofu⁹ .cēoles¹⁰ nēošan? [310]

Nafast pē tō frōfre on faroðstræte
hlāfes wiste ne hlūtterne¹¹
drync tō dugoðe¹²? Is se drohtað strang
pām pē lagolāde lange¹³ cunnap.”

15 Ðā him Andreas ðurh ondsware [315]

¹ Not the verb.

² The construction suddenly changes to the genitive, as if some word like *āht*, *ought*, had been introduced. The poet is apparently trying to adapt to this place the **landes and locenra bēaga** of *Bēowulf* 2296, there a partitive genitive.

³ Now only existing as *bee*, a nautical term for a ring or hoop of metal. See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *Bee*².

⁴ See *becweðan*.

⁵ Nearly = *from where*.

⁶ Kemble translates, *the dashing of the waves*; but *waroð*

does not mean *wave*. I would suggest *the smiting of the shores*, perhaps meaning the plunging of the breakers.

⁷ Anticipatory of the relative sentence, *þæt pū*, etc.

⁸ On the omission of final *t*, see 95.

⁹ See *clif*, and 20.

¹⁰ See 156. *m*.

¹¹ An instance of an originally long vowel rendered short by the gemination of the following consonant.

¹² The Greek has *διατροφήν*, *sustenance* (p. 240).

¹³ Adj.

- wīs on gewitte; wordhord¹ onlēac¹: —
 “Ne gedafenað² pē, nū pē Dryhten geaf³
 welan ond wiste ond woruldspēde,
 ðæt ðū ondsware⁴ mid oferhygdum,
 5 sēce sārcwide⁵; sēle bið æghwām [320]
 pæt hē ēaðmēdum⁶ ęllorfūsne
 oncnāwe cūðlice, swā pæt Crīst bebēad,
 pēoden prymfæst. Wē his pēgnas⁷ synd,
 gecoren tō cęmpum. Hē is Cyning on⁸ riht,⁸
 10 Wealdend ond Wyrhta wuldorprymmes, [325]
 ān ēce God eallra gesceafta,
 swā hē ealle befēhð ānes⁹ a cræfte^a
 hefon¹⁰ ond eorðan a hālgum mihtum^a,
 sigora sēlost.¹¹ Hē ðæt sylfa cwæð,
 15 Fæder folca¹² gehwæs, ond ūs fēran hēt [330]
 geond ginne grund gāsta¹³ strēonan: —
 ‘Farað¹⁴ nū geond ealle eorðan scēatas¹⁵
 emne swā wīde swā wæter bebūgeð,¹⁶

¹ That is, *spoke*. ² See 190.

³ Translate, *hath given*.

⁴ Acc. sing.

⁵ Inst. sing., parallel with **mid oferhygdum** (174).

⁶ Perhaps adv. (72).

⁷ When did the word *thane* cease to be employed in literature?

⁸ Either = *rightfully, by rights*, or perhaps an adj. **onriht** = *legitimate, rightful*.

⁹ = *sole*, lit. *of one (alone)*.

¹⁰ Unusual for **hefon**.

¹¹ One is inclined to substitute **sęllend**, *bestower*, which occurs three times with **sigora** in the poetry, whereas **sigora sēlost** is otherwise unknown.

¹² Dependent on **gehwæs**.

¹³ See 156. *n*; 199. 1.

¹⁴ An interesting parallel to this paraphrase (a free one even in the Greek original) of Matt. 10. 1 ff. is found in the poem of *Christ*, 480–489.

¹⁵ MS. **sceattas**.

¹⁶ Cf. p. 201, l. 1.

- oððe stędewangas strāete¹ gelicgaþ²;
 bodiað æfter burgum beorhtne gelēafan [335]
 ofer foldan fæðm; ic ēow freoðo healde.³
 Ne ðurfan⁴ gē on þā fōre frætwe lādan,⁵
 5 gold ne seolfor; ic ēow gōda gehwæs⁶
 on ēowerne āgenne dōm ēst āhwette.⁷
 Nū ðū seolfa⁸ miht sīð ūserne⁹ [340]
 gehyran hygeþancol¹⁰; ic sceal hraðe cunnan,
 hwæt ðū ūs tō¹¹ duguðum¹¹ gedōn wille.”
 10 Him þā ondswarode ēce¹² Dryhten: —
 “Gif gē syndon pegnas þæs¹³ þe prym āhōf
 ofer middangeard, swā gē mē sęcgaþ, [345]
 ond gē gehēoldon¹⁴ þæt ēow se Hālgas bēad,
 þonne ic ēow mid gefēan fērian wille
 15 ofer brimstrēamas, swā gē bēnan¹⁵ sint.”
 þā in cēol stigon¹⁶ collenfyrhðe,¹⁷
 ellenrōfe; æghwylcum wearð [350]
 on mērefaroðe mōd geblissod.
 Ðā ofer yða geswing Andreas ongann
 20 mērelīðendum¹⁸ miltsa¹⁹ biddan²⁰

¹ Acc. sing. ² = border.

³ Future sense.

⁴ For **ðurfon** (131).

⁵ Not *lead*, but *carry* (Gr.

βαστάζετε).

⁶ Dependent on **ēst**.

⁷ = *supply*; not the normal sense of the word.

⁸ See **self**, and **21**.

⁹ See **81. 1**.

¹⁰ Agrees with **ðū**.

¹¹ = *for (our) benefit*, lit. *bene-*

fits; Gr. τὴν φιλανθρωπίαν, (as a)

kindness. ¹² MS. **ēce**.

¹³ = *of that one, of him*.

¹⁴ Translate, *have kept, observed*.

¹⁵ = *petitioners*.

¹⁶ So in Latin: *ascendere navem*.

¹⁷ **fyrhðe** irregular for **ferhðe**.

¹⁸ = *for the seafarers*.

¹⁹ See **156. b**.

²⁰ **Biddan** here takes three cases after it. Explain.

wuldres Aldor, ƿnd ƿus wordum cwæð:—
 “Forgife ƿē ^aDryhten^a dōmweorðunga — [355]
 willan in worulde, ƿnd in wuldre blæd —
^aMeotud manncynnes^a, swā ðū mē hafast¹
 5 on ƿyssum siðfæte sybbe gecƿðed!”

The Voyage.—Storm at Sea.

Gesæt him ƿā se hālgas Holmwearde² nēah,
 æðele be Æðelum. Æfre ic ne hƿrde [360]
 ƿon³ cymlicor cēol gehladenne⁴
 hēahgestrēonum. ^bHæleð^b insæton,
 10 ^bƿēodnas^b ƿrymfulle, ^bƿegnas^b wlitige.
 Ðā reordode rīce ƿēoden,
 ēce, ælmihtig, heht⁵ his ^aengel^a gān, [365]
^amārne maguƿegn^a, ƿnd mēte syllan,⁶
 frēfran fēasceaftne⁷ ofer flōdes wylm,
 15 ƿæt hīe ƿē⁸ ēað⁹ mihton ofer ƿða geƿring
 drohtað ādrēogan. ƿā ^bgedrēfed^b wearð,
^bonhrēred^b hwælmere; hornfisc plegode, [370]
 glād¹⁰ geond gārsecg, ƿnd se grāga mæw

¹ Is this the normal form?

² Possibly (with Grein) =
guardian of the tiller or helm;
 but see Vocabulary.

³ = *than that*, inst. of *ðæt*.

⁴ This sentence seems to be
 imitated from *Bēow.* 38–39:—

Ne hƿrde ic cymlicor cēol gegyrwan
 hildewāpnūm and heaðowædum.

Note that the past participle is
 substituted in the passage from

Andreas for the infinitive of *Bēowulf*. The former construction
 is unusual.

⁵ Anglian (probably identical
 with the original) form for *hēt*
 (110).

⁶ For *sellan*.

⁷ Meaning Andrew, though the
 next line has *hīe*.

⁸ For *ðȳ* (84).

⁹ For *ieð*.

¹⁰ See *glīdan*.

wælgīfre¹ wand; wedercandel swearc,²
 windas wēoxon,³ wāgas grundon,
 strēamas styredon, strēngas gurron,⁴
 wædo gewætte⁵; wæteręsa stōd⁶ [375]
 5 prēata prȳðum. þegnas wurdon

¹ Agrees with **māw**.

² See **sweorcan**.

³ There is no hint of any extraordinary commotion, much less of a storm, in the original. Of all this long description there is nothing except, "They were troubled because of the sea." Brooke says (p. 416): "The storm is now described in words that come, one after another, short, heavy, and springing, like the blows of the waves, and the gusts of wind. We know as we read that the writer had seen the thing."

⁴ See **georran**.

⁵ Part of Baskervill's note, in his edition, is: "**wædo gewætte**, *the wet weeds (sails); wet with waters*, Kemble; *waves swelled*, Grein; *replebatur aquis, vadium madefiebat*, Grimm; **wædo gewætte** is in apposition with **strengas**." **Wædo** (with short æ) might be nom. (acc.) plur. of **wæd**, *sea*. But the phrase is obscure.

⁶ A peculiar use of **standan**, to indicate motion rather than rest. In Mod. Eng. this general

sense is represented by phrases like 'stand back,' 'stand off from shore,' 'stand up,' 'stand out,' etc. In OE. poetry, **standan** is frequently used with **ęge** or **ęgesa** (similarly in ON.); thus in Ps. 104. 33 (105. 38), *cecidit timor eorum super eos: him þær ęgesa . . . stōd*, where the King James version has, *the fear of them fell upon them*. The transformation of this idiom into *stand in awe of* is interesting. Note that the dative is still retained in this quotation, of about A.D. 1380 (*Sir Ferumbras* 408): "Of whame *men stondeð aye*" [*i.e.* awe]. However, *men* being eventually understood as nom. in such a sentence as the last (cf. *Towneley Mysteries*, 305 [ab. 1460]: "*I stand great aghe*"), *in* was supplied before *awe*, as in this from Lydgate (ab. 1413): "Of theyre lord and god to stande *in awen*." See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *awe*. The Scandinavian influence in Middle English confirmed the idiom, and assisted in its development.

- ācolmōde; ænig¹ ne¹ wēnde,²
 pæt hē lifgende land begēte,
 pāra³ þe mid Andreas on ēagorstrēam
 cēol gesōhte. Næs⁴ him cūð þā gýt, [380]
 5 hwā pām sǣflotan sund⁵ wisode.
 Him þā ^ase hālga^a on holmwege
 ofer ārgeblond ^aAndreas^a þā gīt,
^aþegn pēodenhold,^a þanc gesægde
 rīcum Rǣsboran, þā hē gereordod wæs:— [385]
 10 “Ðē pissa swǣsenda⁶ ^bsōðfæst Meotud^b
^blifes Lēohtfruma^b lēan forgilde,
^bweoruda Waldend,^b qnd þē wist⁷ gife
 heofonlicne hlāf, swā ðū ^chyldo^c wið mē
 ofer firigendstrēam⁸ ^cfrēode^c gecyðdest! [390]
 15 Nū synt geprēade ^dþegnas mīne^d,
^dgeonge gūðrincas^d; ^egārsecg^e hlymmeð,
^egeofon⁹ gēotende^e; grund¹⁰ is onhrēred,¹¹
 dēope¹² gedrēfed; ^fduguð^f¹³ is geswenced,

¹ Translate, *no one*. ² See 4.

³ Dependent on *ænig*.

⁴ For lines 4–14 the Greek has:
 “Andrew answered and said unto
 Jesus, not knowing that it was
 Jesus, The Lord give thee heav-
 enly bread from his kingdom.”

⁵ = either *ocean* or *course*, prob-
 ably the latter; cf. p. 226, l. 2.

⁶ See 153. *e*.

⁷ = *as food*.

⁸ For *firgenstrēam*.

⁹ MS. *heofon*; but this seems
 like an echo of *Bēow*. 1690–91:—

syððan flōd ofslōh,
 gifen gēotende

(= *streaming sea*; *rushing sea*,
 Garnett; *gurgling currents*, Hall;
rushing ocean, Earle).

¹⁰ Probably = *sea*; an unusual
 sense. Cf. p. 223, l. 1.

¹¹ See p. 218, ll. 16, 17.

¹² Adv.

¹³ Related to Ger. *tugend* (cf.
 30), OE. *ðugan* (128), and Mod.
 Eng. *doughty*. There is an inter-
 esting OE. phrase, *ðuguð* and
geoguð (cf. *Bēow*. 160, etc.),

f^fmōdigra mægen^f myclum¹ gebysgod." [395]

Him of holme² oncwæð hæleða Scyppend:—

“Læt nū gefērian ^aflotan^a ūserne

^alid^a tō lande ofer lagufæsten,

5 qnd þonne gebīdan³ beornas þīne,

āras on earde, hwænne⁴ þū eft cyme.” [400]

Ēdre⁵ him þā ^beorlas^b āgēfan⁶ qndsware,

^bþegnas prohtearde^b—þafigan⁷ ne woldon,

ðæt hīe forlēton æt lides stefnan⁸

10 lēofne lārēow, qnd him⁹ land curon—

+ “Hwider hweorfað wē hlāfordlēase, [405]

gēomormōde, Gode¹⁰ orfeorme,

synnum¹¹ wunde, gif wē swīcað þē¹²?

Wē¹³ bīoð ^clāðe^c on landa gehwām,

15 folcum ^cfracoðe^c, þonne fira bearn,

ellenrōfe, æht¹⁴ besittap, [410]

which almost = *knights and squires*. The word is worth a little study.

¹ See 72.

² Perhaps mistaken for *helman*, the *helm* of the ship.

³ Construe, *læt þīne beornas gebīdan*.

⁴ Here = *until*.

⁵ For *ædre*.

⁶ For *āgēafon*. ⁷ See 18.

⁸ See *stefna*, a collateral form of *stefn*.

⁹ See 184. *a*. ¹⁰ See 165. 1.

¹¹ See 174. *d*. ¹² See 164. *o*.

¹³ This reply is original with the poet, and exhibits a characteristic

trait of our ancestors,—loyalty to a rightful lord. See Gummere, *Germanic Origins*, pp. 261–269; to the citations given there might be added the account of Cynewulf and Cyneheard, from the Saxon Chronicle for 755. One sentence from it will illustrate: “Qnd þā cuædon hīe þæt him nænig mæg lēofra nære þonne hiera hlāford, qnd hīe næfre his banan folgian noldon.”

¹⁴ *Æht* (sometimes *eaht*) is not to be confounded with *æht* (4); *æht besittan* = *sit in council*; here almost = *consult, discuss, debate*.

hwylc hira sēlost¹ symle gelæste
 hlāforde² æt hilde, þonne hand ond rōnd
 on beaduwange billum forgrunden³
 æt nīðplegan nearu prōwedon.”

Andrew relates Christ's Stilling of the Tempest.

- 5 þā reordade ^arice pēoden^a, [415]
^awærfæst Cining^a word stunde⁴ āhōf: —
 “Gif ðū þegn sīe þrymsittendes
 Wuldorcyninges, swā ðū worde becwist,
 reçe þā gerȳnu, hū hē reordberend⁵
 10 lārde under lyfte. Lang is þes sīðfæt [420]
 ofer fealuwne flōd: frēfra þīne
 mæcgas on mōde. Mycel is nū gēna
 lād ofer lagustrēam, land swiðe feorr
 tō gesēcanne⁶; sand is geblōnden,⁷

¹ Adv. (76).

² In Carlyle's *Past and Present* (Bk. 3, Chap. 10) occurs this piece of etymologizing: “Ironcutter, at the end of the campaign, did not turn off his thousand fighters, but said to them: ‘Noble fighters, this is the land we have gained; be I Lord in it, — what we will call *Law-ward*, maintainer and keeper of Heaven's *Laws*: be I *Law-ward*, or in brief orthoepy *Lord* in it, and be ye Loyal Men around me in it.’” Again (Chap. 13): “If no pious *Law-ward* would remember it, always some pious

Lady (‘*Hlaf-dig*,’ Benefactress, ‘*Loaf-giveress*,’ they say she is, — blessings on her beautiful heart!) was there.” So Ruskin, in *Sesame and Lilies* (Of Queens' Gardens): “Lady means ‘bread-giver’ or ‘loaf-giver,’ and Lord means ‘maintainer of laws.’”

Are these etymologies correct?

³ MS. *foregrunden*.

⁴ = *at this time, now*.

⁵ Acc. plur. (43. 6). See p. 213, note 1.

⁶ Cf. our modern ‘far to seek.’

⁷ Cf. *Æn.* 1. 107: “furit æstus harenis.”

- grund¹ wið grēote. God ēaðe mæg [425]
 hēaðoliðendum² helpe³ gefrēmmān.⁴”
 Ongan pā glēawlice ^agingran sīne^a
^awuldorspēdige weras^a wordum trymman:—
 5 “Gē pæt gehogodon, pā gē on holm stigon,
 pæt gē on fāra⁵ folc feorh⁶ gelæddon,⁶ [430]
 qnd for Dryhtnes lufan⁷ dēað prōwodon⁸
 on Ælmyrena⁹ ēðelrīce,
 sāwle¹⁰ gesealdon.⁸ Ic pæt sylfa wāt,
 10 pæt ūs gescyldeð Scyppend engla,
 weoruda Dryhten. Wæteregesa sceal, [435]
 geðyð¹¹ qnd geðrēatod purh prȳðcining,
 lagu lācende līðra wyrðan.¹²
 Swā¹³ gesæelde¹⁴ iū, pæt wē on sēbāte
 15 ofer waruðgewinn wæda¹⁵ cunnedan
 faroðrīdende: frēcne pūhton [440]
 egle ēalāda; ēagorstrēamas
 bēoton bordstæðu; brim oft oncwæð,
 yð oðerre.¹⁶ Hwīlum uppāstōd

¹ Probably = *sea*. Cf. p. 220, note 10.

² Perhaps for **hēahðo-**, in the sense of *the high sea*; cf. Lat. *altum*. ³ Acc. sing.

⁴ It is not till this point is reached, in the Greek original, that the journey is begun!

⁵ From **fāh** (43. 3).

⁶ Periphrastic, something like our ‘directed your steps.’

⁷ From the weak **lufe**.

⁸ Optative.

⁹ *Allmurk(y)* = *Ethiopians*; but the poet is here mistaken. See the prefatory remarks, p. 210.

¹⁰ Here = *life*. ¹¹ Cf. p. 227, l. 19.

¹² For **weorðan**.

¹³ Brooke remarks (p. 417): “It is a happy situation which the poet conceives, for Andrew, not knowing that Christ himself is seated beside him in the stern, tells Christ a story of Christ.” Cf. Mk. 4. 36 ff.

¹⁴ See **190**. ¹⁵ See **156. d**.

¹⁶ Dat. sing. Cf. Ps. 42. 7.

- of brimes bōsme on bātes fæðm
 egesa ofer yðlid. Ælmihtig pær, [445]
 Meotud mancynnes, on męreþyssan
 beorht bāsnode. Beornas wurdon
 5 forhte on mōde; friðes¹ wilnedon,
 miltsa¹ tō² Mærum.³ pā sēo męnigo ongan
 clypian on cēole; Cyning sōna ārās, [450]
 eŋgla Ēadgifa yðum⁴ stilde,
 wāteres wælmum; windas prēade;
 10 sǣ sessade,⁵ smylte wurdon
 męrestrēama gemeotu.⁶ Ðā ūre mōd āhlōh,⁷
 syððan wē gesēgon⁸ under swegles gang [455]
 windas ƿnd wāgas ƿnd wāterbrōgan
 forhte gewordne for Frēan⁹ egesan.
 15 For-þan ic ēow tō sōðe sęgan wille,
 þæt nǣfre¹⁰ forlǣteð lifgende God
 eorl on eorðan, gif his ęllen dēah.¹¹ [460]
 Swā hlēoðrode hālig cęmpa
 ðēawum¹² geþancul; þegnas lārde
 20 ēadig ōreta,¹³ eorlas trymede,
 ōð-ðæt hīe sęmninga slǣp oferēode

¹ See 156. *a*.² Here = *from*.³ Meaning Christ.⁴ See 164. *i*.⁵ This word does not otherwise occur, but the meaning is obvious. There is a noun *sess*, meaning *seat*.⁶ See *gemet*, and 20.⁷ See 107.⁸ Anglian form of *gesāwon* (106).⁹ See 153. *d*.¹⁰ This gnomic sentence resembles that in *Bēow.* 572–573. Perhaps it is imitated from the Latin proverb, “Fortune favors the brave.”¹¹ See 128.¹² See 174. *d*.¹³ Usually *ōretta*.

mēðe¹ be mæste. Mære sweoðerade, [465]
^aȳða ongin^a eft oncyrde,
^ahrēoh holmpracu^a. þā þām hālgan wearð
 æfter gryrehwile gāst geblissod.

Andrew desires Instruction in Seamanship.

- 5 Ongan þā reordigan rædum snottor,
 wīs on gewitte wordlocan onspēonn²: — [470]
 “Næfre ic sǣlidan³ sēlran mētte,
 mǣcræftigran, þæs-ðe⁴ mē ȳnceð,
 rōwend rōfran, rædsnotterran,
 10 wordes wīsrān. Ic wille þē,
 eorl unforcūð, ānre⁵ nū gēna [475]
 bēne biddan: þēah ic þē ^abēaga^{a6} lýt,
^asincweorðunga^a, syllan mihte,⁷
^afætedsinces^a, wolde ic frēondscipe,⁸
 15 þēoden ȳrymfæst, þīnne, gif ic mehte,⁷
 begitan gōdne. Þæs⁹ ðū gife hlēotest¹⁰ [480]
 hāligne hyht on heofonȳrymme,
 gif ðū lidwērigum lārna þīnra
 ēste¹¹ wyrðest. Wolde ic ānes¹² tō ðē,
 20 cynerōf hǣleð, cræftes nēosan, —
 ðæt ðū mē getǣhte, nū þē tīr¹³ Cyning [485]
 ȳnd miht forgef,¹⁴ manna Scyppend,

¹ Agrees with **hie**.

² See **onspannan**.

³ Acc. sing.

⁴ Here = *so far as, as* (157. 1).

⁵ See 156. *b*. ⁶ See 154. *a*.

⁷ Variants of **meahte**.

⁸ Object of **begitan**.

⁹ = *for that*.

¹⁰ Future sense.

¹¹ See 165. ¹² See 156. *m*.

¹³ Acc. sing.

¹⁴ Variant of **forgeaf**.

- hū ðū ^awægflotan^a wære bestēmdon,¹
^asāhengeste^a sund² wīsigē.
 Ic wæs on³ gifeðe³ iū ƿnd nū
 syxtȳne sīðum⁴ on sǣbāte, [490]
 5 ^bmēre^b hrērendum⁵ mundum⁶ frēorig,⁷
^bēagorstrēamas^b — is ðys⁸ āne⁹ mā —,
 swā¹⁰ ic āfre ne geseah āenigne mann,
 prȳðbearn hǣleð,¹¹ þē gelīcne
 stēoran ofer stǣfnan. Strēamwelm hwileð,¹² [495]
 10 bēatað¹³ brimstæðo; is þes bāt ful scrīd,
 færeð fāmigheals fugole¹⁴ gelīcost,
 glīdeð on geofone. Ic georne wāt,
 þæt ic āfre ne geseah ofer ȳðlāde,¹⁵
 on sǣleodan¹⁶ syllicran¹⁷ cræft. [500]
 15 Is þon¹⁸ geliccost,¹⁹ swā²⁰ hē²¹ on landscape²²

¹ For **bestēmdan**, the (weak) past part., according to Wülker. It would then agree with **wægflotan** (dat. sing.).

² See p. 213, note 4, and p. 220, l. 5. ³ = *by chance*.

⁴ See 176. 1.

⁵ Governs **mēre** (and **ēagorstrēamas**), and agrees with **mundum**. ⁶ = *in hands*?

⁷ Agrees with **ic**.

⁸ For **ðis**, neut. nom. sing.

⁹ Weak; agrees with **ðys**. *This makes another journey*, added to the sixteen. The Greek has, "Behold, this is the seventeenth." Brooke (p. 414) attributes this to the OE. poet. ¹⁰ Almost = *yet*.

¹¹ It is unusual to have two synonymous nouns thus joined.

¹² See **hwelan**.

¹³ Unusual ending of 3 sing.

¹⁴ Cf. *Odyssey* 7. 36: "Their ships are swift as the flight of a bird." See also *Od.* 13. 86–87; 11. 125.

¹⁵ MS. **ȳðlāfe**, which would mean *sand*, that which is *left* by the waves. ¹⁶ See **sǣlida**.

¹⁷ For **sel-**, contracted from **seld-**, the root of *seldom*.

¹⁸ = *to that*.

¹⁹ For **gelicost**; see l. 11.

²⁰ = *as if*. ²¹ = *the boat* (**bāt**).

²² = simply *land*; the Greek has: ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς.

stille stande, þær hine ^astorm^a ne mæg,
^awind^a āwēcgan, nē wæterflōdas
 breccan brōndstæfne; hwæðere on brim snēoweð¹
 snel under² segle.² Ðū eart seolfa geong, [505]
 5 wīgendra hlēo, nālas wintrum frōd:
 hafast þē on fyrhðe, faroðlācende,³
 eorles ƿndsware, æghwylces⁴ canst
 worda⁵ for⁶ worulde wīslīc andgit.⁷”

The Pilot recognizes God's Presence with Andrew.

Him ƿndswarode ēce Dryhten: — [510]
 10 “Oft þæt gesæleð, þæt wē on sālāde,
^ascipum^a under⁸ scealcum, þonne scēor⁹ cymeð,
 brecað¹⁰ ofer bæðweg ^abrimhengestum^a.
 Hwīlum ūs on ƿðum earfoðlice
 gesæleð on sāwe,¹¹ þēh¹² wē siðnesan [515]
 15 frēcne gefēran. Flōðwylm ne mæg
 manna ænigne ofer¹³ Meotudes ēst
 lungre gelettan¹⁴; āh¹⁵ him līfes geweald
 sē ðe brimu bindeð, brūne ƿða
 ðƿð and prēatað.¹⁶ Hē ƿeodum sceal [520]
 20 racian mid rihte, sē ðe rodor āhōf

¹ MS. **snoweð**.

² So yet, *under sail*.

³ See **152**.

⁴ Dependent on **andgit**.

⁵ Dependent on **æghwylces**.

⁶ Almost = *in*.

⁷ Object of **canst** (**130**).

⁸ = *among*; but this half-line
 15 a little obscure.

⁹ See **18**.

¹⁰ Almost = *break away*.

¹¹ Irreg. dat.; usually **sā**.

¹² For **ðēah**. ¹³ = *against*.

¹⁴ Cf. *Hamlet* 1. 4. 85: “I’ll
 make a ghost of him that *lets*
 me.”

¹⁵ See **127**; here reflexive.

¹⁶ See note 13, p. 226.

- ƿnd gefæstnode folmum¹ sīnum,
 worhte and wrēðede, wuldras² fylde
 beorhtne boldwelan; swā geblēdsod wearð
 engla ēðel ƿurh his ānes miht. [525]
 5 For-ƿan is ^agesȳne^a, sōð³ ^aorgete^a,
 cūð ^aoncnāwen^a, ƿæt ðū Cyninges eart
 ƿegen geƿungen ƿrymsittendes⁴;
 for-ƿan ƿē sōna ^bsāholm^b oncnēow,
^bgārsecges begang^b, ƿæt ðū gife hāfdes⁵ [530]
 10 hāliges gāstes. ^cHærn^c eft onwand,
^cārȳða geblond^c; egesa gestilde,
 wīdfæðme wæg; wædu swæðorodon
 seoðƿan hīe ongēton ƿæt ðē God hāfde
wære⁶ bewunden,⁷ sē ðe wuldres blæd [535]
 15 gestaðolade strangum mihtum.”

* * * * *

Andrew is carried to the City.⁸

- ƿus Andreas ƿndlangne dæg⁹
 hērede¹⁰ hlēoðorewidum Hāliges lāre,
 oð-ðæt hine sēmninga slāp oferēode¹¹ [820]
 on hrƿnrāde Heofoncynninge nēh.¹²
 20 ƿā ^agelædan^a hēt¹³ lifes Brytta

¹ See 174.

² Perhaps Anglian genitive;
used for the inst. after **fylde**, as
in the poem of *Christ*, ll. 407–408.

³ Here a noun.

⁴ Agrees with **Cyninges**.

⁵ Original form (95).

⁶ = *with his covenant*.

⁷ MS. **bewunde**.

⁸ Note the break here (ll. 537–
817). The interval is occupied by
discourses.

⁹ See 170. ¹⁰ MS. **berede**.

¹¹ See p. 224, l. 21.

¹² For **nēah**.

¹³ Construe, **hēt . . . sīne en-**

ofer ȳða geþræc ęnglas sīne,
 fæðmum ^afęrigean^a on Fæder¹ wære
 lēofne mid lissum ofer lagufæsten.² [825]

* * * * * * *

Lēton pone hālgan be hęrestræte
 5 swefan on sybbe under swegles hlēo,
 blīðne³ bīdan burhwealle nēh,⁴
 his nīðhętum, nihtlangne fyrst,
 ōð-þæt Dryhten forlēt dæg-candle [835]
 scīre scīnan. Sceadu sweðerodon

10 wqnn under wolcnum. þā cōm wederes blæst,⁵
 hādor heofonlēoma ofer hofu blican.
 Onwōc þā wīges⁶ heard, wang scēawode;
 fore burggeatum ^abeorgas^a stēape, [840]

^ahleoðu^{a7} hlifodon; ymbe hārne stān
 15 tigelfāgan trafu,⁸ torras stōdon,
 windige weallas. þā se wīs⁹ oncnēow
 þæt hē Marmedonia mægðe hæfde
 sīðe¹⁰ gesōhte, swā him sylf bebēad, [845]
 þā¹¹ him foregescrāf, Fæder mancynnes.

glas . . . gelædan lēofne . . .
 ofer lagufæsten . . . on Fæder
 wære.

¹ Genitive.

² Here follow four lines which are probably corrupt, and are therefore omitted.

³ = *kindly, amiable*.

⁴ Is construed both with *burhwealle* and *nīðhętum*.

⁵ Not *blast*.

⁶ See 155.

⁷ See *hlið*, and 20.

⁸ See 47. 4.

⁹ For *wīsa* (55).

¹⁰ See 174. *a*.

¹¹ MS. *þam*. Translate, *when*.

Andrew's Disciples relate their Adventure.

- Geseh¹ hē pā on grēote² gingran³ sīne,
 beornas beadurōfe, bīryhte⁴ him
 swefan on slāpe. Hē sōna ongann
 wīgend wēccēan, ƿnd worde cwæð:— [850]
- 5 “Ic ēow sēcgan mæg sōð⁵ orgete,⁶
 þæt ūs gystran-dæge⁷ on geofones strēam⁸
 ofer ārwelan æðeling fērede.
 In pām cēole wæs cyninga Wuldor,⁹
 Waldend werðēode¹⁰; ic his word oncnēow, [855]
- 10 þēh hē his mægwlite bemiðen hæfde.”
 Him pā æðelingas ƿndsweorodon
 geonge ^agēncwidum^a, ^agāstgerȳnum^a:—
 “Wē pē, Andreas, ēaðe geeyðað
 sīð ūserne, þæt ðū sylfa miht [860]

¹ For **geseah**.

² Gr. ‘on the earth’ (*ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ*).

³ See 169.

⁴ The only occurrence of this word; **ætrihte**, similarly formed, is found three times in poetry.

⁵ Noun in acc.

⁶ Agrees with **sōð**.

⁷ See 176.

⁸ Cf. the ‘stream of Oceanus,’ *Od.* 11. 21, and often in Homer.

⁹ To this kenning there are several analogies in Greek and Latin. Thus Ulysses is referred to as ‘great glory of the Achaians,’ *Il.* 9. 673, and elsewhere; the bull is called the ‘glory of the

herd’ by Ovid (*A. A.* 1. 290); and *decus* is used by Virgil(?) almost exactly as here, — *decus Asteriæ* (*Cul.* 15) for *decens* or *pulchra Asteria*, like **cyninga wuldor** for **wuldorlic cyning**. An interesting mediæval parallel is the line by Hilary, a disciple of Abelard, and probably an Englishman, cited by Lenient, *La Satire en France au Moyen Age*, p. 20, note: “Papa summus, paparum gloria.” So he apostrophizes a girl with “Ave, splendor puelarum” (Wright, *Biog. Brit. Lit.*, Anglo-Norman Period, p. 93).

¹⁰ MS. **weorðode**.

ongitan glēawlice gāstgehygdum.
 Ūs sēwērige slāp oferēode;
 pā cōmon earnas¹ ofer y̅ða wylm
 faran² on flyhte feðerum hrēmige,³
 5 ūs of slāpendum sāwle ābrugdon, [865]
 mid gefēan feredon flyhte⁴ on lyfte
 brehtmum blīðe,⁵ beorhte⁶ qnd liðe⁶;
 lissum⁷ lufodon qnd in lofe wunedon,
 pær wæs singāl sang qnd⁸ swegles gong,
 10 wlitig weoroda hēap⁹ qnd wuldres prēat.¹⁰ [870]
 Ūtan ymbe Æðelne¹¹ englas stōdon,
 pegnas ymb þēoden þūsendmælum;
 hēredon on hēhðo hālgan stefne
 dryhtna Dryhten.¹²”

¹ Related to Gr. *δρυς*, a bird.

² Not in MS., but supplied for the verse structure.

³ See 174. d. Like Gr. *γαῦρος*; Archilochus has, *exulting in his curls*. ⁴ Inst. (174. a).

⁵ = *blithe, joyful*. Note the rime and assonance in these lines.

⁶ Nom. plur.; or possibly adverbs. Will the last consonants permit of associating *liðe* with Germ. *gelind*?

⁷ How may this contain the stem (*lið-*) of the last word (34)?

⁸ Possibly miswritten for *geond*, or perhaps the rare preposition *and* (= *in, in presence of*); this is on the supposition that *swegles gong* means *revolution*

of the sky, cf. p. 224, l. 12. The music of the spheres is even suggested, though hardly in the poet's mind. *Swegel* may sometimes mean *music*, and possibly so here, but then one hardly knows how to translate *gong*.

⁹ So in Shakespeare: *Rich. III.* 2. 1. 53, “Amongst this princely *heap*”; *Jul. Cæs.* 1. 3. 23, “There were drawn Upon a *heap* a hundred ghastly women.”

¹⁰ A Hebraism; *multitude of glory*, nearly = *glorious multitude*.

¹¹ Jesus, according to the original.

¹² Biblical expression; see Rev. 17. 14; 19. 16.

APPENDIXES.

APPENDIX I.

SOME USEFUL BOOKS FOR THE STUDY OF OLD ENGLISH.

I. A SELECTION FOR THE BEGINNER.

Political and Social History.

GREEN, *Short History of the English People*, pp. 1-66.

FREEMAN, *Old English History*. New York, 1876.

TRAILL, *Social England*, Vol. I. London and New York, 1894.
(Chapter II.)

Religious and Cultural History.

LINGARD, *The Anglo-Saxon Church*. London, 1858, 2 vols.

BRIGHT, *Early English Church History*. 2d ed. New York, 1888.

TURNER, *History of the Anglo-Saxons*. London, 1852, 3 vols.

GILES, *Translation of Bede's Ecclesiastical History of England, and the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. (Bohn Library.)

Literary History.

TEN BRINK, *Early English Literature*. New York, 1883. (The best.)

BROOKE, *History of Early English Literature*. New York, 1892.
(Contains several pieces of translation from Old English poetry.)

—, *English Literature from the Beginning to the Norman Conquest*. New York, 1898.

MORLEY, *English Writers*, Vol. II. New York, 1888. (Contains translations.)

Biography.

ASSER, *Life of Alfred*. (In *Six Old English Chronicles*, Bohn Library.)

WHITE, *Ælfric: A New Study of his Life and Writings*. (Yale Studies in English, II.) New York, 1898.

Biography. (*Continued.*)

PLUMMER, *Life of Bede*. (As below, under **Religious and Cultural History**.)

BEDE, *Account of Cædmon*. (In *Ecclesiastical History*, Bk. IV., Chap. XXIV.)

For reference:

Dictionary of Christian Biography. London, 1877-87, 4 vols.
Dictionary of National Biography: A-Wakefield. London, 1885-99, 58 vols.

Translations.

HALL, *Beowulf, translated into Modern Metres*. 2d ed. Boston, 1892.

EARLE, *The Deeds of Beowulf*. New York, 1892.

GARNETT, *Beowulf, and The Fight at Finnsburg*. 3d ed. Boston, 1889. (Nearly literal; not so enjoyable as the other two, but more trustworthy in details.)

TENNYSON, *The Battle of Brunanburh*. (In *Works*.)

GARNETT, *Elene; Judith; Athelstan, or the Fight at Brunanburh; and Byrhtnoth, or the Fight at Maldon*. Boston, 1889. (Nearly literal.)

ROOT, *Andreas: The Legend of St. Andrew*. (*Yale Studies in English*, VII.) New York, 1899.

WHITMAN, *Cynewulf's Christ, translated into Modern Prose*. Boston, 1899. (Forthcoming.)

[See also under **Literary History** and **Poetical Texts**.]

Readers.

SWEET, *Anglo-Saxon Reader*. 7th ed. Oxford and New York, 1894.

BRIGHT, *Anglo-Saxon Reader*. 3d ed. New York, 1894.

ZUPITZA-MACLEAN, *Old and Middle English Reader*. New York, 1893.

BASKERVILL AND HARRISON, *Anglo-Saxon Prose Reader*. New York, 1898.

Poetical Texts.

COOK, *Judith, with Introduction, Translation, Complete Glossary, and various Indexes, and an Autotype Facsimile*. 2d ed. Boston, 1889. (Pamphlet edition, 1893.)

Poetical Texts. (*Continued.*)

ZUPITZA-KENT, *Elene*. Boston, 1889.

WYATT, *Beowulf*. New York, 1894.

COOK, *The Christ of Cynewulf*. Boston and London, 1899.
(Forthcoming.)

Prose Texts.

BRIGHT, *Gospel of St. Luke*. Oxford and New York, 1893.

SWEET, *Selected Homilies of Ælfric*. Oxford and New York,
1885.

—, *Extracts from Alfred's Orosius*. Oxford and New York,
1886.

BOSWORTH AND WARING, *Gothic and Anglo-Saxon Gospels, with
the Versions of Wycliffe and Tyndale*. London, 1888.

COOK, *Biblical Quotations in Old English Prose Writers, Vol. I*.
New York and London, 1898. (From Alfred and Ælfric.)

History of the English Language.

EMERSON, *History of the English Language*. New York, 1894.

—, *Brief History of the English Language*. New York and
London, 1896.

LOUNSBURY, *History of the English Language*. Revised ed. New
York, 1894.

NESFIELD, *Historical English*. New York, 1899.

CHAMPNEYS, *History of English*. New York, 1893.

COOK, *English Language*, in *Johnson's Cyclopædia*. New York,
1896.

Etymology.

SKEAT, *Principles of English Etymology: Series I., The Native
Element*. New York, 1887.

[See also **Dictionaries.**]

Grammar.

SIEVERS-COOK, *Old English Grammar*. 2d ed. Boston, 1887.

WYATT, *Elementary Old English Grammar*. Cambridge, 1897.

HENRY, *Short Comparative Grammar of English and German*.
New York, 1894.

Phonetics.

SWEET, *Primer of Phonetics*. Oxford and New York, 1890.

BELL, *English Visible Speech for the Million*. London and New York.

—, *Manual of Vocal Physiology and Visible Speech*. New York.

[Any one of these three.]

Dictionaries.

HALL, *Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*. New York, 1894.

SWEET, *Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon*. New York and London, 1897.

MURRAY AND BRADLEY, *New English Dictionary: A-Germanizing, H-Hod*. Oxford and New York, 1884-99. (Cited as *New Eng. Dict.*)

II. A SELECTION FOR THE ADVANCED STUDENT.

Bibliography.

WÜLKER, *Grundriss zur Geschichte der Angelsächsischen Litteratur*. Leipzig, 1885.

KÖRTING, *Grundriss der Geschichte der Englischen Litteratur*. 2d ed. Münster i. W., 1893.

Jahresbericht . . . der Germanischen Philologie. Berlin (later Leipzig), 1879-. (Section XV. (later XVI.) is devoted to English.)

SONNENSCHIN, *The Best Books*, pp. 952-961. 2d ed. New York, 1891.

—, *Reader's Guide to Contemporary Literature*. London and New York, 1895.

Political and Social History.

KEMBLE, *The Saxons in England*. London, 1876, 2 vols.

LAPPENBERG, *History of England under the Anglo-Saxon Kings*. 2 vols. (Bohn Library.)

GREEN, *The Conquest of England*. New York, 1884.

—, *The Making of England*. New York, 1883.

Political and Social History. (*Continued.*)

FREEMAN, *History of the Norman Conquest, Vol. I., Chaps. I.-III.* Oxford and New York, 1873.

PALGRAVE, *Rise and Progress of the English Commonwealth, Vol. I.* London, 1831.

STUBBS, *Constitutional History of England, Vol. I., Chaps. I.-VIII.* Oxford and New York, 1875.

ADAMS (and others), *Essays on Anglo-Saxon Law.* New York, 1876.

ANDREWS, *The Old English Manor.* Baltimore, 1892.

Religious and Cultural History.

PLUMMER, *Venerabilis Bædæ Opera Historica.* Oxford and New York, 1896, 2 vols.

GRIMM, *Teutonic Mythology.* London, 1879-89, 4 vols.

HADDAN AND STUBBS, *Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents.* London, 1869-78, 3 vols.

PADELFORD, *Old English Musical Terms.* Bonn, 1899. (*Bonner Beiträge zur Anglistik, IV.*)

Literary History.

EBERT, *Allgemeine Geschichte der Litteratur des Mittelalters im Abendlande.* Leipzig, 1874-87, 3 vols. (Especially Vols. I. and III.)

BRANDL, *Altenglische Literatur.* (In Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie.* 2d ed. Strassburg, 1899. Forthcoming.)

COOK, *Biblical Quotations in Old English Prose Writers, Vol. I.* London and New York, 1898. (Introduction contains a sketch of Old English Biblical translations, prose and poetical, with bibliography.)

Biography.

WRIGHT, *Biographia Britannica Literaria, Vol. I.* London, 1842.

MONTALEMBERT, *Monks of the West.* Edinburgh, 1861-79, 7 vols. (A fascinating work.)

Translations.

GREIN, *Dichtungen der Angelsachsen, stabreimend übersetzt*. Göttingen, 1857-59, 2 vols.

Readers.

SWEET, *Second Anglo-Saxon Reader*. Oxford and New York, 1887. (Archaic and dialectal; consists largely of glosses.)

KLUGE, *Angelsächsisches Lesebuch*. Halle, 1897.

KÖRNER, *Angelsächsische Texte, mit Uebersetzung, Anmerkungen, und Glossar*. Heilbronn, 1880.

RIEGER, *Alt- und Angelsächsisches Lesebuch*. Giessen, 1861.

Poetical Texts. [See also **Prose Texts.**]

GREIN-WÜLKER, *Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Poesie*. Kassel, 1881-98.

GOLLANCZ, *The Exeter Book, Part I*. London (Early English Text Society), 1895.

THORPE, *Codex Exoniensis*. London, 1842.

ZUPITZA, *Beowulf, Autotypes of the unique Cotton MS., with a Transliteration and Notes*. London (E. E. T. S.), 1882.

Prose Texts.

SWEET, *Oldest English Texts*. London (E. E. T. S.), 1885.

—, *King Alfred's West Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care*. London (E. E. T. S.), 1871-72.

—, *King Alfred's Orosius*. London (E. E. T. S.), 1883.

MILLER, *Old English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History of the English People*. London (E. E. T. S.), 1890-98.

GREIN, *Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosa, Vol. I*. Cassel, 1872. (Mostly translations from the Old Testament.)

SEDFIELD, *King Alfred's Old English Version of Boethius de Consolatione Philosophiæ*. Oxford, 1899.

THORPE, *Homilies of Ælfric*. London (Ælfric Society), 1844-46, 2 vols.

MORRIS, *Blickling Homilies*. London (E. E. T. S.), 1874-80, 3 vols. in 1.

Prose Texts. (*Continued.*)

SKEAT, *Ælfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*. London (E. E. T. S.), 1881-99, 2 vols.

—, *The Gospels in Anglo-Saxon and Northumbrian Versions*. Cambridge, 1871-87.

ASSMANN, *Angelsächsische Homilien und Heiligenleben*. (*Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosa*, Vol. III.) Kassel, 1889.

EARLE, *Handbook to the Land-Charters and other Saxon Documents*. Oxford and New York, 1888.

EARLE, *Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel*. Oxford and New York, 1865. (Vol. I. of a revision by Plummer has been published, New York, 1892.)

SCHMID, *Die Gesetze der Angelsachsen*. 2d ed. Leipzig, 1858. (This has a much completer apparatus than the following.)

THORPE, *Ancient Laws and Institutes of England*. London, 1840, 2 vols.

NAPIER, *Wulfstan*. Berlin, 1883.

COCKAYNE, *Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft of Early England*. London, 1864-66, 3 vols.

Facsimiles of Manuscripts.

SKEAT, *Twelve Facsimiles of Old English* [*i.e.* Old and Middle English] *Manuscripts, with Transcriptions and Introduction*. Oxford and New York, 1892. (From Alfred's translation of the *Pastoral Care*, the poetical *Exodus*, and the *Chronicle*.)

WÜLKER, *Codex Vercellensis, die Angelsächsische Handschrift zu Vercelli in Getreuer Nachbildung*. Leipzig, 1894.

[See also Zupitza's *Beowulf*, Cook's *Judith*, etc.]

History of the English Language.

KLUGE, *Geschichte der Englischen Sprache*. (In Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie*, I. 780-930.) Strassburg, 1891.

Grammar.

MÄTZNER, *Englische Grammatik*. 3d ed. Berlin, 1885-89, 3 vols. (English translation by C. J. Grece, London, 1874.)

KOCH, *Historische Grammatik der Englischen Sprache*. Cassel, 1863-78, 3 vols.

Grammar. (*Continued.*)

COSIJN, *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*. The Hague, 1883-88.

——, *Kurzgefasste Altwestsächsische Grammatik*. 2d ed. Leiden, 1893.

SWEET, *New English Grammar, Parts I. and II.* Oxford and New York, 1892-1898.

SIEVERS, *Angelsächsische Grammatik*. 3d ed. Halle, 1898.

Phonology.

SWEET, *History of English Sounds*. Oxford and New York, 1888.

MAYHEW, *Synopsis of Old English Phonology*. Oxford and New York, 1891.

COOK, *Phonological Investigation of Old English*. Boston, 1888.

Syntax.

CHASE, *Bibliographical Guide to Old English Syntax*. Leipzig, 1896.

WÜLFING, *Die Syntax in den Werken Alfreds des Grossen. I. Teil—II. Teil, 1. Hälfte*. Bonn, 1894-97. (Contains a useful bibliography.)

Prosody.

SIEVERS, *Altgermanische Metrik*, pp. 120-149. Halle, 1893.

——, *Angelsächsische Metrik*. (In Paul's *Grundriss der germanischen Philologie*, II. 1. 888-893; a very brief, but clear, sketch.)

Dictionaries.

BOSWORTH-TOLLER, *Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*. New York, 1882-98.

GREIN, *Sprachschatz der Angelsächsischen Dichter*. Göttingen, 1861-64.

COOK, *Glossary of the Old Northumbrian Gospels*. Halle, 1894.

LINDELÖF, *Glossar zur Altnorthumbrischen Evangelienübersetzung in der Rushworth-Handschrift*. Helsingfors, 1897.

HARRIS, *Glossary of the West Saxon Gospels* (*Yale Studies in English*, VI.). New York, 1899.

KLUGE, *Etymologisches Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache* (with Janssen's Index). 5th ed., Strassburg, 1894; 4th ed. translated. New York, 1891. (For comparison of Old English with German words.)

Periodicals.

Anglia. Halle, 1878-.

Englische Studien. Heilbronn, 1878-.

Archiv für das Studium der Neueren Sprachen. Berlin, 1846-.
(Especially the recent volumes.)

Beiträge zur Geschichte der Deutschen Sprache und Litteratur (ed. by Paul and Braune). Halle, 1874-.

Transactions and Proceedings of the Modern Language Association of America. Baltimore, 1886-.

Modern Language Notes. Baltimore, 1886-.

Journal of Germanic Philology. Boston, London, and Leipzig, 1897-.

III. MEMORANDA OF ADDITIONAL BOOKS.

APPENDIX II.

CORRESPONDENCES OF OLD ENGLISH AND MODERN GERMAN VOWELS.

Only a selection of the more regular correspondences is here given. The student must not be surprised at the occurrence of correspondences which he cannot reconcile with these; profounder study will usually show the reason for the discrepancy. The great majority of instances, however, will be found to fall under the following heads. The graphic representations of the vowels, not their sounds, is all that is here considered, but this will be found of much assistance in tracing and fixing cognates.

OLD ENGLISH SHORT VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

OE. **a** : Ger. *a* **baðian** : *baden*.

OE. **æ** : Ger. *a* **cræft** : *Kraft*.

Sometimes OE. **æ** : Ger. *e* . . . **hærfest** : *Herbst*.

OE. **e** : Ger. *e* **brecan** : *brechen*.

OE. **ē** : Ger. *e* (*ee*) **beðd** : *Bett*; **here** : *Heer*.

OE. **i** : Ger. *i* **fisc** : *Fisch*.

OE. **o** : Ger. *o* **lof** : *Lob*.

OE. **u** : Ger. *u* **burg** : *Burg*.

OE. **y** : Ger. *ü* **fyllan** : *füllen*.

Sometimes OE. **y** : Ger. *u* . . . **hyldu** : *Huld*.

OE. **ea** (20, 21) : Ger. *a* **hearpe** : *Harfe*.

OE. **eo** (20, 21) : Ger. *e* **eorðe** : *Erde*.

OLD ENGLISH LONG VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

OE. ā : Ger. <i>ei</i>	brād : <i>breit</i> .
Sometimes OE. ā : Ger. <i>e</i> (<i>ee</i>) . . .	ār : <i>Ehre</i> ; sāwol : <i>Seele</i> .
OE. æ : Ger. <i>ei</i>	hæil : <i>Heil</i> .
Sometimes OE. æ : Ger. <i>a</i> or Ger. <i>e</i> .	{ lāetan : <i>lassen</i> ; ærest : <i>erst</i> .
OE. ē : Ger. <i>ü</i>	grēne : <i>grün</i> .
OE. ī : Ger. <i>ei</i>	idel : <i>eitel</i> .
OE. ō : Ger. <i>u</i>	fōt : <i>Fuss</i> .
OE. ū : Ger. <i>au</i>	hūs : <i>Haus</i> .
OE. ēa : Ger. <i>au</i>	hēafod : <i>Haupt</i> .
Before h , and dental consonants	
(6), OE. ēa : Ger. <i>o</i>	dēaƿ : <i>Tod</i> .
OE. ēo : Ger. <i>ie</i>	dēor : <i>Tier</i> .

In tracing back the history of these vowels, many correspondences become clearer. Thus, take OE. **ō** : Ger. *u*. The Old High German correlative of **ō** is *uo*, that is, the one long vowel is diphthongized into two short ones. Of these it is the *u* which has survived. If now we consider that the *i*-umlaut of **ō** is **ē**, and of Ger. *u* is *ü*, we shall better understand such a pair as **grēne** : *grün*.

It should be observed that Ger. *ei* corresponds to OE. **ā**, **æ**, and **ī**, and Ger. *au* to OE. **ū** and **ēa**; similarly Ger. *o* to OE. **o** and **ēa**, Ger. *u* to OE. **u** and **ō**, etc. Note, too, that the *sound* of the vowel in Ger. *eitel*, *Haus*, corresponds precisely to the Mod. Eng. sound into which the OE. vowels of **idel**, **hūs**, have respectively developed.

See Kluge, under **Dictionaries**, p. 241.

APPENDIX III.

ANDREW'S NEGOTIATIONS WITH THE STEERSMAN.

[This extract from the Greek is found on pp. 136-138 of Tischendorf's *Acta Apostolorum Apocrypha*, and corresponds to lines 235-349 of the Old English *Andreas*.]

Ἀναστὰς δὲ Ἀνδρέας τῷ πρῶτῳ ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν ἅμα τοῖς μαθηταῖς αὐτοῦ, καὶ κατελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν ἶδεν πλοιάριον μικρὸν καὶ ἐπὶ τό πλοιάριον τρεῖς ἄνδρας καθεζομένους· ὁ γὰρ κύριος τῇ ἑαυτοῦ δυνάμει κατεσκεύασεν πλοῖον, καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ὥσπερ ἄνθρωπος πρῳεὺς ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ· καὶ εἰσήνεγκεν δύο ἀγγέλους οὓς ἐποίησεν ὡς ἀνθρώπους φαῖναι, καὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ καθεζόμενοι. ὁ οὖν Ἀνδρέας θεασάμενος τὸ πλοῖον καὶ τοὺς τρεῖς ὄντας ἐν αὐτῷ ἐχάρη χαρὰν μεγάλην σφόδρα, καὶ πορευθεὶς πρὸς αὐτοὺς εἶπεν Ποῦ πορεύεσθε, ἀδελφοί, μετὰ τοῦ πλοίου τοῦ μικροῦ τούτου; καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς ὁ κύριος εἶπεν αὐτῷ Πορευόμεθα ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῶν ἀνθρωποφά-

Then Andrew arose early, and went to the sea with his disciples, and, when he had gone down to the sea-shore, he saw a little boat, and in the boat three men sitting. For the Lord had prepared a ship by his own power, and he himself was as it were a steersman in the ship; and he brought two angels whom he made to seem as men, and they were seated in the ship. Andrew, therefore, when he saw the ship and the three men in it, rejoiced with very great joy, and, coming to them, said, Whither go ye, brethren, with this little ship? And the Lord answered and said unto him, We are journeying into the country of the man-eaters. Now Andrew, when he saw Jesus,

γων. ὁ δὲ Ἀνδρέας θεασάμενος τὸν Ἰησοῦν οὐκ ἐπέγνω αὐτόν· ἦν γὰρ ὁ Ἰησοῦς κρύψας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ θεότητα, καὶ ἦν φαινόμενος τῷ Ἀνδρέᾳ ὡς ἄνθρωπος πρωρεύς· ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς ἀκούσας τοῦ Ἀνδρέου λέγοντος ὅτι καὶ γὰρ εἰς τὴν χώραν τῶν ἀνθρωποφάγων πορεύομαι, λέγει αὐτῷ Πᾶς ἄνθρωπος φεύγει τὴν πόλιν ἐκείνην, καὶ πῶς ὑμεῖς πορεύεσθε ἐκεῖ; καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς Ἀνδρέας εἶπεν Πρᾶγμα τι μικρὸν ἔχομεν ἐκεῖ διαπράξασθαι, καὶ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐκτελέσαι αὐτό· ἀλλ' εἰ δύνασαι, ποιήσον μεθ' ἡμῶν τὴν φιλανθρωπίαν ταύτην τοῦ ἀπάξαι ἡμᾶς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῶν ἀνθρωποφάγων, ἐν ᾗ καὶ ὑμεῖς μέλλετε πορεύεσθαι. ἀποκριθεὶς δὲ ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν αὐτοῖς Ἀνέλθατε.

Καὶ εἶπεν Ἀνδρέας Θέλω σοί τι φανερόν ποιῆσαι, νεανίσκε, πρὸ τοῦ ἡμᾶς ἀνελθεῖν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ σου. ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν Λέγε ὃ βούλῃ. ὁ δὲ Ἀνδρέας εἶπεν αὐτῷ Ναῦλον οὐκ ἔχομέν σοι παρασχεῖν, ἀλλ' οὔτε ἄρτον ἔχομεν εἰς διατροφήν. καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν αὐτῷ Πῶς οὖν ἀπέρχεσθε μὴ παρέχοντες ἡμῖν τὸν ναῦλον μήτε ἄρτον ἔχοντες εἰς διατροφήν; εἶπεν δὲ Ἀνδρέας τῷ Ἰησοῦ Ἀκουσον, ἀδελφέ· μὴ νομίσῃς ὅτι κατὰ τυραννίαν οὐ knew him not, for Jesus was hiding his godhead, and appearing to Andrew as a steersman. Jesus hearing Andrew say, I also am going to the country of the man-eaters, saith unto him, Every one fleeth from that city, and why go ye thither? Andrew answered and said, We have a certain little business to perform there, and must needs finish it; if thou canst, do us this kindness to carry us to the country of the man-eaters, to which ye also are bound. Jesus answered and said unto them, Come.

And Andrew said, I will make known to thee somewhat, young man, before we enter into thy ship. Jesus said, Say what thou wilt. Then Andrew said unto him, We have no passage-money to give thee, neither have we bread for food. Jesus answered and said unto him, Why then do ye depart, seeing that ye neither give us passage-money nor have bread for food? Andrew said unto Jesus,

δίδομέν σοι τὸν ναῦλον ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς μαθηταί ἐσμεν τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ θεοῦ. ἐξελέξατο γὰρ ἡμᾶς τοὺς δώδεκα, καὶ παρέδωκεν ἡμῖν ἐντολὴν τοιαύτην λέγων ὅτι πορευόμενοι κηρύσσειν μὴ βαστάζετε ἀργύριον ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ μήτε ἄρτον μήτε πήραν μήτε ὑποδήματα μήτε ῥάβδον μήτε δύο χιτῶνας. εἰ οὖν ποιεῖς τὴν φιланθρωπίαν μεθ' ἡμῶν, ἀδελφέ, εἰπὲ ἡμῖν συντόμως· εἰ οὐ ποιεῖς, φανέρωσον ἡμῖν, καὶ πορευθέντες ζητήσομεν ἑαυτοῖς ἕτερον πλοῖον. ἀποκριθεὶς δὲ ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν τῷ Ἀνδρέᾳ Εἰ αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ ἐντολὴ ἣν ἐλάβετε καὶ τηρεῖτε αὐτήν, ἀνέλθατε μετὰ πάσης χαρᾶς ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ μου. ἀληθῶς γὰρ βούλομαι ὑμᾶς τοὺς μαθητὰς τοῦ λεγομένου Ἰησοῦ ἀνελθεῖν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ μου ἢ τοὺς παρέχοντάς μοι χρυσίου καὶ ἀργυρίου· πάντως γὰρ ἄξιός εἰμι ἵνα ὁ ἀπόστολος τοῦ κυρίου ἀνέλθῃ ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ μου. ἀποκριθεὶς δὲ ὁ Ἀνδρέας εἶπεν Συγχώρησόν μοι, ἀδελφέ, ὁ κύριος παράσχη σοι τὴν δόξαν καὶ τὴν τιμὴν. καὶ ἀνῆλθεν Ἀνδρέας μετὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ μαθητῶν εἰς τὸ πλοῖον.

Hearken, brother; think not that because of arrogance we give thee not our passage-money, since we are disciples of the good God, our Lord Jesus Christ. For he chose us, the twelve, and gave us this commandment, saying, As ye go to preach, carry neither money on the way, neither bread, nor scrip, nor shoes, nor staff, nor two coats. If, therefore, thou wilt do us this kindness, brother, tell us plainly; if thou wilt not, declare it unto us, and we will go and seek for ourselves another ship. Jesus answered and said unto Andrew, If this is the commandment which ye have received and do keep, enter with all joy into my ship; for verily I had rather that ye, the disciples of him who is called Jesus, should enter into my ship, than those who give me gold and silver; for I am certainly worthy that the apostle of the Lord should enter into my ship. Then Andrew answered and said, Agree with me, brother, and the Lord give thee glory and honor. And Andrew entered into the ship with his disciples.

APPENDIX IV.

SPECIMENS OF THE DIALECTS.

The two best sources of information on the OE. dialects are Sievers' OE. Grammar and Prof. E. M. Brown's work on Mercian. The latter is in two parts, — (Part I.) *Die Sprache der Rushworth Glossen* (Göttingen, 1891), comprising the vowels, and (Part II.) *The Language of the Rushworth Gloss* (Göttingen, 1892), comprising a continuation of the vowels, the consonants, and inflection.

In some respects the non-West Saxon dialects agree. These common features, so far as they relate to the vowels, have been signalized by Sievers, and are here extracted from § 150 of my edition of his Grammar: —

1. In place of the West Saxon **æ** = Germ. **ē**, West Germ. **ā**, stands the vowel **ē**.

2. The WS. **ie**, **īe** is wanting, and hence the same is true of the unstable **y**, **ȳ** (**i**, **ī**) (19).

3. The sounds **ea**, **eo** (**io**), as well as their corresponding long diphthongs, are not so accurately discriminated as in WS. In Northumbrian especially there is great confusion between **ea** and **eo**. Kentish has a preference for **ia** and **io**, the former standing as well for WS. **ea** as for **eo**.

4. The sound **œ** is of more extensive occurrence.

I. NORTHUMBRIAN.

1. Cædmon's Hymn.

According to Sweet (*Oldest English Texts*, p. 148), "The hymn of Cædmon is written at the top of the page [*i.e.* in the famous Moore MS. of Bede] in a smaller hand than that of the List of Kings which follows it. It is not impossible that the hymn may have been written later than the List [which, according to Sweet, was written 'most probably in 737'], to fill the blank space. But the hand is evidently contemporary."

The *æ* is not always joined into a digraph, and the signs of length and of *i*-umlaut (*ē*) are wanting. These have been supplied, together with the punctuation and the division into lines; in other respects the manuscript has been followed.

The translation of the Hymn, as given by Bede (*Hist. Eccl.* IV. 24), is as follows, though it should be observed that Bede adds, "Hic est sensus, non autem ordo ipse verborum quæ dormiens ille canebat":—

"Nunc laudare debemus auctorem regni cælestis, potentiam creatoris et consilium illius, facta patris gloriæ, quomodo ille, cum sit æternus deus, omnium miraculorum auctor extitit; qui primo filiis hominum cælum pro culmine tecti, dehinc terram custos humani generis omnipotens creavit."

With reference to the words, "**heben til hrōfe**," it is interesting that Alcuin (*Anglia* VII. 7) has, "ut primum Creator mundum *quasi domum* præpararet, et post introduceret habitatorem, id est, dominum domus";

cf. "lacunar, **hūshafen, oððe heofenhrōf**" (Wülker-Wright, *Vocabularies*, 432. 8).

Variations from the EWS. norm are: —

1. Final **-æs** instead of **-es**: **-rīcæs, metudæs, -cynnæs**.
2. Final **-i** for **-e**: **mæcti, ēci**.
3. Final **-æ** for **-e**: **āstēlidæ, tiadæ**.
4. Final **-æn, -en** for **-on**: **hefæn-, heben**.
5. Final **-un** for **-on**: **scylun**.
6. Final **-un** for **-an**: **middun-**.
7. Final **-ur** for **-er**: **fadur**.
8. Final **-ur** for **-or**: **wuldur-**.
9. Final **-ud** for **-od**: **metud-**.
10. Final **-in** for **-en**: **dryctin**.
11. Final **-ist** for **-est**: **ārist**.
12. Final **-u** for **-an**: **foldu**.
13. Final **-eg** for **-ig**: **hāleg**.
14. Final **-en** for **-end**: **scēpen**.
15. **ā** for **ea (æ)**: **āll-, uārd, bārnun**.
16. **e** for **eo**: **uerc, heben, hefæn-, metud-**.
17. **y** for **u**: **scylun**.
18. **ę** for **a, o**: **ęnd**.
19. **ęli** for **eal**: **āstēlidæ**.
20. **æ** for **ie**: **ælda**.
21. **æ, e, ę** for **i, ie**: **mæcti, -mectig, scēpen**.
22. **īa** for **ēo**: **tiadæ**.
23. **a** for **æ**: **-fadur**.
24. **ē** for **ā**: **suē**.
25. **ō** for **ēo (ō)**: **scōp**.
26. **gi-** for **ge-**: **gihuæs**.
27. **d** for **ð (þ)**: **-gidanc**.
28. **th** for **ð (þ)**: **thā**.
29. **ct** for **ht**: **dryctin, mæcti, -mectig**.
30. **b** for **f**: **heben**.
31. **til** for **tō**.

Most of the foregoing variations are due either to the age of the document, or are common to at least two of the non-West Saxon dialects. The only ones

that seem peculiarly Northumbrian are 17, 31, and possibly 12. Of the rest, 16 and 25 do not agree with later Northumbrian (Lind.), and 22 looks not unlike Kentish. But 17 has that palatalization of **u** by preceding **sc** which we find in **scyūr**, **-scȳade**, **scyldor**, **scyniga**, **scuia** (**ui** as in **druige** for **drȳge**), and even **shȳa** (WS. **scūa**), of the Lind. Gospels. **Til**, which in Old Norse replaces OE. **tō**, is found here and in Lind. Matt. 26. 31, besides being read in the Runic inscription on the Ruthwell Cross. **Foldu** resembles the **eorðu**, **-o** of Lind. Matt. 15. 35, 27. 45, etc., which is the regular form in these Glosses.

The Hymn is as follows:—

Nū scylun hęrgan hefænricæs uārd,
 metudæs mæcti ęnd his mōdgidanc,
 uerc uuldurfadur; suē hē uundra gihuæs,
 ēci dryetin, őr āstęlidæ.
 5 Hē ęrist scōp ęlda bārnum
 heben til hrōfe, hāleg scępen.
 Thā middungeard mōncynnæs uārd,
 ēci dryetin, ęfter tīadæ,
 fīrum foldu, frēa āllmeetig.

2. Bede's Death Song.

Of this Sweet says: "Preserved in the St. Gall MS. 254, of the ninth century, in the usual continental minuscule hand, evidently an accurate copy of an Old Northumbrian original."

As translated by Cuthbert, his pupil, it runs:—

“Ante necessarium exitum prudentior quam opus fuerit nemo existit, ad cogitandum videlicet, antequam hinc profiscatur anima, quid boni vel mali egerit, qualiter post exitum judicanda fuerit.”

Its variations from EWS. are:—

1. It has some of the peculiarities of I. 1, such as (1) *gōdæs*, *yflæs*, (2) *ni*, (3) *-færæ*, *-hyeggannæ*, *-iŋgæ*, *gāstæ*, *uueorthæ*, (8) *-snottur-*, (15) *thārf*, (28) *there*, *uuiurthit*, *thonc-*, *than*, *thārf*, *æththa*, *dēoth-*, *uueorthæ*.
2. Final *-a* for *-e*: *æþþa*.
3. Final *-it* for *-eð* (cf. 35): *uuiurthit*.
4. Final *-id* for *-ed*: *dēomid*.
5. *ēi* for *īe*: *nēid-*.
6. *ē* for *æ*: *thēre*.
7. *iu* for *eo* (*ie*): *uuiurthit*.
8. *ēo* for *ēa*: *dēoth-*.
9. *æ* for *o*: *æththa*.
10. *œ* for *ē*: *dēomid*.
11. *hin-* (otherwise almost always poetical).
12. *egg* for *cg*: *-hyeggannæ*.
13. *i* for *g* (*ge*): *-iŋgæ*.

Of the foregoing only 8 and 13 are unmistakably Northumbrian. With *dēoth-* may be compared *ēoro*, Lind. Lk., p. 8, l. 15 (cf. Jn. 18. 26); *ēostro*, Lk. 22. 1, etc. (15); *ēoðe*, Matt. 27. 64, Lk. 14. 8 (cf. Matt. 10. 15); *ēoung*, Matt., p. 22, l. 15. The *iŋg* (for *gŋg* < *gang*) is simply an attempt to express the palatal *g* (*ge*); *geong* occurs frequently in the Lindisfarne Gospels, eight times uncompounded. Rushworth has *iarw-*, but not *iŋg* (p. 253, note 10). At least Anglian (North. Merc.) is (9) *æþþa*; as *eðða* (*eþþa*) it occurs in Rush. Matt. 5. 18, and in the Riddles ascribed to Cynewulf (44. 17).

The text is:—

Fore thēre nēidfæræ nānig ni uuiurthit
 thōnesnotturra than him thārf sīe,
 tō ymbhyeggannæ ær his hiniŋgæ
 huæt his gāstæ gōdæs æththa yflæs
 5 æfter dēothdæge dēmid uueorthæ.

3. The Day of Judgment.

The text is taken from Skeat's edition of Matthew. As far as practicable the readings have been conformed to the norms of the Lindisfarne Gospels (ca. 950). But as there is often great variation in the spelling and endings of the same word, normalizing has not been attempted in all cases. Where changes have been made, the MS. reading is given in a note. The equivalent for Lat. *et* is nearly always represented by a contraction, as is frequently that for *vel*, *aut*; these have been rendered by the usual words, **and**, **oððe**. The second of two alternative glosses has been enclosed in square brackets, and so has occasionally a superfluous word.

Variations from EWS. are (only the more important are registered):—

1. Of I. 1: (5, but not regularly, see foot-notes), (15) **ālle**, **-sāldes**, **-sāldon**, (21) **mæht**, (23) **fadores** (cf. 24, **suā**); of I. 2: (10) **geblōdsad**.
2. Loss of final **-n**: **eatta**, **drinca**, **befora**, **ſende**.
3. Uncontracted ind. pres. 3 sing. (cf. I. 2. 3): **sittes**, **scēades**, **ſetteð**, etc.
4. Plurals in **-as** (s), as well as **-að**: **bȳas**, **āgnigas**, **gaas**.
5. Change of gender: **-mæhtes**.
6. Plural of long neuters in **-o**: **cynno**.

7. Plural of adjectives and past participles in -o: **sōðfæsto**, **āwœrgedo**.
8. Weak plurals in -o: **ilco**.
9. Shortened plurals of verbs in -o, instead of -e: **sōhto**.
10. **ea** (representing **eo**) for **e**: **eatta**.
11. **œ** for **e** after **w** (denoted by **u**): **cucœðas**.
12. **ē** for **ēa** before palatals: **ēc**.
13. **ēg** for **āw**: **sēgon**.
14. **ē** for **y**: **dēdon**.
15. **i** for **y** before palatals: **drihten**.
16. Irregular umlaut: **cymmeð**.
17. Irregular gemination: **eatta**, **cymmeð**, **untrymmig**.
18. **cg** for **cc**: **tiegen-**.
19. **cg** for **g**: **hyncg-**.
20. **d** for **t** (**d** original): **geblōedsad**.
21. **ð** for **t**: **seðel**.
22. **ð** for **d**: **mið**.
23. **-ig** for **-ing**: **cynig**.
24. Inorganic initial **h**: **hriordadon**.
25. Loss of final -e: **rīc**.
26. The form **biðon**.
27. The form **hīa**.

Under the Northumbrian is printed the corresponding passage from the Vulgate, with collations of the Latin versions on which the Lindisfarne and Rushworth glosses are respectively based. The text is:—

Miððy uut'¹ cymes Sunu Mōnnes in mæht his, and ālle
 englas² mið him, ðā hē sittes ofer seðel godcundmæhtes³
 his. And gesōmnad biðon befora hine ālle cynno,⁴ and
 tōscēades hīa betuīh, suā⁵ hiorde tōscēades⁶ scīp⁷ frōm
 5 tiegenum. And hē setteð ðā scīp ēc sōð [uut'] tō suīð-

¹ Abbreviation of **uutedlice**
 (-tet-), WS. **witodlice**.

² MS. **engles**.

³ MS. **-mæht**.

⁴ **cynne**.

⁵ MS. **sua**.

⁶ MS. **-as**.

⁷ MS. **scipo**; this neuter is exceptional in its preponderance of plur. nom. acc. without ending.

rum his, ðā tiegeno sōðlice of winstrum. Ðonne [hē] cueðes ðe¹ cynig ðām ðā-ðe tō suðrum his biðon [hīa], “Cymmeð gīe, geblōedsad fadores mīnes, bȳas² [āgnigas³] gegearwad⁴ iuh rīc frōm frymðo middangeardes. Ic gehyncgerde [ic wæs hyncgrig⁵] for-ðon, and ðū gesāldes mē eatta; ic wæs ðyrstig, and gesāldon mē drinca⁶; gēst ic wæs, and gīe sōmnadon mec⁷; nacod, and gīe clāðdon [gīe wrigon] mec⁷; untrymig,⁸ and gīe sōhton mec⁷; in carcern,⁹ and gīe cuōmon¹⁰ tō mē. Ðā ondueardas [ond-suerigað] him sōðfæsto, cuēðas, Drihten, huēenne ðec wē sēgon hungrig [hyncgrende], and wē hriordadon¹⁰ ðec? ðyrstende [ðyrstig], and wē sāldon¹¹ ðē drinca¹²? huēenne¹³ uutetli’ ðec wē sēgon gēstig, and wē sōmnadon ðec, oððe nacod, and wē āwrigon ðec? huēenne ðec wē gesēgon untrymig and in carcern, and wē cuōmon¹⁰ tō ðē?” And geondweardeð ðe cynig, cuēðes ðām, “Sōðlice ic cuēðo iuh, ðēnde gīe dydon¹⁴ ānum of ðisum brōðrum mīnum lȳtlum, mē gīe dydon.” Ðā cuēðes¹⁵ and ðām ðā-ðe tō winstrum biðon, “Ofstigað¹⁶ gīe frōm mē, āwœrgedo, in fȳr ēce,¹⁷ se-ðe foregegearuud is dīwle and englum [ðegnum] his. Mec gehyncgerde, and ne sāldo¹⁸ gīe mē eatta; mec ðyrste, and ne sāldo gīe mē drinca; gēst ic wæs, and ne gesōmnade gīe mec; nacod, and ne āwrigon gīe mec; untrymig⁸ and in carcern, and ne sōhto gīe mec.” Ðā ondueardas and ðā ilco [hīa], cuēðendo, “Drihten, huēenne ðec wē sēgon hyncgrende,¹⁹ oððe ðyrstende,²⁰ oððe gēst, oððe nacod, oððe untrymig, oððe in

¹ Se is about one-half more numerous than ðe.

² MS. byes.

³ MS. agneges; for -igas, etc., -as and -að are frequently found in these verbs.

⁴ MS. gegearwað.

⁵ MS. hincgrig.

⁶ MS. dringe.

⁷ MS. meh.

⁸ MS. untrymmig.

⁹ MS. carchern.

¹⁰ MS. -un.

¹¹ MS. sealdon.

¹² MS. ðringe.

¹³ MS. huonne.

¹⁴ MS. dyde.

¹⁵ MS. coeðes.

¹⁶ MS. -es.

¹⁷ MS. écce.

¹⁸ MS. sealdo.

¹⁹ MS. hyncgerende.

²⁰ MS. -a.

carcern, and ne ęmbehtadon¹ wē ǣð? ” Ðā hē ęndueardeð ðǣm, cweðende, “Sōðlice ic cweðo iuh, ðā hwīle ne dyde gīe ānum of lȳtlum ðissum [suā lōng gīe ne dēdon² ānum ðisra³ metdmaasta], ne mē gīe dydon.⁴” And gaas⁵ ðās
 5 in tintergo ēce, sōðfæsto⁶ uut’ in lif ēce.

Cum autem venerit Filius hominis in maiestate sua, et omnes angeli cum eo, tunc sedebit super sedem maiestatis suæ. Et congregabuntur ante eum omnes gentes, et separabit eos ab invicem, sicut pastor segregat oves ab hædis. Et statuet oves quidem a dextris suis, hædos autem a sinistris. Tunc dicet rex his, qui a dextris ejus erunt: “Venite, benedicti Patris mei, possidete paratum⁷ vobis regnum a constitutione mundi. Esurivi enim, et dedistis mihi manducare; sitivi, et dedistis⁸ mihi bibere; hospes eram, et collegistis⁹ me; nudus,¹⁰ et cooperuistis¹¹ me; infirmus, et visitastis me; in carcere eram,¹² et venistis ad me.” Tunc respondebunt ei justi, dicentes: “Domine, quando te vidimus esurientem, et pavimus te? sitientem,¹³ et dedimus tibi potum? quando autem te vidimus hospitem, et collegimus¹⁴ te, aut nudum et cooperuimus te¹⁵? aut quando te vidimus infirmum, aut¹⁶ in carcere, et venimus ad te?” Et respondens rex, dicet illis: “Amen dico vobis, quamdiu fecistis uni¹⁷ ex¹⁸ his fratribus meis minimis, mihi fecistis.” Tunc dicet et¹⁹ his, qui a²⁰ sinistris²¹

¹ MS. *embigto*.

² Less common form for
dydon.

³ MS. *ǥassa*.

⁵ MS. *gaes*.

⁴ MS. *dyde*.

⁶ MS. *-fæste*.

⁷ R. *regnum quod vobis paratum est ab origine mundi.*

⁸ L. *dedisti*.

⁹ L. *collexistis*.

¹⁰ R. *nudus eram*.

¹¹ L. *operuistis*.

¹² L. om.; R. *fui*.

¹³ R. *aut sitientem*.

¹⁴ L. *colleximus*.

¹⁵ L. om.

¹⁶ L. *et*.

¹⁷ R. *uni ex minimis his fratribus meis.*

¹⁸ L. *de*.

¹⁹ R. *rex*.

²⁰ L. *ad*.

²¹ R. *sinistris ejus*.

erunt: "Discedite¹ a me, maledicti, in ignem æternum, qui paratus² est diabolo et angelis ejus. Esurivi enim, et non dedistis mihi manducare; sitivi, et non dedistis mihi potum³; hospes eram, et non collegistis⁴ me; nudus, et non cooperuistis⁵ me; infirmus et in carcere, et non visitastis me." Tunc respondebunt ei⁶ et ipsi, dicentes: "Domine, quando te vidimus esurientem, aut sitientem, aut hospitem, aut⁷ nudum,⁷ aut infirmum, aut⁸ in carcere, et non ministravimus tibi?" Tunc respondebit illis, dicens: "Amen dico vobis, quamdiu non fecistis uni de minoribus his, nec mihi fecistis." Et ibunt hi in supplicium æternum, justi autem in vitam æternam.

¹ L. *discendite*.³ R. *bibere*.⁶ L. *om*.² L. *præparatus*; R. *quem præparavit pater meus diabolo*.⁴ L. *collexistis*.⁷ R. *om*.⁵ L. *operuistis*.⁸ L. *vel*.

II. MERCIAN.

Mercian has been thus characterized by Brown (*ut supra*, Part I., p. 81, with which should be compared his Part II., p. 91):—

"There is naturally much general agreement with Northumbrian, since both are Anglian. Variations from North. are in some cases approximations to WS., but not in all. In certain respects Mercian stands quite by itself; in particular—

"1. OE. stable *e* [*i.e.* not *ę*] is usually retained in Mercian, yet is more or less frequently changed to *æ*.

"2. The *o*-umlaut of *a* scarcely occurs in WS., and not at all in either Kentish or Northumbrian, but is well developed in Mercian.

“3. The **u**-, **o**-umlaut of **e** to **eo**, and of **i** to **io**, **eo**, occurs at least more regularly in Mercian than in WS. and the other dialects.

“It is true that these peculiarities give no sharp outlines to Mercian, yet they sufficiently characterize it as a dialect, and not merely as Northumbrian modified by West Saxon scribes, or the reverse.”

1. The Day of Judgment.

The text is from Skeat's edition of Matthew, normalized like the last. There is a difference of opinion about the date of the Gloss. Skeat says (ed. of Mark, p. xii) that it may be referred to the latter half of the tenth century, Brown (Part I., p. 83) would date it just before the decay of Latin studies to which Alfred testifies; the latter also infers that its origin was not near the Kentish border. The phonological and inflectional points of difference from both West Saxon and Northumbrian should be noted.

The passage is as follows:—

And¹ **mið**-**py**² **cymeþ þonne Sunu**³ **Mōnnes** in ðrymme his, and **alle**⁴ **englas** **mið** hine, **þonne**⁵ **gesiteþ**⁶ on **sedle**⁷ his **prymmes**. And **gesomnade**⁸ **bēoð** beforan him **alle**⁴

¹ Represented in MS. only by the abbreviation; **and** occurs but once in the Gospel, and is accordingly restored here; **a**, too, is more likely to occur in proclitics.

² Both **mið** and **mid** are found; here the following **þ** may have influenced.

³ MS. **sune**.

⁴ MS. **ealle**; **a** is more common before **l** + cons., though **eall** and **healf** are somewhat exceptional.

⁵ **þonne** is much commoner, and so **o** before nasals in general.

⁶ MS. **gesitæþ**.

⁷ This word has **þ** and **t** (**tt**), as well as **d**.

⁸ MS. **gesomnede**.

pēode, and gescēadeþ¹ hiæ in twā,² swā hiorde³ āscēadeþ⁴ scēp from tīcnum. And sēteþ pā scēp⁵ on pā⁶ swiðran hālfē,⁷ his tīccen þonne on pā winstran hālfē.⁷ Þonne cwæþ⁸ se Cyning þām þe on pā swiþran hālfē his bēon, “Cumap,⁹ geblētsade mīnes Fæder, gesittað rice ƿte ēow 5 geiarwad¹⁰ wæs frōm sētnisse middangeardes. For-þon-ðe mec¹¹ yngrade,¹² and ge sāldun mē etan; mec þyrste, and gē sāldun¹³ mē drincan; cuma ic wæs, and gē feormadun mec¹¹; nacud ic wæs, and gē wrigun¹⁴ mec; untrum,¹⁵ and gē nēosadun mīn; in carcerne¹⁶ ic wæs, and ge cwōmun¹⁷ 10 tō mē.” Þonne andswarigap¹⁸ him¹⁹ [þām] sōpfæste,²⁰ cwæpende,²¹ “Dryhten, hwonne²² gesēgun²³ wē ðē hyngrende, and wē fōddun²⁴ þē? oppe þyrstigne, and wē þē drincan sāldun? hwanne²² þonne gesēgun²³ wē þē¹¹ cuman, and gefeormadun ðē¹¹? oppe nacudne, and wē þec¹¹ 15 wrigun¹⁴? opðe hwonne²² wē þē¹¹ sēgun untrymne¹⁵ opðe in cwarterne,²⁵ and wē cwōmun¹⁷ tō þē?” And andswarade se Cyning, cwæþ tō heom,¹⁹ “Sōþ ic sæcege ēow, swā longe swā gē dydun ānum þe²⁶ lāsesta²⁶ pāra brōpre²⁶

¹ MS. **gesceadīþ**.

² MS. **tu**, but less common.

³ **heorde** also occurs.

⁴ MS. **ascadeþ**.

⁵ MS. **scæp**.

⁶ Lat. omits *suis*.

⁷ MS. **healfe**.

⁸ Usual form for pres., as well as pret.; pres. also **cwep**.

⁹ MS. **cymeþ**.

¹⁰ Less common than **gegearwad**.

¹¹ **mec**, **ðec** rather commoner in acc.

¹² Loss of initial **h** exceptional.

¹³ MS. **salden**.

¹⁴ MS. forms are **wriogan**,

wreogan, but this verb is exceptional.

¹⁵ With **i**-umlaut, and without.

¹⁶ MS. **carkærn**.

¹⁷ MS. **coman**.

¹⁸ MS. **andswærigap**.

¹⁹ Sing. **him**, plur. **heom**.

²⁰ **-fæste** rather more common.

²¹ **cwæpende** nearly as common as **cwepende**.

²² **hwanne** and **hwonne** about equal.

²³ MS. **gesagun**.

²⁴ MS. **fōddan**.

²⁵ MS. **quartern**.

²⁶ Here nom.; **þe** occasional for **se**.

mīne,¹ gē. mē dydun.²” Þonne cwæp se Cyning ēc tō þām
 pā-þe on þām winstran hālfе bēopan, “Gewitap frōm mē,
 āwærgde,³ in ēce⁴ fyr, ꝥte wæs gearwad⁵ Fæder⁶ mīn⁶
 dēofle and his englum.⁷ For-þon-þe mec⁸ hyngrede, and
 5 gē ne sāldun mē etan; mec⁸ ðyrste, and gē ne sāldun mē
 drincan; cuma⁹ ic wæs, and gē ne feormadun mec⁸; nacud,
 and gē ne wrigun¹⁰ mec⁸; untrum¹¹ and in carcerne,¹² and
 gē ne nēosadun mīn.” Þonne andswarigað hīæ swāelce,¹³
 cwæpende,¹⁴ “Dryhten, hwanne¹⁵ gesēgun¹⁶ wē ðē⁸ hyng-
 10 rende, oþþe þyrstigne, oþþe cuman, oþþe untrum,¹¹ oþþe
 in carcerne,¹⁷ and wē ne þegnadun¹⁸ þē?” Þonne and-
 swarap¹⁹ heom,²⁰ cwepende,¹⁴ “Sōþ ic sæcge ēow, swā lōnge
 swā gē ne dydun ānum meodumra²¹ pissa, ne mē gē ne
 dydun.” And gæþ²² hīæ in æce⁴ tintergu,²³ þā sōpfeste²⁴
 15 þonne in æce⁴ lif.

¹ See p. 253, note 26.

² MS. **dydon**.

³ MS. **awærgede**.

⁴ **æce** rather more common.

⁵ MS. **gearward**.

⁶ Cf. the Latin of this text.

⁷ MS. **englas**.

⁸ See p. 253, note 11.

⁹ MS. **cuman**.

¹⁰ See p. 253, note 14.

¹¹ See p. 253, note 15.

¹² MS. **carkern**.

¹³ MS. **swilce**; the only other instance in the Gospel is **swælce**.

¹⁴ See p. 253, note 21.

¹⁵ See p. 253, note 22.

¹⁶ See p. 253, note 23.

¹⁷ MS. **carcerænnæ**.

¹⁸ MS. **þegnedun**.

¹⁹ MS. **andswareþ**.

²⁰ See p. 253, note 18.

²¹ MS. **meoduma**.

²² More common than **gāð**; influence of the sing.?

²³ Only instance of **u** in plur. of disyllabic neuters; cf. **ticcen**, above.

²⁴ See p. 253, note 20.

2. Psalm XX. (XXI.)

The Psalm is taken from the Vespasian Psalter as printed in Sweet's *Oldest English Texts*. This was formerly regarded as Kentish, and even yet Brown

(Part I., p. 82) is inclined to think that its Mercian is that of the region adjoining Kent. Sweet (p. 184) refers the gloss to the first half of the ninth century. The forms are less varied than in the last. The Latin is the Vulgate version, collated with that on which the gloss is based.

The text is :—

Dryhten, in megne ðinum bið geblissad cyning; qnd ofer hǣlu ðīne gefið¹ swiðlice! Lust sǣwle his ðū sǣldes him, qnd willan weolera his ðū ne biscƿeredes hine. For-ðon ðū forecwōme hine in blēdsunge² swētnisse³; ðū sēttes hēafde his bēg of stāne dēorwyrðum.⁴ Līf bed, 5 qnd ðū sǣldes him lēngu dæga⁵ in weoruld weorulde. Micel is wuldur his in hǣlu ðīnre; wuldur qnd micelne wlite ðū onsetes ofer hine. For-ðon ðū sēlest hine in blēdsunge in weoruld weorulde; ðū geblissas hine in gefian mid qndwleotan⁶ ðinum. For-ðon cyning gehyhteð 10 in Dryhtne, and in mildheortnisse ðes hēstan ne bið onstyred. Sīe [bið] gimǣted hƿond ðīn āllum fēondum ðinum; sīe swiðre ðīn gemǣteð ālle ðā-ðe ðec⁷ fīgað. Ðū sētes hīe swē-swē ofen fȳres in tīd qndwleotan⁸ ðīnes; Dryhten in eorre his gedrǣfeð hīe, qnd forswilgeð 15 hīe fȳr. Wēstem heara of eorðan ðū forspildes, and sēd heara frƿm bearnum mƿnna. For-ðon hīe onhǣldun⁹ in ðē yfel; ðohtun geðæht ðæt hīe ne mæhtun gesteaðul-festian. For-ðon ðū sētes hīe bec, in lāfum ðinum ðu gearwas qndwleotan heara. Hēfe ūp, Dryhten, in megne 20 ðinum; we singað and singað megen ðīn.

¹ MS. *gefið*.

⁶ In this word *io* is commoner ;

² We should expect *blēdsunge*. but the rule is *eo*.

³ MS. *swētnisse*.

⁷ MS. *ðe*.

⁴ MS. *deorwyrðem*.

⁸ MS. *qndwliotan* ; see note 5.

⁵ MS. *dęga*.

⁹ MS. *onhældon*.

Domine, in virtute tua lætabitur rex; et super salutare tuum exultabit vehementer. Desiderium cordis¹ ejus tribuisti ei, et voluntate labiorum ejus non fraudasti eum. Quoniam prævenisti eum in benedictionibus dulcedinis; posuisti in capite ejus coronam de lapide pretioso. Vitam petiit² a² te,² et tribuisti ei longitudinem dierum in sæculum, et in sæculum sæculi. Magna est gloria ejus in salutari tuo; gloriam et magnum decorem impones super eum. Quoniam dabis eum in benedictionem in sæculum sæculi; lætificabis eum in gaudio cum vultu tuo. Quoniam rex sperat³ in Domino, et in misericordia Altissimi non commovebitur. Inveniatur manus tua omnibus inimicis tuis; dextera tua inveniatur⁴ omnes qui te oderunt. Pones eos ut clibanum ignis in tempore vultus tui; Dominus in ira sua conturbabit eos, et devorabit eos ignis. Fructum eorum de terra perdes; et semen eorum a filiis hominum. Quoniam declinaverunt in te mala; cogitaverunt consilia,⁵ quæ⁶ non potuerunt stabilire. Quoniam pones eos dorsum⁷; in reliquis tuis præparabis vultum eorum. Exaltare, Domine, in virtute tua; cantabimus et psallemus virtutes tuas.

¹ MS. *animæ*.³ MS. *sperabit*.⁶ MS. *quod*.² MS. *petit*.⁴ MS. *inveniit*.⁷ MS. *deorsum*.⁵ MS. *consilium*.

III. KENTISH.

The preference for the *e*-sound (both long and short) is, according to Zupitza (*Haupt's Zeitschrift*, XXI. 4), characteristic of the Kentish dialect. Sievers remarks (§ 154) that a distinctive characteristic of Kentish is the substitution of *e*, *ē*, for *y*, *ȳ*, and to some extent the converse.

In our reproduction of the following pieces, **ę** is employed only where it is found in the MSS., in order to avoid confusion between the theoretical and the MS. **ę**.

1. Lufa's Confirmation of her Bequest.

The will of which this is the concluding portion dates from 832. It is printed by Sweet in his *Oldest English Texts*, pp. 446–447, and by Earle, *Land Charters*, pp. 165–166. Earle adds: "This piece is given in Thorpe's *Analecta* as a specimen of East Anglian; but Kemble remarked that Mundlingham is in Kent."

Note the **e** (**ē**) for **æ** (**ǣ**), **ia** (**īa**) for **eo** (**ēo**); **b** for **f** is of course not peculiar to Kentish (I. 1. 30).

The text is as follows:—

✠ Ic Luba, ēaǣmōd Godes ǣiwen, ǣās forecwedenan gōd, and ǣās elmessan, gesette and gefestnie, ob mīnem erfelande et Mundlinghām, ǣēm hiium tō Crīstes cirican; and ic bidde, and an Godes libgendes naman bebiāde, ǣēm men ǣe ǣis land and ǣis erbe hebbe et Mundlingham, ǣet hē ǣās gōd forǣlēste oð wiaralde ende. Se man, se ǣis healdan wille, and lēstan ǣet ic beboden hebbe an ǣisem gewrite, sē him seald and gehealden sīa hiabenlice blēdsung; se his ferwerne, oððe hit āgēle, sē him seald and gehealden helle wīte, būte hē tō fulre bōte gecerran wille, Gode and mannum. *Uene ualete.*

✠ Lufe pincggewrit.

2. The Kentish Hymn.

The Hymn is No. 8 of Grein's *Bibliothek* (II. 290–291). The text is conformed to that of Kluge in his *Lesebuch*, pp. 111–112.

To be noted are the **io**, **ia** for **eo** (**hiofen**, **hiafen**), **īo** for **ēo**, **e** for **æ** (**fegere**, **Feder**, **heleða**, **-fest**), **æ** for **ē**, *i.e.* **ǣ** (**blǣtsiað**, **hrǣmig**) and for **īe** (**geflǣmdest**), and especially the **e** for **y** (**senna**, **gefelled**), and **ē** for **ȳ** (**ālēs**, **gerēna**). Standard West Saxon vowels are also found, and perhaps indicate a West Saxon scribe.

With respect to consonants, the omission of the middle one of three is noted by Zupitza as characteristic (**ǣnlum**). The loss of final **d** (**walden**) is found elsewhere in Kentish (Zupitza, p. 11); but see also I. 1. 14. **Ne** (**ngc**, **neg**) for **ng** (**cyninc**, **cyninge**; cf. **þincg**, p. 257, l. 12) is another mark (Zupitza, p. 13).

The Hymn is as follows:—

- | | | | |
|----|-------------------------|-----------------------|------|
| | Wuton wuldrian | weorada Dryhten, | |
| | hālgan hlīoðorewidum | hiofenrīces Weard, | |
| | lufian liofwendum | lifēs Āgend, | |
| | and him simle sīo | sigefest wuldor | |
| 5 | uppe mid ǣnlum | and on eorðan sibb | [5] |
| | gumena gehwīlcum | goodes willan! | |
| | Wē ðē heriað | hālgum stefnum, | |
| | and pē blǣtsiað | bilēwitne Fēder, | |
| | and ðē þanciað, | þīoda Wālden, | |
| 10 | ðīnes weorðlican | wuldordrēames | [10] |
| | and ðāre mielan | mægena gerēna, | |
| | ðe ðū God Dryhten | gāstes mæhtum | |
| | hafest on gewældum | hiofen and eorðan, | |
| | ān ēce Fēder, | ælmehtig God! | |
| 15 | Ðū eart cyninga Cyninge | cwicera gehwīlces; | [15] |
| | ðū eart sigefest Sunu | and sōð Hēlend | |
| | ofer ealle gescēft | angla and manna! | |
| | Ðū Dryhten God | on drēamum wunast | |
| | on ðære upplīcan | æðelan ceastre, | |
| 20 | Frēa folca gehwæs, | swā ðū æt fruman wære | [20] |

- efenēadig Bearn āgenum Fæder!
 Dū eart heofenlic lioht and ðæt hālige lamb,
 ðe ðū¹ mānscilde middangeardes
 for þīnre ārfestnesse ealle tōwurpe,
 5 fiond geflæmdest, folle generedes, [25]
 blōde gebōhtest bearn Israēla
 ðā ðū āhōfe ðurh ðæt hālige triow
 ðīnre ðrōwunga ðrīostre senna,
 þæt ðū on hēahsetle heafena rīces
 10 sitest sigehræmig on ðā swiðran hand [30]
 ðinum God-Fæder gāsta gemyndig.
 Mildsa nū meahtig manna cynne,
 and of leahtrum ālēs ðīne ðā lifan gesceft,
 and ūs hāle gedō, heleða Sceppend,
 15 niða Nergend, for ðīnes naman āre! [35]
 Dū eart sōðlice simle hālig,
 and ðū eart āna æce Dryhten,
 and ðū āna bist eallra Dēma
 cwucra ge dēadra, Crīst Nergend,
 20 for-ðan ðū on ðrymme rīcsast and on ðrīnesse [40]
 and on ānesse, ealles Wāldend,
 hiofena hēahcynine, Hāliges Gāstes
 fegere gefelled in Fæder wuldre!

¹ MS. **ðy**.

APPENDIX V.

I-UMLAUT ILLUSTRATED FROM GOTHIC.

The earliest Germanic language represented by existing specimens is the Gothic. Much the most considerable part of these specimens consists of fragments of a translation of the Bible, or rather of the Bible with the exception of the Books of Kings, made by Wulfila (less correctly, Ulphilas), a Goth of the fourth century. While it would be a serious error to regard Gothic as the parent of the other Germanic tongues, it is undoubtedly true that in many respects it most nearly represents what we may conceive to have been the character of the Primitive Germanic language. In particular, the original vowels of stem-endings and inflectional terminations are often extant in Gothic, while by the time of Old English they are either lost, or exist in a modified form.

From what has been said, it is manifest that a comparison of Gothic forms with those of Old English is often very instructive. The phenomenon known as *i*-umlaut, for example, becomes much more intelligible through such a comparison, as a few illustrations will render evident.

In the revised version of 2 Cor. 10. 12, the marginal reading is, "For we are not bold to judge ourselves among . . . certain of them that commend themselves." The Gothic has, "Unte ni gadaursum *dōmjān* unsis silbans," etc. Here the English word *judge* is repre-

sented by the Gothic *dōmjan* (pronounced *dōmyan*), to which corresponds the OE. *dēman*. Again, for OE. *sēc(e)an* (114), *neŕian* (116), the Gothic has *sōkjan*, *nasjan* (*s* changing to *r*), as in Lk. 19. 10: “Qam auk sunus mans *sōkjan* jah *nasjan* pans fralusanans.”

According to 103, the ind. pres. 3 sing. of *forbēodan* is *forbīet* or *forbīett*. The corresponding Gothic form occurs in Lk. 8. 25: “Hwas siai sa, ei jah windam *faurbiudiþ* jah watnam?” (Who then is this, that he commandeth even the winds and the water(s)?) The stem of the Gothic verb *faurbiudiþ* is *biud-*, which in OE. is represented by *bēod-*. Umlaut is caused by the *-i-* of the ending *-iþ*, which is sometimes retained in OE. as *-(e)ð*, but frequently disappears, according to 23 and 34. Similarly Gothic *fraliusiþ* is represented in OE. by *forliest*, as in Lk. 15. 8, where, for the “if she lose one piece” of the English, the Gothic has, “jabai *fraliusiþ* drakmin ainamma.” Again, take the OE. *hātan*, of which the ind. pres. 3 sing. is *hæ̃t(t)*. Here the Gothic infinitive is *haitan*, and the ind. pres. 3 sing. *haitiþ*. Thus, in Lk. 15. 9, “*gahaitiþ* frijondjos” (call-eth together her friends).

In Mk. 1. 16, where our version has *net*, the OE. has *nẽtt*, and the Gothic *nati*: “wairpandans *nati* in marein.” The doubling of *t* is to be accounted for according to 36, as the Gothic stem-ending was *-ja*. For OE. *cynn* the Gothic has *kuni*, as in Mk. 8. 12: “Hwa pata *kuni* taikn sōkeiþ?” (What would be the OE. representatives of *taikn* and *sōkeiþ*?) In Mk. 7. 35, where the OE. has “*tungan bēnd*,” the Gothic has “*bandi* tuggons.”

Many more illustrations might be given, but these will no doubt suffice to render the principle clear.



VOCABULARY.

VOCABULARY.

[The vowel *æ* follows *ad*, and *ŷ* follows *t*. The main or typical forms of words are those of Early West Saxon, the dialectic or late forms of the poetry and of Appendix IV. being referred to that as the standard. Actual forms, when different from the type, are enclosed in parenthesis. Figures in parenthesis refer to paragraphs (and subdivisions) of the Grammar. Semicolons are employed to separate different *groups* of meanings; definitions separated by commas are more nearly synonymous. The sign < indicates derivation from. Modern English words cited in brackets, and not preceded by *cf.*, are direct derivatives; cognates thus cited are directly derived from the common ancestral form; where the relationship is more remote, or only a part of the word corresponds, *cf.* precedes. Old English words preceded by *cf.* or *see* are parallel or related forms. Direct derivatives included among the definitions are not repeated in brackets. The asterisk before a word indicates a theoretical form; for the manner in which such are framed see my *Phonological Investigation of Old English* (Ginn & Co.). The ending *-lic(e)* is assigned to adjectives and adverbs employed in the poetry; *-lic(e)* to those in prose.]

A.

ā, *always*; repeated for emphasis,
ā ā ā, *for ever and ever*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *ay*, from an allied root; in ME. our word appears as *o*, *oo*, — so in Chaucer, *Tr. and Cress.* 2. 1034: 'for ay and oo.']

ā- (142).

ā-belgan (III. 104), *anger*, *incense*.

ā-bēodan (II. 103), *announce*, *communicate*.

ā-beran (IV. 105), *carry*, *convey*; *sustain*.

ā-blāwan (R. 109), *blow*.

ā-bregdan (III. 104, 28), *liberate*, *disengage*. [Cf. Spenser's *abrade*, *abrayd*, *abraid*, e.g. *F.Q.* 3. 11. 8.]

ā-būtan, *about*, *around*.

ac (ah) (4), *but*.

ā-çennan (113), *produce*, *beget*, *bring forth*.

ācol-mōd (58, 146), *frightened*, *terrified*.

adesa (53), *adze*, *hatchet*.

ādī (51. b), *disease*.

ā-drædan (R. 110), *fear*.

ā-drēogan (II. 103), *endure*.

ā-drīfan (I. 102), *expel*.

ā-dūn(e), *down*. [< of *dūne*; see *dūn*.]

æce, see *ēce*.

æcer (43), *field*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *broad acres*, *God's Acre*, the latter as in Longfellow's poem; Ger. *Acker*. Cognate with Lat. *ager*, Gr. *ἀγρός*.]

ædre (ædre), *straightway, immediately, at once*.

æfen (47. 7), *evening* (but *evening* itself is from the derivative **æfnung**). [Ger. *Abend*.]

æfen-glōmung (51. 3), *evening twilight*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *gloaming*.]

æfestfull (146), *envious*. [**æfest** is compounded of **æf**, a parallel form of **of**, and **ēst**, q.v.]

æfestian (118), *envy, be envious at*.

æfestig (146), *envious*.

æfre, *ever, always*; **æfre ne**, *never*. [afterward.]

æfter, *after*; *according to*; *about*; **æfter-ðon-ðe**, *after*.

æg- (142).

æg-flota (53), *sea-floater, ship*.

æg-hwā (88), *every one*; neut. *every thing*.

æg-hwanan (75), *from all sides, on all-sides*.

æg-hwile (-hwylc) (89), *every (one), any (one)*.

ægðer ge . . . ge (202), *both . . . and*.

æht (51. b), *council*.

æht (51. 1), *possession*; plur. *goods*. [Cf. **āgan**.]

æl (51. b), *awl*. [Ger. *Ahle*.]

ælc (89. a), *each, every, all*. [Mod. Eng. *each*.]

ælde, see **ielde**.

ælmesse (el-) (53. 1), *alms*. [See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *alms*.]

æl-mihtig (-mihti) (57. 3), *almighty*. [Ger. *allmächtig*.]

Æl-myrcan (53), plur. *Ethiopians*.

æmetta (53), *leisure*. [Cf. **æmtig**.]

æmtig (57. 3; 146), *empty, void*. [Cf. **æmetta**.]

æne, *once*.

ænig (89. a; 154. a; 146), *any (one)*. [< **ān**; Ger. *einig*.]

æppel-bære (59, 146), *fruit-bearing*.

ær (47), *copper*. [See **ār**, *copper*; cf. the Ger. adj. *ehern*.]

ær, adv., *before, formerly, afore-time, ago*; frequently to be regarded as a mere sign of the pluperfect tense.

ær, prep., *before*. [Mod. Eng. *ere*.]

ær-dæg (43. 2), *dawn, break of day*.

ærend-wreca (53), *ambassador, envoy*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *errand*; OE. *wrecan* has a sense = *re-late*.]

ærest, *first, at first, in the first place*. (Mod. Eng. *erst*; Ger. *erst*.)

ær-ge-dōn (62), *previously done, former*. [**ær** + **dōn**.]

ærn (47), *edifice*.

ær-ra (67, 60), *former*.

ær-ðām-ðe, *before*.

ær-wacol (57, 146), *wakeful, sleepless*.

æsc-plega (53, 147), *ash-play, spear-play*.

æsc-rōf (58, 147), *spear-valiant, valiant with the spear*.

æt (47), *food*. [Cf. **etan**.]

æt (4), *at*; *from*; *to* (*New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *at*, I. 11, 12).

æt- (142).

æt-berstan (III. 104), *escape*.

æt-bregdan (III. 104, 162, 28), *withdraw, take away*.

æt-ēowian (118), *appear*. [Cf. **ætiewan**.]

æt-foran, *before*.

æt-gædere, *together*; strengthening **samod**, — **samod ætgædere** = Lat. *simul*.

æt-iewan (113), *reveal, display*. [Cf. **ætēowian**.]

æt niehstan, see **niehstan**.

ætȳwan, see **ætiewan**.

æðel-boren (62; 57. 3; 147), *high-born, patrician*.

æðel-borennas (51. 5; 147), *noble birth, rank, station*.

æðele (59), *noble, gentle, illustrious*. [Cf. *Ethel, Athel*, and Ger. *edel*.]

æðeling (43, 143), *noble one, hero, man*.

æðða, see **oððe**.

æx (51. b), *ax*. [Cf. Gr. *ἀξίη*, Lat. *ascia* (?), Ger. *Axt* (the *t* a late addition).]

ā-færan (113), *frighten, terrify*.

ā-feallan (R. 109), *fall*.

ā-fedan (113), *nourish, support*.

ā-fierran (113), *remove, banish, put away*. [< **feorr**, by 16.]

ā-fiersian (118), *drive away, banish*.

ā-flieman (113), *put to flight, expel*.

ā-gælan (-gēlan) (113), *neglect*.

āgan (127), *own, possess, have*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *ought*, and see Schmidt's *Shakespeare Lexicon*, s.v. *owe*, 2.]

ā-gān (141), *depart*.

ā-gēan, *back*. [< **ongēan**. Distinguish the meaning of this word from that of **bæcling**.]

āgen (57. 3), *own*. [Past part. of **āgan**; Ger. *eigen*.]

āgend (43. 6), *owner, possessor*.

ā-gēotan (II. 103), *pour out, dissipate, destroy*.

ā-giefan (V. 106), *give, pay*.

ā-ginnan (III. 104), *begin*. [Cf. Ger. *-ginnen*.]

āgnian (118), *appropriate*. [Cf. **āgan**; Ger. *eignen*.]

ā-grōwan (R. 109), *grow up, grow over*.

ah, see **ac**.

ā-hēbban (VI. 107), *raise* (i.e. *utter*); *exalt*; *endure, suffer, undergo*. [Ger. *erheben*.]

ā-hierdan (113), *harden* (*embolden* ?). [Ger. *erhärten*.]

ā-hliehhan (VI. 107), *rejoice*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *laugh*, Ger. *lachen*.]

āhōf, see **āhēbban**.

ā-hrēosan (II. 103), *fall*.

āht (ōht) (47; 89. b), *something*.

ā-hwettan (113), *excite, whet; supply, fulfil*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *whet*, Ger. *wetzen*.]

ā-lāetan (R. 110), *give up*. [Ger. *erlassen*.]

aldor, see **ealdor**.

ā-lēcgean (115, note), *deposit*.

ā-liefan (113), *permit, allow*. [< **lēaf**, *leave*; Ger. *erlauben*.]

ā-liehtan (113), *illuminate, give light to*. [< **lēoht**; Ger. *erleuchten*.]

ā-liesan (-lēsan) (113), *deliver*. [Ger. *erlösen*.]

ā-liesend (43. 6), *redeemer*.

ān (79); *one, a, a single, alone*; wk. **āna**, *alone*; on **ān**, *anon, at once*; **ānra gehwile**, *every one*. [Ger. *ein*.]

and (qnd), *and*.

and- (142).

and-giet (-git) (47), *sense, meaning, understanding*. [Cf. **gietan**.]

and-gietfullice (76), *clearly, intelligibly.*

and-lang (qndlang) (58), *live-long, whole, all . . . long.* [Cf. Ger. *entlang* and the Chaucerian *endelong* (*Knight's Tale* 1820).]

an(d)-licnes (51. 5), *image.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *likeness*, Ger. *Gleichniss*, for (*ge*)*leichniss*.]

and-lifan (51. b), *sustenance.*

and-swarian (qndswarian, qnd-sweorian) (118), *answer.*

and-swaru (qndswaru) (51. a), *answer.*

and-weard (58, 146), *present.*

and-weardan (qnd-) (113), *answer.*

and-wlita (53), *countenance, face;* also in the sense of 'angry countenance,' 'anger,' Lat. *vultus*. [Cf. Ger. *Antlitz*.]

and-wyrdan (113), *answer.* [Cf. Ger. *antworten*.]

ān-feald (58), *plain, simple.* [Cf. Ger. *Einfalt, einfältig*.]

angel (43. 4), *hook.* [Mod. Eng. *angle*, Ger. *Angel*.]

an-ginn (ongin) (47), *beginning; vehemence, impetuosity, violence.*

an-grislic (58), *fierce, raging.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *grisly*.]

an-lic (on-) (58), *like, similar.*

anlicnes, see **andlicnes**.

ān-nes (51. 5), *oneness, unity.*

ān-rædnes (51. 5), *boldness, confidence, assurance.*

an-sien (51. b), *countenance.*

an-timber (47), *material, substance.*

an-weald (43), *power, rule, jurisdiction.* [Ger. *Anwalt*.]

ār (43), *messenger.*

ār (51. b), *honor; dignity, station.* [Ger. *Ehre*.]

ār (47), *copper.* [See **æar**, *copper*; Mod. Eng. *ore*.]

ā-ræcean (114), *reach.* [Ger. *erreichen*.]

ā-ræfnian (118), *endure, stand.*

ā-ræran (113), *lift.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *rear*.]

ā-rædian (118), *redden, blush.* [Cf. Ger. *erröthen*.]

ā-ræcean (114; 164. b), *relate, narrate, say.*

ā-rēdian (118), *find, choose.*

ā-rētan (113), *gladden.*

ār-fæst (58, 146), *gracious, loving; glorious; often translates Lat. pius.* [See **ār**, *honor*.]

ār-fæstnes (51. 5), *kindness; compassion.*

ār-ge-bland (-blqnd) (47), *mingling of oars, oar-disturbed or oar-blending sea.* [Cf., in Richard Garnett's *The Mermaid of Padstow*, the line, 'By the skirt of the oarèd sea.']

ā-risan (I. 102), *arise.*

ārodlice, *immediately, forthwith.*

ār-wela (53), *oar-riches, i.e. sea.*

ār-wierðe (59, 146), *venerable.* [Cf. Ger. *ehrwürdig*.]

ār-wierðnes (51. 5), *reverence.*

ār-ȳð (51. b), *oar-billow, wave.*

ā-scædan (R. 110), *divide.*

āscian (āxian) (118; 159. b; 32), *ask.* [Ger. *heischen*, properly *eischen*.]

ā-secgean (123), *say, relate.*

ā-sendan (113), *send.*

ā-settan (113), *place, deposit.* **assa** (53), *ass.*

ā-stānan (113), *adorn, set.* [**< stān**, by 16.]

ā-stellan (114), *establish.*

ā-stigan (I. 102), *ascend, go aboard; descend.* [Ger. *ersteigen*.]

ā-streċcean (114), *prostrate*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stretch*.]

ā-styrian (118), *touch*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stir*.]

ā-swēbban (115. a), *put to sleep*, i.e. *slay*.

ā-syndrian (118), *separate, sever, divide*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *sunder*.]

ā-tēon (II. 103), *draw; inhale*.

ā-teorian (118), *fail, give out*.

ā-ðennan (115. a), *apply, direct*. [Cf. Ger. *dehnen*.]

ā-ðindan (III. 104, 62, 60), *swell*.

āðum (43), *son-in-law*. [Ger. *Eidam*.]

āðundnan, see **āðindan**.

ā-wēccan (114), *awaken, arouse*. [Ger. *erwecken*.]

ā-wēgean (115. a), *move*.

ā-wēndan (113), *change, shift, transform*.

ā-wēndednes (51. 5), *translation, version*.

ā-wiergan (113), *curse; past part., accursed*.

ā-wiht (89. b), *aught, a bit; almost as an adv., at all*. [Mod. Eng. *aught*.]

ā-wrēon (I. 102), *clothe*.

ā-writan (I. 102), *write*. [Cf. Ger. *reissen, ritzen*.]

ā-wyrcean (114), *perform, do*. [Ger. *erwirken*.]

āxian (32), see **āscian**. [Mod. Eng. dial. *axe*.]

B.

bæc, *back*.

bæcling, *back; on bæcling, back*.

bæð (47. 4), *bath*. [Ger. *Bad*.]

bæð-stēde (44, 147), *gymnasium*.

bæð-weg (43, 215), *bath-way, bath-road*.

baldor, see **bealdor**.

bān (47, 24), *bone*. [Ger. *Bein, (Elfen)bein*.]

bana (53), *slayer, murderer*. [Mod. Eng. *bane*.]

bāsnian (118), *wait, bide one's time*.

bāt (43), *boat*.

baðlan (118), *bathe*. [Ger. *baden*.]

be, *near; concerning; according to; on*. [See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *by*.]

be- (142).

bēacen (47, 24), *portent? standard?* [Mod. Eng. *beacon*.]

beadu (51. a), *battle, war*.

beadu-rōf (58), *valiant in war*.

beadu-wang (43), *battle-plain, field of battle*.

bēag (43), *torque, armilla, bracelet, collar, crown*. [Cf. **būgan**, 103.]

beald (24), *bold*. [Ger. *bald*.]

bealdor (baldor) (43), *ruler, king*. [See **beald**.]

bearn (47, 38), *son, child*. [Scotch *bairn*; cf. **beran**.]

bēatan (R. 109), *beat, smite, strike*.

be-bēodan (II. 103), *command, bid; commend*.

be-būgan (II. 103), *encircle, encompass, surround; extend*.

be-byrgan (113), *bury, inter*.

be-clȳsan (113), *enclose, shut up*. [*< Lat. clūsus, by 16.*]

bēc-ræding (51. 3), *reading*.

be-cuman (IV. 105), *come, befall, arrive, attain, fall*. [Ger. *bekommen*.]

be-cwēðan (V. 106), *say, declare*. [Mod. Eng. *bequeathe*.]

be-dǣlan (113, 177), *deprive*.
beḍḍ (47), *bed, couch*. [Ger. *Bett*.]
beēodon, see **begān**.
be-fæstan (113), *commit, give over*.
be-fōn (R. 110), *embrace, grasp, comprehend*.
be-foran, *before*.
be-gān (141), *practise, pursue, ply*.
be-gang (43), *circuit, compass*.
be-gangan (R. 109), *practise; ply*.
bēgen (79), *both*.
be-gietan (-gitan) (V. 106), *acquire, obtain, reach*.
be-gyrdan (113), *begird*. [Ger. -*gürten*.]
be-hātan (R. 110; 164. a), *promise*.
be-healdan (R. 109), *behold*.
be-hēfe (59, 165), *useful*.
bēhð (51. b), *sign, proof*.
be-hýgdig (57), *shrewd, sagacious*.
bełg (43), *bellows*.
be-limpan (III. 104), *belong, pertain*.
be-lūcan (II. 103), *belock* [Shak.], *enclose*.
be-miðan (I. 102), *conceal, disguise*. [Ger. -*meiden*.]
bēn (51. b), *prayer, petition, entreaty, supplication*. [See **bēna**, and cf. Mod. Eng. *boon*.]
bēna (53), *petitioner, suppliant*. [See **bēn**.]
be-nǣman (113, 177), *deprive, strip*.
be-neoðan, *beneath*.
bēod (43), *table*.
bēodan (II. 103), *offer; command*. [Ger. *bieten*.]
bēon, see **wesan**.
beorg (21, 24), *hill, mountain*.

[Ger. *berg*, and Mod. Eng. (*ice*)-*berg*.]
beorht (58, 64, 21), *bright, fair, brilliant, radiant, glorious*. [Mod. Eng. *bright* is due to metathesis (31).]
beorhte, *brightly*.
beorhtnes (51. 5), *brightness*.
beorn (43, 21), *warrior, hero, man*.
bēor-scipe (44. 1; 143), *banquet, feast*.
bera (53), *bear*.
beran (IV. 105; 184. a), *bear, carry; berende, productive* (155. b).
be-rēafian (118), *despoil*. [Mod. Eng. *bereave*, Ger. *berauben*.]
be-scierian (bi-scerian) (116), *withhold*.
be-sēon (V. 106, 101), *look* (often almost *turn*). [Ger. *besehen*.]
be-sittan (V. 106), *sit in, hold*. [Ger. *besitzen*.]
be-sorgian (118, 142), *grieve for, be concerned about; translates Lat. dolere*. [Ger. *besorgen*.]
be-stieman (-stēman) (113), *wet, moisten*.
be-swican (I. 102), *deceive*.
be-swician (118), *escape*.
bēt, adj., *better*.
bēt, adv. (77), *better*.
be-tǣcean (114), *assign*.
bētst (66), *best*.
be-tweoh, *among*.
be-twēon, *toward*.
be-twēonan, *among; betwēonan him, towards one another*.
be-tweox, *among, between*.
be-tyrnan (113), *revolve*.
be-ðecean (114), *cover, protect*. [Ger. *bedecken*.]
be-wǣfan (113), *clothe*. [See **wǣfels**.]

be-węndan (113; 184. *b*), *turn*.

[Ger. *bewenden*.]

be-windan (III. 104), *encompass*.

[Ger. *bewinden*.]

be-wrecan (V. 106), *surround*
(lit. *beat around*).

bibliotheca (Lat.), *library*.

bīdan (I. 102; 156. *l*), *await*,
wait.

biddan (V. 106; 156. *b*; 159. *b*),
ask, request, implore, beseech;
bid; *seek*. [Ger. *bitten*.]

bīegan (113), *bow, bend*. [Caus-
ative of *būgan* (103), from
bēag, pret. sing., by 16; cf.
Ger. *beugen*.]

biēma (53), *trumpet, clarion*.
[Cf. Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's*
Tale 578.]

big-leofa (53, 20), *food, suste-*
nance. [Cf. *libban*.]

bile-wit (57), *merciful*. [See *New*
Eng. Dict. s.v. *bilewhit*.]

bill (47), *broadsword, falchion*.
[Ger. *bille*.]

bindan (III. 104), *bind*. [Ger.
binden.]

binnan, *within*. [Ger. *binnen*.]

biōð, see *wesan*.

bī-rihte (-ryhte), *beside*.

bisceop (43), *bishop*. [< Lat.
episcopus, Gr. *ἐπίσκοπος*, from
ἐπί, upon, and *σκέπτομαι*, look;
cf. Ger. *Bischof*. A Continental
borrowing, ca. A.D. 400.]

biscerian, see *bescierian*.

bisgian (118), *occupy, engross*.
[See *bisig*.]

bisgu (51. *a*), *concern, trouble*.
[See *bisig*.]

bisig (57), *busy*.

bītan (I. 102), *bite*. [Ger. *beissen*.]

biter (57), *bitter, baneful, griev-*
ous. [Ger. *bitter*; cf. *bītan*.]

bið, see *wesan*.

blæc (57. 2), *black*.

blæcan (113), *bleach, fade*. [Mod.
Eng. *bleach*.]

blæd (43), *breath; abundance,*
blessedness. [Cf. *blāwan*.]

blæst (43), *flame*. [Cf. *blāwan*.]

blāwan (R. 109), *blow*. [Cf.
Ger. *blähen*, Lat. *flare*.]

blētsian (118, 33), *bless*. [<
blōd.]

blētsung (51. 3; 144; 33), *bless-*
ing, benediction.

blēwð, see *blōwan*.

blīcan (I. 102), *shine*. [Ger.
-bleichen.]

blinnan (III. 104), *cease*. [See
Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 5. 22.]

bliss (51. *b*; 34), *joy*. [< *blīðe*.]

blisse-sang (43, 147), *song of*
gladness.

blissian (118, 34), *rejoice*.
[< *bliss*.]

blīðe (59, 24), *blithe, merry, jo-*
vial, joyous, gladsome.

blīðe (70), *joyously*.

blōd (47, 24), *blood*. [Ger.
Blut.]

blōdig (57. 3; 146), *bloody*. [Ger.
blutig.]

blōstma (53), *blossom*. [Cf.
blōwan, and Lat. *flos*.]

blōwan (R. 109, 24), *blossom,*
bloom. [Mod. Eng. *blow*; cf.
Ger. *blühen*, Lat. *florere*.]

bōc (52, 24), *book*. [Ger. *Buch*.]

bōc-cræft (43, 147), *literature*.

Bōc-læden (47), *Latin*. [< OE.
bōc + Lat. *Latinus*.]

bōc-land (47, 147), *freehold es-*
tate.

bodian (118), *proclaim, preach*.
[Mod. Eng. *bode*.]

bolca (53), *gangway*.

bold-wela (53, 215), *Eden, Paradise* (lit. *house-wealth*).

bord (47), *shield*.

bord-stæð (47. 4), *shore, strand*.
[Cf. Ger. *Gestade*.]

bōsm (43, 24), *bosom, surface*
(cf. Shakespeare, *Tr. and Cress.*
1. 3. 112). [Ger. *Busen*.]

bōt (51. b), *repentance, amendment*.

brād (58, 24), *broad, spacious*.
[Ger. *breit*.] [face.]

brādnes (51. 5), *breadth, face, sur-*

brādan (113; 184. b), *spread, dilate, expand*. [**brād**, by 16; Ger. *breiten*.]

brand-stefn (brōnd-stæfn) (43), *lofty-prowed* (reading **brant-stefn**; cf. **hēahstefn naca**, *Andr.* 265, **brante cēole**, *Andr.* 273).

brant (58), *high, lofty*.

breahtm (brehthm) (43; 21. a), *beat, pulsation, stroke* (of wings).

brecan (IV. 105), *break; break away, burst away, hurry, speed*.
[Ger. *brechen*.]

bregdan (III. 104), *draw*. [Mod. Eng. *braid*.]

breogo (brego) (45, 20), *leader, king*.

brehthm, see **breahtm**.

breomo, see **brim**.

brēost (47, 24), *breast*.

Breoton (54, 20), *Britain; Briton*.

brim (47, 20), *billow, ocean, deep*.

brim-hengest (43), *wave-steed, sea-horse, i.e. ship*. [Cf. Ger. *Hengst*, and the OE. proper name *Hengist*, associated with *Horsa*.]

brim-stæð (47. 4; 147), *shore of the sea*. [Cf. Ger. *Gestade*.]

brim-strēam (43, 147), *ocean-stream, current*.

bringan (114), *bring, carry, take*.
[Ger. *bringen*.]

brōndstæfn, see **brandstefn**.

brōðor (46. 1; 24), *brother*. [Ger. *Bruder*.]

brūcan (II. 103; 156. e; 17), *hold, possess, enjoy, make use of*. [Mod. Eng. *brook*, Ger. *brauchen*.]

brūn (58, 24), *burnished, glistening; dusky*. [Ger. *braun*; see *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *brown*.]

brycg (51. b; 24), *bridge*. [Ger. *Brücke*.]

brytta (53), *dispenser*.

Bryttas (43), plur., *Britons*.

bufan, *above*. [**be** + **ufan**.]

būr (43, 24), *dining-room; private apartment, boudoir, bower*.
[Mod. Eng. *bower*.]

burg (52. 1; 24), *city*. [Mod. Eng. *borough*, Ger. *Burg*.]

burg-geat (47, 147), *city-gate*.

burg-lēode (44. 4; 147), *city-people, citizens*.

burh-sittende (61, 28), *city-dwellers, citizens*.

burh-weall (43, 28), *city-wall*.

būtan, prep. (24), *without, outside of, except, besides*. [**be** + **ūtan**; cf. the Scotch 'but and ben.']

būtan, conj., *except*.

bycgean (114), *buy*.

byrd (51. b), *birth, extraction*.

byrig, see **burg**.

byrne (53), *hauberk, corslet, mail-coat*.

byrn-hama (-hōma) (53), *hauberk, corslet*.

bȳsen (51. b), *example, illustration; suggestion*.

C.

cald, see ceald.

camp (43), *fight, battle*. [Ger. *Kampf*.]

campian (118), *strive, struggle, fight*. [*< camp*.]

camp-wig (cōmp-) (47), *combat*.

carcern (47), *prison*. [*< Lat. carcer, under influence of ærn.*]

cāsere (44. 1), *emperor, Cæsar*. [Lat. *Cæsar*.]

ceald (cald) (58; 21. a), *cold*. [Ger. *kalt*.]

ceaster (51. 4), *city*. [Lat. *castra*; Mod. Eng. *Chester, -caster, -cester*.]

ceaster-(ge)-waran (53), plur., *citizens*.

cēder-bēam (43), *cedar-tree, cedar*. [*< Lat. cedrus + bēam.*]

cēmpa (53), *soldier*. [*< camp*.]

cēne (59), *valiant*. [Ger. *kühn*, Mod. Eng. *keen*.]

cēol (43), *ship*.

ceorl (43, 24), *layman*. [Mod. Eng. *churl*, Ger. *Kerl*; cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1601.]

cēosan (II. 103; 184. a; 37), *choose, seek*. [Archaic Ger. *kiesen*; cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 737.]

cīegan (113), *call*.

ciele (44, 18), *cold*. [Mod. Eng. *chill*; cf. Ger. *Kühle*.]

cīepan (113), *sell*. [Cf. Ger. *-kaufen*.]

cierran (cirran) (113; 184. a; 18), *turn; turn back*.

cild (50, 38, 24), *child*.

cild-hād (43, 143), *childhood*.

cining, see cyning.

cirice (53. 1), *church*. [Ger. *Kirche*; see *Phil. Soc. Dict. s.v. church*.]

cirran, see cierran.

cist (51. b), *chest*. [*< Lat. cista, OE. orig. cæst, then ciest (18), cist*.]

clāne (57, 24), *pure*. [Mod. Eng. *clean*, Ger. *klein*. The Ger. word has come to its present meaning through the series 'pure,' 'clean,' 'neat,' 'delicate,' 'fine,' 'tiny,' 'small.']

clāennes (51. 5), *chastity*.

cleofu (20), see clif.

cleopian (clypian) (118, 20), *call*. [Cf. our poetical *clepe, yclept*, and *Hamlet* 1. 4. 19.]

clif (47, 20), *cliff*. [Cf. Ger. *Klippe*.]

clifer-fēte (59), *claw-footed*.

clypian, see cleopian.

cnapa (53), *boy, lad*. [Cf. Ger. *Knabe*.]

cnēo (47. 3; 27), *knee*. [Ger. *Knie*; cf. Lat. *genu*.]

cnēoris (like 51. 5), *tribe, nation*.

cnihht (43), *young man, youth*. [Ger. *Knecht*, Mod. Eng. *knight*.]

cnyssan (115. a), *smite*.

collen-ferhð (-fyrhð) (58), *inspired, elated*.

cōm, see cuman.

cōmpwig, see campwig.

costnung (51. 3; 144), *temptation*.

cræft (43), *power; skill, cleverness; art, trade, occupation*. [Mod. Eng. *craft*, Ger. *Kraft*.]

crēopan (II. 103), *creep, crawl*.

Crīst (43), *Christ*. [*< Lat. Christ-us*.]

cucu (27; in this form irregular, according to the declensions of

this book; see also **cwic**), *living, live, alive*.
culter (43 ?), *coulter*. [*< Lat. culter.*]
cuma (53), *stranger, visitant, guest*.
cuman (IV. 105), *come*. [*Cf. Ger. kommen.*]
cumbol (47), *banner, standard*.
cunnan (130), *know, know how, can*. [*Ger. können.*]
cunnian (118; 156. d), *make trial of*.
cūð (58), *known, manifest*; the combination of **cūð** and **on-cnāwen**, *Andr.* 527, presents a difficulty — perhaps for **cūðe**, *adv.* [*Cf. 130.*]
cūðlice (70), *certainly*.
cwæð (pret.), see **cweðan**.
cwealm (43), *death*. [*Mod. Eng. qualm; cf. cweðllan.*]
cweart-ern (47), *prison*. [*Perhaps modified from Lat. carcer, under the influence of ærn.*]
cweðllan (114), *kill*.
cwēn (51. 1; 24), *queen, princess*.
cweðan (V. 106, 37), *say, speak*. [*Cf. Mod. Eng. quoth.*]
cwic (57, 27), *alive, living*. [*See cucu. Cf. Mod. Eng. 'quick and dead,' 'cut to the quick.'*]
cwic-sūsl (51. b), *hell-torment* (lit. *living torment*).
cwide (44), *remark*.
cwuc, see **cwic**.
cymlice (70), *finely, beautifully*.
cyne-helm (43), *crown*.
cynelic (57, 146), *royal*.
cyne-rīce (48, 145), *kingdom*.
cyne-rōf (58), *royally brave*.
cyne-setl (47), *throne*.
cyning (cining) (43, 143, 24), *king*. [*Ger. König.*]

cynn (47), *kind; tribe, nation, people*.
cyn-rēn (47), *generation*.
Cyrenise (57), *of Cyrene*.
Cyrenense, *Cyrene*.
cyssan (113), *kiss*. [*Ger. küssen.*]
cýðan (113, 30), *announce, make known, show*. [*< cūð, by 16; Ger. -künden.*]
cýððu (51. a; 144), *native land*.

D.

dæd (51. 1), *deed, act*; **mid dæde**, *indeed, in fact*.
dæg (43. 2; 24), *day*. [*Ger. Tag.*]
dæg-candel (51. b; 215), *candle of day*.
dæges (74), *by day*.
dæg-hwæmlice (70), *daily, day by day*.
dæg-rēd (47), *dawn*.
dæl (43; 78. 4; 24), *part; amount, quantity, number*. [*Ger. Teil.*]
dælan (113; 164. a), *distribute, dispense, bestow*. [*Ger. teilen, Mod. Eng. deal.*]
dæl-lēas (58; 155. a; 146), *des-titute, devoid*.
dagung (51. 3), *dawn*.
dēad (58, 24), *dead*. [*Ger. tot.*]
dēað (43), *death*. [*Ger. Tod.*]
dēað-dæg (dēoð-) (43. 2), *death-day*.
dēma (53), *judge*.
dēman (113, 90, 17), *doom, condemn*. [*Cf. Chaucer, Knight's Tale 1023.*]
dēofol (43, 24), *devil, demon*. [*< Lat. diabolos; so Ger. Teufel.*]
dēop (58, 24), *deep*. [*Ger. tief.*]
dēope (70), *deeply*. [*Cf. Chaucer, K. T. 1782.*]

dēoplic (57), *profound*.
dēor (47), *beast, animal*. [Ger. *Tier*.]
dēor-cynn (47), *kind (race) of animals*.
dēor-wierðe (59, 146), *precious*.
dēor-wurð (58, 146), *precious*.
dērian (116), *harm, injure*. [Cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 964.]
dīc (43), *dike*.
dīcian (118, 90), *ditch, dike*.
diegelnes (51. 5), *retreat*.
diere (dýre) (59), *precious, valuable*. [Ger. *teuer*.]
diht (47), *plan, design*. [< Lat. *dictum*.]
dohtor (52. 2), *daughter*. [Ger. *Tochter*.]
dōm (43, 17), *judgment; reputation, glory; choice, decision*.
dōmlice (70), *gloriously*.
dōm-weorðung (51. 3), *honor*.
dōn (140), *do; make; put*. [Ger. *thun*.]
drēam (43), *joy, bliss*. [Ger. *Traum*, Mod. Eng. *dream*, but in different sense.]
drēnc (43), *drink*.
drēorig (57), *headlong? melancholy?*
drihten, see **dryhten**.
drihtguma, see **dryhtguma**.
drinc (drync) (43), *drink*.
drincan (III. 104), *drink*. [Ger. *trinken*.]
drohtað (43), *(mode, way of) life*.
drýgnes (51. 5), *dryness, dry land*.
dryhten (43. 4. c; 154. d), *lord*.
dryhtenlic (57), *lordly, of the lord*.
dryht-guma (driht-) (53), *retainer, vassal*.
drync, see **drinc**.

dugan (128), *avail*. [Ger. *taugen*.]
duguð (dugoð) (51. b), *host, band; sustenance; benefit*. [Ger. *Tugend*.]
dūn (51. b), *mountain, hill*.
dūst (47), *dust*. [Ger. *Dunst*.]
dynnan (115. a), *clash*.
dýre, see **diere**.
dýrstig (57), *rash, headstrong*. [Cf. **durran**, 132.]
dýrstignes (51. 5), *presumption, temerity*.

E.

ēa (52), *river*.
ēac, also, *likewise*; **ēac swilce**, also; **swilce ēac**, also, *moreover, as also, likewise*; **swā ēac**, also. [Ger. *auch*. Mod. Eng. *eke*.]
ēad-giefa (-gifa) (53), *bliss-giver, happiness-giver*.
ēadig (57. 3; 146), *happy, blessed*.
ēadiglice (70), *blissfully, in bliss*.
ēadignes (51. 5), *bliss*.
ēage (53. 2), *eye*. [Ger. *Auge*.]
ēagor-strēam (43), *ocean-stream*.
ēag-ðýrel (47), *window*. [ðýr- < ðurh, by 16 and 29.]
eahta (78; 154. c; 21), *eight*. [Ger. *acht*.]
ēalā, *O*.
ēa-lād (51. b), *ocean-way*.
eald (65, 58, 21, 19, 17), *old*.
eald-fēond (46. 3), *ancient foe*.
eald-genīðla (53), *ancient, inveterate enemy*.
eald-hetend (43. 6), *ancient enemy*.
ealdor (aldor) (43. 4), *chief; king*.
ealdor (47), *life*.
ealdor-dōm (43), *primacy, supremacy, chief place*.
ealdor-duguð (51. b), *nobility, leaders*.

- ealdor-mann** (46), *leader, head, prince, noble.*
- ealdor-scipe** (44. 1; 143), *primacy, supremacy, chief place.*
- ēa-liðende** (61; or 43. 6?), *ocean-traversing.*
- eall** (58, 35, 24), *all, every; eall swā, just as, also; ealne weg, always; mid ealle (175), completely; ðurh ealle, entirely.*
- ealles** (71), *in all.*
- eal-swā**, *also, as.* [Ger. *also.*]
- eard** (43), *country.*
- eardian** (118), *dwell.*
- earfoðlice** (70), *distressfully, hard.* [Cf. Ger. *Arbeit.*]
- earfoðnes** (51. 5), *hardship.*
- earfoð-rīme** (59), *difficult to number.*
- earg** (58), *cowardly.* [Ger. *arg.*]
- earm** (58, 21), *poor, wretched.* [Ger. *arm.*]
- earmlīc** (57), *humble, lowly.* [Cf. Ger. *ürllich.*]
- earmlīce** (70), *miserably.*
- earn** (43), *eagle.*
- earnung** (51. 3), *merit, desert.*
- ēastan** (75), *from the east.*
- Ēast-ēngle** (44. 4), plur., *East Angles, i.e. East Anglia.*
- ēast-norðerne** (59), *northeast-erly.*
- Ēastron** (53, irregular), *Easter.* [Ger. *Ostern.*]
- ēast-sæ** (43; 51. b), *sea on the east.*
- ēast-sūð-dæl** (43), *southeast quarter.*
- ēaðe** (77), *easily, unhesitatingly; comp. iedð, irreg. ēað.*
- ēað-mēdu** (51. a), *reverence; humility, kindness.*
- ēað-mōd** (58, 146), *humble, lowly.*
- ēað-mōdlice** (70), *humbly.*
- ēað-mōdnes** (51. 5), *humility, reverence.*
- Ēbrēas** (54), plur., *Hebrews.* [*< Lat. Hebræus.*]
- Ēbrēisc** (57, 146), *Hebrew.*
- ēce** (59), *everlasting, eternal.*
- ēcg** (51. b), *edge.*
- ed-** (142).
- ed-nīwian** (118), *renew.*
- ēdre**, see **ædre.**
- ed-wit** (47), *abuse, insolence.* [Cf. **wite**, and Mod. Eng. *twit.*]
- efen-ēadig** (57), *co-blessed, equally blessed.* [Among moderns, Bishop Ken seems most to have employed such compounds as these.]
- efne** (emne), *behold; just.*
- eft**, *again, once more; afterward; back.*
- eft-hweorfan** (III. 104), *return.*
- egesa** (53), *dread, fear, terror; peril.* [Related to ON. *agi*, from which Mod. Eng. *ave.*]
- egeslic** (57), *dreadful, terrible.* [See **egesa.**]
- eglan** (113), *plague, harass, afflict.* [Mod. Eng. *ail.*]
- egle** (59), *grievous, hateful.* [See **eglan.**]
- Egypta** (54), plur., *Egyptians.*
- ēhtan** (113), *pursue.*
- ēlcung** (51. 3), *delay, postponement.*
- ēle** (44), *oil.* [*< Lat. oleum.*]
- ellen** (47), *courage.*
- ellen-rōf** (58), *strenuous in courage, of undaunted courage.*
- elles** (71), *else.* [**el-** = *other.*]
- ellor-fūs** (58, 30), *bound elsewhither.* [**el-** = *other.*]
- elmesse**, see **ælmesse.**
- elp** (43), *elephant.* [*< Lat. elephas.*]

el-ðēodig (57. 3), *foreign*. [From **el-** = *other*, and **ðēod**, q.v.]

emne, see **efne**.

emniht (52, but no *visible* umlaut), *equinox*. [< **efen-niht**; cf. **emne** for **efne**.]

ende (44), *end*. [Ger. *Ende*.]

endian (118, 90), *end*.

engel (43. 4; 23; 10), *angel*. [< Lat. *angelus*, Gr. ἄγγελος.]

Engle (44. 4), *the Angles, English*. [Of the invaders of Britain Bede says (*Hist. Eccl.* I. 15): "Advenerant autem de tribus Germaniæ populis fortioribus, id est, Saxonibus, Anglis, Jutis. . . . Porro de Anglis, hoc est, de illa patria quæ Angulus dicitur, et ab eo tempore usque hodie manere desertus inter provincias Jutarum et Saxonum perhibetur, Orientales Angli, Mediterranei Angli, Mercei, tota Nordanhymbrorum progenies, id est, illarum gentium quæ ad Boream Humbri fluminis inhabitant cæterique Anglorum populi sunt orti." Cf. also the pun of Pope Gregory the Great (*Hist. Eccl.* II. 1): "Rursus ergo interrogavit, quod esset vocabulum gentis illius. Responsum est, quod Angli vocarentur. At ille, 'Bene,' inquit; 'nam et angelicam habent faciem, et tales angelorum in cælis decet esse coheredes.'"]

Englisc (57), *English*. [Note that any term corresponding to 'Anglo-Saxon,' as the designation of a language, does not exist in Old English. See the *Phil. Soc. Dict.* s.vv. *Anglo-Saxon* and *English*; Bailey's

Dictionary (1783) is the first authority given for the English term 'Anglo-Saxon' in its application to the tongue.]

ēode, see **gān**.

eorl (43), *hero, man*. [Not to be translated 'earl' in these texts.]

earnoste (70), *sharply, vehemently*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *earnest*, Ger. *Ernst*.]

earnostlice (70), *then, accordingly, thus*.

eorre, see **ierre**.

eorðe (53. 1), *earth; ground; land*. [Ger. *Erde*.]

eorðlic (57, 146), *earthly*.

eorð-tilð (51. b; 147), *agriculture*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *tilth*.]

eorð-waran (53), plur., *dwellers on earth*.

eorð-weall (43), *rampart of earth, earthwork*. [**weall** = Lat. *vallum*; one of the oldest Germanic words borrowed from Latin.]

ēower (81, 83), *your, of you*.

erbe(-), **erfe(-)**, see **ierfe(-)**.

ēst (51. 1; 165; 43; 30), *provision; consent, will*. [Cf. **unnan**, **æfestfull**, and Ger. *Gunst*.]

ēste (59, 165), *bountiful*. [Cf. **ēst**.]

ēstlice (70), *willingly*. [Cf. **ēst**.]

etan (V. 106), *eat*. [Ger. *essen*.]

ēðel (43. 4. a), *country, native land, home*.

ēðel-rice (48), *fatherland*.

ēðel-weard (43), *guardian of his country*.

F.

fæc (47), *time, period, interval, space*. [Ger. *Fach*.]

fæder (43. 8; 24), *father*. [Ger. *Vater*.]

- fāge** (59), *fated, death-doomed*. [Scotch *fey*, Ger. *feige*.]
fāger (57), *fair, beautiful, agreeable, lovely*.
fægernes (51. 5), *beauty*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 240.]
fāgre (70; vowel long in poetry), *fairly*.
fāgð (51. b), *certain death(?)*
fāmne (53), *virgin, maiden, damsel*.
fāringa (70), *suddenly, on a sudden*.
fārlice (70), *suddenly*. [Cf. *āfāred*, and Mod. Eng. *fear*.]
fæst (58), *fixed, stable*. [Ger. *fest*, properly *fast*.]
fæsten (47), *fortification*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *fastness*.]
fæsten-geat (47), *fortress-gate*.
fæst-hafol (57; 155. d), *tenacious*. [*hafol* from the root of *habban*.]
fæstnes (51. 5), *firmament*.
fæstnung (51. 3), *hold, stay, support*.
fæt (47. 4), *utensil, implement*.
fæted (57), *beaten?*; **fæted gold**, *gold leaf?*
fæted-sinc (47), *treasure of plated articles?*
fæðm (43), *embracing arms; body; expanse, surface*. [Mod. Eng. *fathom*.]
fāg (58), *gleaming, glittering*.
fāh (58; but used as noun), *foe, enemy*. [Mod. Eng. *foe*.]
fāmig-heals (58), *foamy-necked, foamy-throated*. [Cf. Ger. *Hals*.]
faran (VI. 107; 184. a), *go*.
farōð (*faruð*) (43), *shore*; more generally, as in the next three words, it appears to mean *surge* (and so, possibly, p. 212, l. 12).
farōð-lācende (61, 215), *surge-swimming*. [See *lācan*.]
farōð-rīdende (61, 215), *surge-riding*.
farōð-stræt (51. b; 215), *surge-street, street over the billows*. [*stræt* < Lat. *strāta*.]
faru (51. a), *adventure*.
feallan (R. 109), *fall*. [Ger. *fallen*.]
fealu (57. 5), *dusky* (as often translated; but perhaps rather its literal signification), *yellow* (as Tennyson applies it, *Geraint and Enid* 829, 'And white sails flying on the yellow sea'; but Tennyson, in *The Battle of Brunanburh*, translates *fealone flōd* by 'fallow flood'). [Cf. Ger. *fahl, falb*, and our 'fallow deer'.]
fēa-sceaft (58), *destitute*.
fēawe (58), plur., *few*.
fēcecan (119, irreg.), *fetch*.
fēdan (113), *feed, nourish, support*. [< *fōd-*, by 16.]
fela (indecl. adj.; 154. a), *much; numerous, many (things)*.
feoh-ge-strēon (47), *riches*. [See *gestrēon*, and Mod. Eng. *fee*.]
feohtan (III. 104, 21), *fight*. [Ger. *fechten*.]
fēon (113), *hate*.
fēond (143; 46. 3; 24), *foe, enemy*. [Mod. Eng. *fiend*, Ger. *Feind*; see *fēon*.]
fēore, see *feorh*.
feorh (43, 47, 29), *life, soul*.
feorh-neru (51. a), *sustenance*. [Cf. *nerian*.]
feormian (118), *take in, entertain*.
feor(r) (67; 35. a), *far, distant*. [Mod. Eng. *far*.]
feorr, *far, from (to) a distance*.

feorran (75), *from afar, from of old*. [Cf. Ger. *fern*.]

fēorða (78), *fourth*. [Ger. *vierte*.]

fēower (78), *four*. [Ger. *vier*.]

fēower-tiene (78), *fourteen*. [Ger. *vierzehn*.]

fer-, see **for-**.

fēran (113), *go, journey*. [Cf. Ger. *führen*.]

ferhð (fyrhð) (43, 47), *mind*.

fērian (-ig(e)an) (116), *ferry, carry*.

fēða (53), *troop*.

feðer (51. *b*; 24), *wing, pinion*. [Ger. *Feder*, Mod. Eng. *feather*.]

fiellan (fyllan) (113), *fell, slay*. [Ger. *füllen*, Mod. Eng. *fell*.]

fierd (51. 1), *expedition, campaign*. [Ger. *Fahrt*; cf. **faran**.]

fierding (51. *b*), *warfare*.

fierd-wic (fyrd-) (47), plur., *camp*.

fierst (fyrst) (43), *period, space, interval*. [Ger. *Frist*.]

fifta (78, 30), *fifth*. [Ger. *fünfte*, Gr. *πέμπτος*.]

figað, see **fēon**.

findan (III. 104), *find, devise; encounter*. [Ger. *finden*.]

firas (43, 29), plur., *men*.

firgen-strēam (firigend-) (43), *mountain-stream, i.e. ocean-stream*.

firmamentum (Lat.), *firmament*.

fisc (43, 24), *fish*. [Ger. *Fisch*, Lat. *piscis*.]

fisc-cynn (47), *sort of fish*.

fiscere (44, 143), *fisher(man)*. [Ger. *Fischer*.]

fiscnoð (43), *fishing*.

fiðer-fēte (59), *four-footed*.

fiðru (47), plur., *wings*. [Cf. **feðer**, and Ger. *Gefieder*.]

flāesc (47, 24), *flesh*. [Ger. *Fleisch*.]

flān (43), *arrow*.

flax-fēte (59), *web-footed*.

flēogan (II. 103), *fly*. [Ger. *fliegen*.]

flēon (II. 103), *flee*. [Ger. *fliehen*.]

flocc (43), *company*.

flōd (43), *flood*. [Ger. *Flut*.]

flōd-wielm (-wylm) (43), *seething of the flood*.

flota (53), *vessel* (lit. *float*).

flōwan (R. 109), *flow*.

flyht (43), *flight*.

fnāest (43), *breath*.

fōda (53), *food*.

fōdor (47), *fodder*. [Ger. *Futter*.]

folc (47), *folk, people, nation*. [Ger. *Volk*.]

fole-stēde (44), *folkstead, battleground*.

fole-toga (53), *leader of the people, commander*. [**toga** < same root as **tēon**; cf. Ger. *Herzog*, OE. *heretoga*, and the meaning of Lat. *dux*.]

folde (53), *earth*.

folgian (118; 164. *f*), *attend, serve*. [Ger. *folgen*; cf. **fylgan**.]

folm (51. *b*), *hand*. [Cognate with Lat. *palma*.]

fōn (R. 110), *catch; reach forth*.

fōr (51. *b*), *journey*.

fōr, see **faran**.

for (166, 175, 4), *for; before; of; on; in* (Fr. *selon*).

for- (142).

for-bærnan (113), *scorch, parch*.

for-dilgian (118), *destroy*. [Ger. *vertilgen*.]

for-dōn (142), *destroy*. [Shak.]

for-drifan (I. 102), *drive, impel*. [Ger. *vertreiben*.]

fore, *before*.

fore- (142).

fore-cuman (IV. 105), *anticipate*,
forestall, *prevent*.

fore-cweden (62), *aforesaid*.

fore-ge-gearwian (118), *prepare*.

fore-ge-scrifan (I. 102), *pre-*
scribe. [Ger. *vorschreiben*; Lat.
scribo underlies both.]

fore-sæd (62), *aforesaid*. [Past
part. of *foresēcgean*.]

fore-scēawung (51. 3), *provi-*
dence. [Cf. Ger. *Vorsehung*.]

fore-seġtan (113), *close in*. [Ger.
vorsetzen.]

fore-sprecen (62), *aforesaid*.
[Past part. of *foresprecan*.]

fore-tȳnan (113), *cut off*. [Cf.
tūn, and 16.]

for-giefan (V. 106, 18), *give*,
grant. [See *giefan*; Ger.
vergeben.]

for-gieldan (-gildan) (III. 104;
24; 18; 164. *h*), *requite*, *recom-*
pense; *pay*, *give*. [Ger. *ver-*
gelten.]

for-gietan (V. 106, 18), *forget*.
[Ger. *vergessen*.]

for-grindan (III. 104), *wear out*
(like Lat. *conterere*).

forht (58), *afraid*, *terrified*.

forhtian (118), *tremble*.

for hwon, *why*.

for hwȳ, *why*.

for-ierman (113), *ruin*, *reduce to*
poverty. [< *earm*, by 16; cf.
Ger. *verarmen*.]

for-lætan (R. 110), *let*, *allow*;
let go; *lay down*; *leave*, *leave*
off; *abandon*, *forsake*; *lose*.
[Ger. *verlassen*.]

for-lēosan (II. 103), *lose*. [Cf.
Mod. Eng. *forlorn*, and Ger. *ver-*
lieren.]

for-liden (62), *shipwrecked*. [Past
part. of *forliðan*.]

for-lidennes (51. 5), *shipwreck*.
forma (60, 68, 78), *first*.

for-nīman (IV. 105), *waste*, *deso-*
late, *consume*; **fornumen** *bēon*,
perish, *decay*.

for-spildan (113), *destroy*.

for-swelgan (III. 104), *devour*.

for-swigian (118), *keep secret*,
conceal. [Ger. *verschweigen*.]

for-tredan (V. 106), *tread down*,
tread under foot. [Ger. *ver-*
treten.]

forð, *forth*.

for-ðām, *because*, *for this reason*,
therefore.

for-ðām-ðe, *because*.

for-ðan, *wherefore*.

forð-ā-tēon (II. 103), *bring*
forth.

forð-bringan (114), *bring forth*.

forð-faran (VI. 107), *pass away*,
depart; **forðfaren**, *deceased*,
dead. [Ger. *fortfahren*.]

forð-fōr (51. *b*), *departure*.

forð-ge-lēoran (113), *pass away*,
die.

forð-lāestan (-lēstan) (113), *con-*
tinue, *supply*.

for-ðon (-ðe), *for*, *because*; *there-*
fore; *wherefore*.

forð-tēon (II. 103), *perform*, *rep-*
resent, *exhibit*; *bring forth*.

forð-weard, *advanced*.

for-wandian (118), *reverence*;
hesitate; **forwandiende**, *defer-*
ential, *diffident*.

for-weorðan (III. 104), *perish*.

for-wiernan (113; 156. *j*), *refuse*,
deny.

for-witan (126), *know in advance*.

for-wyrcean (114), *forfeit*. [Ger.
verwirken.]

- fōt** (46), *foot*. [Ger. *Fuss*.]
fracoð (57, 165), *odious, abominable*. [*< *fra-cūð*, cf. *Mayhew*, *OE. Phon.* § 160.]
frægn, see **frignan**.
frætwa (-we) (51. a), plur., *ornaments*.
frætwan (118), *adorn, bedeck*.
frætung (51. 3), *array*.
fram, *from; by; of; from among*.
fram-gān (141), *make headway*.
framlice (from-) (70), *promptly, bravely*.
frēa (53), *lord*.
frēne (59), *perilous, fearful, direful, terrible*.
frēne (70), *fearlessly, dauntlessly, valiantly*.
frēnes (51. 5; 144), *danger, peril*.
frēfran (115. b), *comfort, cheer*.
frēme (59), *foreign, alien*. [Ger. *fremd*.]
frēmman (115. a; 117; 164. e), *benefit, profit*. [Cf. the **fram** (16) in **framgān**.]
frēo (irreg. plur. **frige**), *free*.
frēod (51. b), *good-will, kindness*.
frēolice (70), *freely*. [Ger. *freilich*.]
frēond (46. 3), *friend*. [Ger. *Freund*, Goth. *frijōnds*, pres. part. of *frijōn*, to love; cf. **fēond**.]
frēond-scipe (44. 1; 143), *friendship*. [Cf. Ger. *Freundschaft*, with a different ending.]
frēorig (57; 174. d), *cold, benumbed*.
freoðu (freoðo) (51. a), *defense*. [Ger. *Friede*.]
frige, see **frēo**.
frignan (III. 104), *ask, inquire*.
frið (47), *countenance, support, aid, protection*. [Cf. **freoðu**, and Mod. Eng. *Frede(rick)*.]
frōd (58), *old*.
frōfor (51. b), *comfort, consolation; sustenance*.
fromlice, see **framlice**.
fruma (53), *beginning, first*.
frum-gār (43), *primipile, captain, chief*. [Cf. **fruma**.]
frum-sceaft (51. b), *creation*. [Cf. **fruma**.]
frymð(u) (51, 144), *creation*. [Cf. **fruma**, and 16.]
fugol (43. 4), *bird*. [Ger. *Vogel*, Mod. Eng. *fowl*.]
fugol-cynn (47), *kind of birds*.
fūl (58), *vile, foul*. [Ger. *faul*; more remotely related are Lat. *pus, puteo*.]
full (58), *full*. [Ger. *voll*.]
ful(1), adv., *full*.
full-frēmman (115. a; 117), *finish*.
fultum (43), *help, aid, assistance, support*.
fultumian (118, 90), *assist*.
furðra (67), *first* (lit. *former*).
furðum, even; *whatever*.
fūs (58, 30), *ready*.
fylgan (113), *follow*. [Cf. **folgian**, and Ger. *folgen*.]
fyllan (113), *fill*. [*< full*, by 16; Ger. *füllen*.]
fyllan, see **fiellan**.
fyllu (51. a), *fill, feast*.
fȳr (47), *fire*. [Ger. *Feuer*.]
fyrdwic, see **fierdwic**.
fyrhð, see **ferhð**.
fyrrest (78. 1; 69), *first*.
fȳr-spearca (53), *spark*.
fyrst, see **fierst**.
fȳsan (113; 184. b), *hasten*. [*< fūs*.]

G.

gād (51. b), *goad*.
gærs (47, 31), *herb, grass*. [Ger. *Gras*.]
gaful-ræden (51. 5; 144), *fare*.
gagates (Lat.), *jet*.
gālnes (51. 5), *lust, lewdness*. [Cf. Ger. *Geil(heit)*.]
gān (141), *go*. [Ger. *gehen*.]
gang (gong) (43), *course; circuit, revolution*.
gangan (R. 109), *go*.
gār (43), *spear, javelin*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *garlic*.]
gār-ge-winn (47), *battle of spears*. [See *gewinn*.]
gārsecg (43), *ocean*. [See p. 211, note 3.]
gāst (43), *spirit, ghost*. [Ger. *Geist*.]
gāst-ge-hygd (47), *thought of the mind*.
gāst-ge-rȳne (48, 215), *secret of the soul, thought of the heart(?)*. [See *gerȳne*.]
gāt (52), *goat*. [Ger. *Geiss*.]
gē (18).
ge . . . and, ge . . . ge (202), *both . . . and*.
ge- (142).
ge-æmetgian (118), *release, disengage*. [Cf. *æmetta, æmtig*.]
ge-āgnian (118), *inherit, occupy, take possession of*. [See *āgnian*.]
ge-and-weard (58), *present*. [See *andweard*.]
ge-and-weardan (-qnd-) (113), *answer*. [See *andweardan*.]
gēar (47, 18), *year*. [Ger. *Jahr*.]
gēara, *formerly, of yore*.
geare (70), *well*. [See *yare(ly)*

in Shakespeare, Temp. 1. 1, and elsewhere.]
gēarlic (57), *yearly, annual*. [Ger. *jährlich*.]
gearu-ðancol (gearoðqncol) (57), *ready-witted*. [See *geare, ge-ðancol, ðancolmōd*.]
gearwian (118), *prepare*. [See *geare*.]
geat (47. 4; 18), *gate*.
ge-āxian (118), *learn, discover*. [See *āscian*.]
ge-bed (47, 142), *prayer*. [Ger. *Gebet*; cf. *biddan*.]
ge-beorg (47), *defense, protection; outlook (on)*.
ge-bēorscipe (44. 1), *banquet, feast*. [See *bēorscipe*.]
ge-beran (IV. 105), *bear*. [See *beran*.]
ge-bīdan (I. 102), *await, wait*. [See *bīdan*.]
ge-biddan (V. 106), *pray*. [See *biddan*.]
ge-bīegan (113), *bend, curve*. [See *bīegan*.]
ge-bierhtan (113), *grow bright, shine*. [< *beorht*, by 16.]
ge-bilod (57), *billed*.
ge-bisgian (-bysgian) (118), *fatigue, weary, exhaust*. [See *bisig*.]
ge-bland (-blōnd) (47), *mingling, mixture, confusion*.
ge-blandan (-blōndan) (R. 110), *mingle*.
ge-blēdsian, see *geblētsian*.
ge-blēod (58), *hued, colored*.
ge-blētsian (-blēdsian) (118), *bless*. [See *New Eng. Dict. s.v. bless*.]
ge-blissian (118), *rejoice, make joyful; geblissod wesau, joy*. [See *blissian*.]

- geblōnd(an), see gebland(an).
 ge-blōwan (R. 109), *blow*. [See blōwan.]
 ge-brec (47), *uproar, din*. [Cf. brecan.]
 ge-bringan (114), *waft, carry, convey*. [See bringan.]
 ge-bycgean (114), *buy; redeem*. [See bycgean.]
 ge-byrd (51. b), *birth, extraction, lineage*. [Ger. *Geburt*; see byrd.]
 gebysgian, see gebisgian.
 ge-cēosan (II. 103), *choose, select*.
 ge-cīegan (113), *call*. [See cīegan.]
 ge-cierran (113, 18), *turn; return*. [See cierran.]
 ge-cneordnes (51. 5), *accomplishment*.
 ge-cost (58; 174. d), *tried, trusty*.
 ge-cwēman (113), *please*.
 ge-cwēme (59), *pleasing, acceptable*.
 ge-cwēmlice (70), *acceptably, agreeably*.
 ge-cweðan (V. 106), *say, speak*. [See cweðan.]
 ge-cȳðan (113; 164. b), *announce; prove, evince, show, exhibit, display; designate*. [See cȳðan.]
 ge-dāelan (113), *divide, separate*. [See dāelan.]
 ge-dafenian (118; 164. k), *besit*.
 ge-dafenlic (57), *fitting, suitable*.
 ge-deorf (47), *labor, toil*.
 ge-dician (118), *construct*. [< *dic*; see dician.]
 ge-diersian (-dȳrsian) (118, 90), *exalt, magnify, celebrate*. [< *diere*.]
 ge-dōn (140), *do, perform; make*. [See dōn.]
 ge-drēfan (113), *disturb, agitate, trouble*. [Cf. Ger. *trüben*.]
 gedȳrsian, see gediersian.
 ge-ēacnian (118), *increase, augment*. [< *ēac*.]
 ge-earnian (118), *merit*. [See earnung.]
 ge-ed-nīwian (118), *renew*. [See ednīwian.]
 ge-ēnde-byrdan (113), *order, arrange*.
 ge-ēndian (118), *end, come to an end*. [< *ēnde*; see ēndian.]
 ge-ēndung (51. 3), *end, close*.
 ge-fæstnian (118), *fasten, confirm, establish*.
 ge-faran (VI. 107), *experience, suffer*. [See faran, and 142, ge-(2).]
 ge-fēa (53), *pleasure, joy, delight, gladness*.
 ge-feallan (R. 109), *fall, chance*. [See feallan.]
 ge-feoht (47), *battle*.
 ge-feohtan (III. 104), *fight*. [See feohtan.]
 ge-fēon (V. 106; 156. c; 29), *rejoice*.
 ge-feormian (118), *take in, entertain*. [See feormian.]
 ge-fēra (53, 142), *companion, fellow*.
 gefēran (113), *undertake, experience*. [See fēran.]
 ge-ferian (116), *ferry, carry, bear*. [See fērian.]
 ge-fēr-rāden (51. 5; 144), *company, fellowship, society*.
 ge-fēr-scipe (44. 1; 143), *attendance, companionship; retinue*.
 geflieman (-flāman) (113), *put to flight*.
 ge-flit (47), *strife, dispute*. [Cf. Ger. *Fleiss*.]
 ge-fræt-wian (118), *adorn*. [See fræt-wian.]

ge-frēfran (115. *b*), *console, cheer*.
[See **frēfran**.]
ge-ŕēmman (115. *a*), *effect, perform, work, perpetrate*. [See **ŕēmman**.]
ge-fultumian (118), *assist, help*.
[See **fultumian**.]
ge-fyllan (113, 156), *fill; end, finish, accomplish*. [See **fyllan**.]
ge-fyrn, *adv., a long time ago*.
ge-gada (53), *associate, companion*.
ge-gaderian (118), *gather*.
ge-gaderung (51. 3), *gathering together, assembly, congregation*.
ge-gān (141), *go; win, obtain*.
[See **gān**.]
ge-gearcian (118), *prepare*. [Cf. **geare**.]
ge-gearwian (118), *prepare*. [See **gearwian**, and cf. **gegierwan**.]
ge-gierela (53), *garment; raiment, apparel*.
ge-gierwan (-gyrwan) (113), *prepare*. [Cf. **gegearwian**.]
ge-glengan (113), *adorn*. [< **gleng**.]
ge-gōdian (118), *enrich*. [< **gōd**.]
ge-ŕēmman (115. *a*), *irritate, enrage*. [See **ŕēmian**.]
ge-ŕrētan (113), *greet, salute*.
ge-gyrwan, see **gegierwan**.
ge-hāl (58), *whole, intact*. [See **hāl**.]
ge-hālgian (118), *hallow*. [< **hālig**.]
ge-hātan (R. 110), *promise, pledge; call*. [See **hātan**.]
ge-healdan (R. 109), *observe, keep; reserve; maintain, sustain*. [See **healdan**.]
ge-hēawan (R. 109), *cut down, slay*. [See **hēawan**.]

ge-herian (116), *glorify*. [See **herian**.]
ge-hieran (113), *hear*. [See **hieran**.]
ge-hiersum (57, 146), *obedient*.
ge-hiersumian (118; 164. *f*), *obey*.
ge-hiersumnes (51. 5), *obedience*.
ge-hladan (VI. 107), *lade, load, freight*.
ge-hogian (118), *consider, have in mind*.
ge-hrīnan (I. 102), *attack*.
ge-hū, *in every direction*. [See **hū**.]
ge-hwā (89. *c*; 154. *b*), *each (one)*. [See **hwā**.]
ge-hwile (-hwylc) (89. *a*; 154. *b*), *each (one), every (one)*; **ānra gehwile**, *every (one)*. [See **hwile**.]
ge-hyhtan (113), *hope, trust*. [< **hyht**.]
ge-hȳran, see **gehieran**.
ge-innian (118), *give, bestow (on)*.
ge-in-seglian (118), *seal*. [< Lat. *sigillum*.]
ge-læccēan (114), *catch, seize*. [Cf. Shak., *Macb.* 4. 3. 195.]
ge-lædan (113), *bring, carry*. [See **lædan**.]
ge-læred (62), *taught, educated, trained, skilled, skilful*. [Past part. of **læran**.]
ge-læstan (113), *stand by, assist*. [See **læstan**.]
ge-laðian (118), *invite*. [See **laðian**.]
ge-lēafa (53), *faith*. [Ger. *G(e)-laube*.]
ge-leornian (118), *learn*. [See **leornian**.]
ge-leŕttan (113), *hinder*. [Ger.

- letzen; cf. Shak., *Hamlet* 1. 4. 85, and (Auth. Vers.) *Rom.* 1. 13.]
- ge-lic** (58, 163), *like*. [**< lic**, *body*; cf. Ger. *gleich*.]
- ge-lica** (53), *like, equal*.
- ge-lice** (70), *similarly, likewise*.
- ge-licgan** (V. 106), *border*. [See **licgan**.]
- ge-licnes** (51. 5), *likeness*. [Ger. *Gleichniss*.]
- ge-liefan** (113; 156. *g*), *believe*. [Ger. *g(e)lauben*.]
- ge-lif-fæstan** (113), *make alive, endow with life*. [See **lif**.]
- ge-limp** (47), *adventure, misfortune*.
- ge-limpan** (III. 104), *happen, befall*.
- ge-limplic** (57), *adapted*.
- ge-lōgian** (118), *place, set*.
- ge-lōmlice** (70), *frequently*.
- ge-lufian** (118), *love*. [See **lufian**.]
- ge-lystan** (113, 190), *desire*. [See **lystan**, and Ger. *gelüsten*.]
- ge-maca** (53), *mate, companion*.
- ge-mæccea** (53), *mate, consort, spouse*.
- ge-mæne** (59), *common, universal*.
- gemænelice** (70), *in common*.
- ge-mære** (48), *boundary, end*.
- ge-mang** (-mōng) (47), *troop, phalanx*.
- ge-manig-fieldan** (113), *multiply*.
- ge-mengan** (113; 184. *b*), *minge, associate*.
- ge-meotu**, see **gemet**.
- ge-met** (47, 20), *boundary; sort; effect; law*.
- ge-mētan** (113), *find, encounter*. [See **mētan**.]
- ge-miltsian** (118; 164. *g*; 33), *pity, have compassion on*. [**< milts**.]
- ge-miltsiend** (43. 6), *pitier*.
- gemōng**, see **gemang**.
- ge-munan** (134), *remember, be mindful*.
- ge-myndig** (57), *mindful*.
- ge-myngian** (118), *recount, relate*.
- gēna**, see **gīena**.
- ge-nacodian** (118, 162), *strip*. [**< nacod**.]
- gēn-cwide** (44, 28), *reply*. [See **cwide**.]
- ge-neahhe** (70), *often, frequently*.
- ge-nēa-lācan** (113), *approach, draw nigh*. [See **nēalācan**.]
- ge-nēmnan** (115. *b*), *name*. [See **nēmnan**.]
- ge-nēosian** (118), *visit*. [See **nēosian**.]
- ge-nērian** (116), *save*.
- ge-niman** (IV. 105), *take, seize*. [See **niman**.]
- ge-nyhtsum** (57, 146), *abundant*. [Cf. **nugan** (136), Ger. *genügen*, and Mod. Eng. *enough*.]
- ge-nyhtsumian** (118; 164. *e*), *avail, suffice, be sufficient for, be of use*.
- geofon** (47), *ocean*.
- geoguſ** (51. *b*; 18), *youth*. [Ger. *Jugend*.]
- gēomor-mōd** (58, 18), *sorrowful-minded*. [Cf. Ger. *Jammer*.]
- geond** (18), *along, through, throughout, over*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *beyond*.]
- geong** (58, 65, 18), *young*. [Ger. *jung*.]
- ge-openian** (118), *open*. [**< open**; cf. Ger. *öffnen*.]
- georn** (58; 155. *e*; 21. *b*), *eager*. [See **giernan**.]
- georne** (70), *surely, certainly*. [Ger. *gern*.]

georn-full (58), *busied, occupied*.
georn-fulnes (51. 5), *piety, zeal*.
geornlice (70), *assiduously, zealously*.

georran (III. 104), *rattle*.

gēotan (II. 103), *stream*. [Ger. *giessen*.]

ge-rædan (113), *read*; **geræd** *is*, *reads*. [Cf. Ger. *rathen*; see *rædan*.]

ge-řeccēan (114), *interpret, expound*. [See *řeccēan*.]

ge-rēnian (118, 28), *adorn*.

ge-reord (47), *repast*.

ge-reordian (118, 90), *feed, refresh*.

ge-reſtan (113; 184. b), *rest, repose*. [< *reſt*.]

ge-rētan (113), *refresh, invigorate, cheer*. [< *rōt*, *glad*.]

ge-riht (47), *direct way*. [See *riht*.]

ge-rim-cræft (43), *arithmetic, chronology*.

ge-rȳne (48), *mystery*. [-< *rūn*, by 16.]

ge-sægan (113), *lay low*.

ge-sælan (113, 190), *happen, befall, chance*.

ge-sælig (57. 3), *delightful*. [Cf. Ger. *selig*.]

ge-samnian (-sōmnia) (118), *gather*.

ge-scēadan (R. 110), *separate*.

ge-sceaft (51. b), *creature, creation*.

ge-scēawian (118), *behold*. [See *scēawian*.]

ge-scieldan (-scyldan) (113), *defend, protect*. [Cf. *scield*.]

ge-scieldnes (51. 5), *defense, protection*.

ge-scieppan (VI. 107), *create*. [See *scieppan*.]

ge-scierpan (113), *clothe, apparel*.
ge-scierpla (-scirpla) (53), *raiment, apparel*.

ge-scrēpe (59), *suitable, adapted*.

ge-scrifen (62), *prescribed, fixed, regular, customary*. [Past part. of *gescrifan* < Lat. *scribo*.]

ge-scrȳdan (113, 16), *clothe*. [See *scrȳdan*.]

ge-scyldan, see *gescieldan*.

ge-sēcean (114), *visit, gain, touch, attain*. [See *sēcean*.]

ge-sēcgean (123), *say; give (thanks)*. [See *sēcgean*.]

ge-sellan (114), *give*. [See *sellan*.]

ge-sendan (113), *send, throw*. [See *sendan*.]

ge-sēon (V. 106), *see; gesegen is, seems*, Lat. *videtur*.

ge-setennes (51. 5), *institute, ordinance*.

ge-sētnes (51. 5), *narrative*.

ge-sēttan (113), *set, place; occupy; appoint, settle; compose*. [See *sēttan*.]

ge-sewenlic (57), *visible*.

ge-siēne (-sȳne) (59), *visible*.

ge-sihð (51. 1), *countenance*.

ge-sittan (V. 106), *sit; possess, inherit*. [See *sittan*.]

ge-sið (43), *companion*. [Cf. *sið*, and Ger. *Gesinde*.]

ge-slēan (VI. 107), *smite, strike*. [See *slēan*.]

ge-smierwan (113), *anoint*.

ge-smyltan (113, 17), *calm*. [< *smolt*, *serene*; cf. *smylte*.]

gesōmnia, see *gesamnia*.

ge-spān (47), *clasp, network*.

ge-spōwan (R. 109, 190), *succeed*.

ge-sprec (47), *conversation*. [Ger. *Gespräch*; cf. *sprecan*.]

- ge-standan** (VI. 107), *assail*.
[See **standan**.]
- ge-staðelian** (-staðolian) (118),
*establish, render steadfast; re-
store*.
- ge-staðolfæstian** (-steaðulfes-
tian) (118), *establish, perform*.
- ge-stigan** (I. 102), *ascend to*.
[See **stigan**.]
- ge-stillan** (113), *still, pacify,
quiet; subside*. [See **stillan**.]
- ge-strangian** (118), *strengthen*.
[< **strang**.]
- ge-stregdan** (III. 104), *sprinkle*.
- ge-strēon** (47), *profit, gain*. [Cf.
strēonan.]
- ge-strēowian** (118), *strew*.
- ge-sund** (58), *well*. [Ger. *ge-
sund*.]
- ge-swencan** (113), *torment, vex,
wear out*. [See **swencan**.]
- ge-swengan** (113), *swinge, toss*.
- ge-sweotolian** (118), *manifest;
bewray, expose, discover*. [<
sweotol.]
- ge-swęrian** (VI. 107), *swear*.
[See **swęrian**.]
- ge-swīcan** (I. 102; 156. k), *cease;
fail*. [See **swīcan**.]
- ge-swinc** (47), *toil, effort*. [Cf.
swincan.]
- ge-swing** (47), *rolling, undula-
tion*. [Cf. **swingan**.]
- ge-syndig** (57. 3), *fair, favoring,
propitious*. [< *gesund*, by 16.]
- gesýne**, see **gesīene**.
- ge-syngian** (118), *sin*. [Cf. **syn-
full**.]
- getācnian** (118), *signify, indicate*.
[See **tācnian**.]
- ge-tācnung** (51. 3), *sign*. [<
tācen.]
- ge-tācecan** (114), *point out, direct;
appoint; teach*. [See **tācecan**.]
- ge-tæl** (47), *reckoning*.
- ge-tēon** (II. 103), *bring up; play*.
[See **tēon**.]
- ge-timbran** (115. b), *furnish, sup-
ply* (lit. *construct*).
- ge-trymman** (115. a), *fortify*.
[See **trymman**.]
- ge-ðanc** (47), *thought, mind*.
- ge-ðancol** (-ðancul) (57), *consid-
erate*. [See **ðancolmōd**, **gearo-
ðancol**.]
- ge-ðeaht** (47), *counsel, advice*.
- ge-ðeahtend** (43. 6), *counsellor*.
- ge-ðencean** (114), *remember*. [See
ðencean.]
- ge-ðræc** (47), *commingling, tur-
bulence, tumult*.
- ge-ðræstan** (113), *afflict*.
- ge-ðrēan** (113), *dismay*. [See
ðrēan.]
- ge-ðrēatian** (118), *rebuke*. [See
ðrēatian.]
- ge-ðring** (47), *throng, rush*.
- ge-ðungen** (62), *excellent*. [<
ðēon, *thrive*.]
- ge-ðwārian** (118), *agree*.
- ge-ðwārnnes** (51. 5), *concord,
agreement*.
- ge-ðýn** (113), *restrain*.
- ge-ðyncean** (114), *seem, appear;
geðūht is, seems*. [See **ðync-
ean**.]
- ge-un-trumian** (118), *enfeeble, de-
bilitate, prostrate; geuntrumod,
sick, Lat. infirmus*. [< **untrum**.]
- ge-wāgan** (113), *plague, molest*.
- ge-wātan** (113), *wet, moisten*.
- ge-wealc** (47), *welter*.
- ge-weald** (47), *control, rule, do-
minion*. [Ger. *Gewalt*; see
wealdend.]
- ge-węndan** (113), *turn; return,
depart, go; translate*. [See
węndan.]

- ge-weorc** (47), *work*. [See **weorc**.]
ge-weorþ (47), *smiting*.
ge-weorðan (III. 104), *become, be; make; happen; convert*. [See **weorðan**.]
ge-weorðian (118), *distinguish*. [See **weorðian**.]
ge-wieldan (113), *rule, have dominion over*. [< **geweald**, by 16; see Mod. Eng. *wield*.]
ge-wiht (47), *weight*. [Ger. *Gewicht*.]
ge-wilnian (118; 156. a), *desire*. [See **wilnian**.]
ge-winn (47), *labor, toil; hardship, distress*. [See **winnan**.]
ge-winna (53), *enemy*. [See **winnan**.]
ge-winnfullic (57), *laborious, toilsome, fatiguing*.
ge-wislice (70, 76), *openly, plainly*.
ge-wissian (118), *guide, direct*.
ge-witan (126), *find out, learn*. [See **witan**.]
ge-witan (I. 102; 184. a), *depart, go*.
ge-witt (47), *understanding*.
ge-writ (47), *writing, writ; letter; document, instrument, will*.
ge-writan (I. 102), *write*.
ge-wuna (53), *custom, wont*.
ge-wunian (118), *be wont, use; dwell*. [See **wunian**.]
ge-wyrcean (114), *make, build*. [See **wyrcean**.]
giefan (gifan) (V. 106, 18), *give*. [Ger. *geben*.]
gifeðe (gifeðe) (48), *chance*.
gifu (gifu) (51. a), *gift; boon*.
gieman (113; 156. f), *rule over*.
giēna (gēna), *yet*.
giernan (113), *desire; solicit (the hand of), woo*. [< **georn**, by 16.]
giest-hūs (47), *inn*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *guest-chamber*.]
giestran-dæg (gystran-) (43), *yesterday*.
giēt (gīt, gýt), *yet; still; as yet, hitherto*.
gif, *if*. [Not related to **giefan**.]
gifeðe, see **gifeðe**.
gifu, see **gifu**.
gim-cynn (47), *gems of every kind*.
gimm (43), *gem, precious stone*. [Borrowed from Lat. *gemma* before ca. 650.]
ginn (58), *spacious, ample*.
gingra (65, 53), *disciple*.
giō, *formerly, long ago, once upon a time*. [See **iū**.]
gīt, see **giēt**.
glæs (47), *glass*.
glēaw (58), *prudent, wise*.
glēawlice (70), *shrewdly, judiciously, wisely*. [Ishment.]
gleng (51. b), *adornment, embellishment*.
glīdan (I. 102), *glide*. [Ger. *gleiten*.]
gōd (58, 5, 4), *good*. [Ger. *gut*.]
gōd (47), *prosperity; plur., goods, good things, property; benefactions*.
God (43, 5, 4), *God*. [Ger. *Gott*; according to Kluge, the 'Being invoked'.]
god-cund (58), *divine*. [godhead.]
god-cundnes (51. 5), *divinity*.
godecundmiht (-mæht) (51. 1), *majesty*. [Divine Father.]
God-Fæder (43. 8), *God-Father*.
god-spell (47), *gospel*.
gōd-wēbb (47), *purple*.
gold (47), *gold*.

gold-frætwa (51. a), plur., golden ornaments.

gold-hord (47), treasure.

gold-lēaf (47), gold leaf.

gong, see gang.

græg (58), gray. [Ger. grau.]

gram (57), fierce, raging.

gręmman (115. a), enrage. [< gram, by 16.]

grēne (59), green. [Ger. grün.]

gręot (47), dust; shingle. [Ger. Griess.]

grętan (113), greet, salute; take leave of. [Ger. grüßen.]

gręwð, see grōwan.

grindan (III. 104), whirl. [Mod. Eng. grind.]

grōwan (R. 109), grow.

grund (43), earth; bottom; sea (perhaps orig. shallow, shoal). [Ger. Grund, Mod. Eng. ground.]

gyre-hwil (51. b), period of terror.

gurron, see georran.

guma (53), man, hero. [Mod. Eng. (bride)groom.]

gūð (51. b; 30), war. [Ger. -gund, in Hildegund, e.g.; cf. Gondibert.]

gūð-fana (53), gonfalon, standard. [See Mod. Eng. gonfalon; cf. Ger. Fahne, Mod. Eng. vane.]

gūð-freca (53), warrior.

gūð-rinc (43), warrior.

gūð-sceorp (47), war-trappings.

gyden (51. b; 17), goddess.

gylden (146, 17), golden.

gystran-dæg, see giestran-dæg.

gýt, see giet.

H.

habban (121, 188), have; possess; accept, keep; receive. [Ger. haben; cf. Lat. habere.]

hād (43), sex.

hādor (57), bright, serene. [Ger. heiter.]

hæl (47), salvation; rescue, escape. [Ger. Heil.]

Hælend (43. 6), Saviour, Jesus. [Ger. Heiland.]

hæleð (43. 9), hero, man. [Ger. Held.]

hælu (51. a), salvation; rescue.

hærfest (43), harvest. [Ger. Herbst; cf. Lat. carpere, Gr. καρπός.]

hærn (51. b), ocean.

hæs (51. b), order, direction, command. [Cf. Mod. Eng. behest, Ger. Geheiss.]

hætu (51. a), heat. [hāt, by 16.]

hæðen (57. 3), heathen. [Cf. Ger. Heide, and Mod. Eng. heath; so Lat. paganus < pagus.]

hāl (58), whole, hale; hāl gedōn, save. [Ger. heil.]

hālig (57. 3; 146), holy. [< hāl; Ger. heilig.]

hālsian (118), conjure, implore, entreat. [< hāl.]

hām (74, 24), home. [Ger. heim.]

hand (51. 1. 3), hand. [Ger. Hand.]

hār (58), hoar(y), gray.

hāt (58), hot, fervent. [Ger. heiss.]

hātan (R. 110), call; command; hātte, is, was called. [Ger. heissen; cf. archaic Eng. hight.]

hē (81).

hēa, see hēah.

hēa-clif (47), lofty cliff.

hēa-dēor (47), high-deer. [Cf. Ger. Hochwild; without a prefix, OE. dēor rarely, if ever, means 'deer.']

hēafod (47. 1, 6; 23), head. [Ger. Haupt, Lat. caput, for *cauput.]

hēafod-ge-rim (47), *number by heads, poll.*

hēah (hēa) (65; 58. 1; 17), *high; great.* [Ger. *hoch.*]

hēah-cyning (43), *high king.*

hēah-ge-strēon (47), *sumptuous, superb treasure.* [See **gestrēon.**]

hēah-setl (hēah-) (47), *throne.*

hēah-stefn (58), *lofty-prowed.*

healdan (R. 109), *hold; observe, maintain; keep, reserve.* [Ger. *halten.*]

healf (51. b), *hand, i.e. side.*

healf (58), *half.* [Ger. *halb.*]

hēalīc (57, 146), *lofty.*

heall (51. b), *hall.* [Ger. *Halle.*]

hēan (58), *lowly, servile, of low degree; poor.*

hēanes (51. 5), *height, highest point.*

hēanne, see **hēah.**

hēap (43), *crowd, swarm, throng, assemblage.* [Ger. *Haufe.*]

heard (58; 21. a; 24), *brave, intrepid.* [Ger. *hart.*]

hearde (70), *painfully, grievously.*

hearm (43; 21. a), *injury.* [Ger. *Harm.*]

hearpe (53. 1; 21. a), *harp, lyre.* [Ger. *Harfe.*]

hearpe-nægl (43), *plectrum.*

hearpe-strēng (43), *harpstring.*

hearpian (118, 90), *harp, play the harp.* [Ger. *harfen.*]

hēaðu-liðend (hēaðo-) (43. 6), *seafarer.*

heaðu-rinc (heaðo-) (43, 21), *warrior.*

heaðu-wæd (51. b), *warlike garment, martial weed.*

hēawan (R. 109), *hew, cleave.*

hebban (VI. 107), *elevate, lift; hebban ūp, be exalted.*

hefon, see **heofon.**

hefig (57), *grievous, irksome.*

hefigian (118), *become worse.*

hefignes (51. 5), *burden.*

hēhðo, see **hiehðu.**

helan (IV. 105), *conceal.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale* 235; Ger. *hehlen.*]

hehl (51. b), *hell.* [Ger. *Hölle.*]

helm (43), *helmet; protector.* [Ger. *Helm.*]

help (51. 5; 5), *help.* [Cf. Ger. *Hilfe.*]

hēo (81).

hēof (43), *mourning, weeping.*

heofon (43. 4. d; 20), *heaven.*

heofon-candel (51. b; 215), *candle of heaven.*

heofon-cyning (43), *king of heaven.*

heofone (53. 3), *heaven.*

heofon-fȳr (47), *celestial fire, fire from heaven.*

heofon-lēoma (53), *radiance of heaven.*

heofonlic (57), *heavenly, celestial, of heaven.*

heofonlice (70), *from heaven.*

heofon-riċe (48), *kingdom of heaven, heavenly kingdom.*

heofon-ðrymm (43), *glory of heaven.*

heolfrig (57), *gory.*

heolstor (47), *darkness.*

heonan (75), *hence.*

heorte (53. 1; 24; 21. b), *heart.* [Ger. *Herz.*]

hēr (75, 24), *here.* [Ger. *her.*]

hēr-æfter, *hereafter.*

here (44. 2; 18), *army, host.* [Ger. *Heer*; cf. Mod. Eng. *harbor, heriot.*]

here-folc (47), *army.*

here-pæð (herpað) (43), *highway.* [Cf. Ger. *Heerstrasse.*]

- here-rēaf** (47), *plunder, spoil*.
here-stræt (51. b), *highway, lit. military road*. [Ger. *Heerstrasse*.]
here-wæða (53), *warrior*.
hergian (118), *harry, ravage, lay waste*. [Ger. (ver)heeren.]
herian (116), *praise*.
heriges, see **here**.
herpað, see **herrepæð**.
hēt, see **hātan**.
hī (81).
hider (75), *hither*.
hiehsta, see **hēah**.
hiehþu (hēhðo) (51. a), *height, high*.
hienan (113), *insult, oppress*. [**< hēan, by 16.**]
hienð (51. b), *injury, harm*. [**< hēan, by 16.**]
hieran (hȳran) (113, 117), *hear*.
hiera, here (81, 83).
hiernes (51. 5), *obedience*.
higerōf, see **hygerōf**.
hiht, see **hyht**.
hilum, see **hiwan**.
hild (51. 5), *conflict, battle*. [Orig. *Hild, goddess of war.*]
hilde-lēoð (47), *battle-lay*.
hilde-nædre (53. 1; 215), *battle-adder, arrow*. [See *New Eng. Dict. s.v. adder.*]
hilde-wæpen (47. 1), *battle-weapon*.
him, hine, his, hit (81, 83).
hin-gang (-iŋg) (43), *departure*. [Ger. *Hingang*.]
hiw (47), *kind; color*. [Cf. *Spenser, F. Q. 3. 6. 33, 35.*]
hiwan (53), plur. *brethren, brotherhood, conventual household, chapter*.
hlæfdige (53. 1), *lady*. [Cf. p. 222, note 2.]
hlæst (47), plur., *wares, merchandise, cargo*. [Ger. *Last*; cf. *hladan*.]
hlāf (43), *bread; food*. [Archaic Ger. *Laib*; Mod. Eng. *loaf*.]
hlāford (43), *lord*. [**< hlāf + weard.**]
hlāford-lēas (58), *lordless, without a leader*.
hlāford-scipe (44. 1), *lordship, rule*.
hlanc (58), *lank, gaunt*.
hlēo (47. 3), *shelter; protector*. [Mod. Eng. *lee*.]
hlēotan (II. 103), *obtain, gain*. [Cf. Ger. *Loos*, Mod. Eng. *lot*.]
hlēoðor-cwide (44), *narrative, story; hymn*.
hlēoðrian (118), *speak; proclaim*.
hleoðu, see **hlið**.
hlifian (118), *tower*.
hlimman (hlymman) (III. 104), *resound*.
hlið (47, 20), *hill*.
hlōðian (118), *pillage, plunder*.
hlūde (70), *loudly*.
hlūtor (hlutter) (57), *pure, clear*.
hlymman, see **hlimman**.
hlynnan (115. a), *roar, boom*.
hōc (43), *hook*.
hof (47), *building, dwelling, abode*.
holm (43), *ocean, sea*.
holm-ðracu (51. a), *tossing of the sea, boisterous sea*.
holm-weard (43), *warden of the sea*.
holm-weg (43), *path of the ocean*.
holt (47), *grove, forest*. [Ger. *Holz*; cf. *Chaucer, Prol. 6.*]
hōlunga (70), *in vain*.
horig (57), *squalid*.
horn-boga (53), *bow of horn*.
horn-fisc (43), *sword-fish?*
horn-scip (47), *beaked ship*.

hors (47, 31), *horse*. [Ger. *Ross*.]
hosp (43?), *reproach, abuse*.
hrædlice (70), *with speed; immediately*.
hrædnes (51. 5), *celerity*.
hræfn (hrefn) (43), *raven*. [Ger. *Rabe*.]
hræw (47), *corpse*.
hran (43), *whale*.
hran-rād (hrqn-) (51. b), *path of the whale*.
hraðe (70), *quickly*.
hrefn, see **hræfn**.
hrēmig (57; 174. d), *exulting*.
hrēoh (58), *rough, fierce, rude*.
hrēohnes (51. 5), *tempest*.
hrēosan (II. 103), *fall*.
hrēran (113), *agitate, toss*. [Ger. *rühren*.]
hring (43), *ring*. [Ger. *Ring*.]
hrōf (43, 24), *roof*.
hrqn-rād, see **hran-rād**.
hrȳðer (47), plur., *cattle*.
hū, *how*.
hund (78, 79), *hundred*.
hund-seofontig (78), *seventy*.
hund-tēontig (78), *a hundred-fold*.
hunger (43), *famine, starvation*. [Ger. *Hunger*.]
hungrig (57), *hungry, an hungered*. [Ger. *hungrig*.]
hup-seax (47), *hip-dagger*.
hūs (47), *house*. [Ger. *Haus*.]
hwā (88; 89. c), *who; any one*.
hwæl (43. 2), *whale*. [Cf. Ger. *Wall* (fish).]
hwæl-mere (44), *whale-mere, whale-sea*.
hwænne, see **hwonne**.
hwær (75), *where*.
hwæt, *what*.
hwæt-hwega (-hwugu) (89. b; 154. b), *something*.

hwætlice (70, 76), *quickly*.
hwæðer, *whether*.
hwæðre (-ere), *yet, still, nevertheless*.
hwanan (hwanon) (75), *whence*.
hwaðerian (118), *rage*.
hwealf (58), *vaulted, hollow*.
hwelan (IV. 105), *roar, thunder*.
hwēol (47), *wheel*. [Cognate with Gr. *κύκλος*, Mod. Eng. *cycle*, (bi)*cycle*.]
hweorfan (hwyrfan) (III. 104), *return; turn; move*.
hwettan (113), *incite*.
hwider (75), *whither*.
hwil (51. b), *while, time*; **ðā hwile** **ðe**, *the while that, while*.
hwile (hwylc) (88; 89. a), *which, what; any*.
hwilum (72), *sometimes; a while*. [Mod. Eng. *whilom*; cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1.]
hwōn, *somewhat, a little*.
hwone, see **hwā**.
hwonne (hwænne, hwænne), *when; until*.
hwylc, see **hwilc**.
hwyrfan, see **hweorfan**.
hyge-rōf (hige-) (58), *valiant-souled*.
hyge-ðancol (57), *thoughtful-minded*.
hȳhsta, see **hiehsta**.
hyht (hiht) (43) *hope; joy, gladness, bliss; bent*.
hyldu (hyldo) (51. a), *kindness*. [Cf. Ger. *Huld*.]
hyngran (115. b; 190), *hunger*.
hȳran, see **hieran**.
hyre, see **hiere**.
hyrned-nebb (58, 17), *horny-beaked*.
hyrst (51. b), *ornament*.

I.

ic (81).

idel (57), *empty, void*, Lat. *inanis* (Auth. Vers. 'without form'). [Ger. *eitel*; cf. Shak., *Oth.* 1. 3. 140, 'deserts idle.']idelnes (51. 5), *idleness, indolence*.ides (51. b), *maid, nymph, woman*.

[From the Norse mythology we learn that this Germanic word signified 'demi-goddess,' or perhaps 'female guardian-angel,' as well as 'maid'; it was applied to giantesses and Norns, to heroic women, resembling the Valkyries, such as Brunhild and Gudrun, and to goddesses, such as Freyja. Cf. the remarks of Tacitus, *Germania* 8: "They even believe that the sex has a certain sanctity and prescience, and they do not despise their counsels, or make light of their answers. In Vespasian's days we saw Veleda, long regarded by many as a divinity."]

ie, see *ēa*.iecan (*ȳcan*) (113, 33), *augment, aggravate*. [*< ēac.*]ielde (*ǣlde*) (44. 4), plur. *men*.ieldra, see *eald*.ieldu (51. a; 19; 17), *age*. [Mod. Eng. *eld*; see Chaucer, *K.T.* 1589.]ielfete (53. 1), *swan*.ierfe (48), *inheritance*.ierfe-land (47), *heritable land, inheritance*.ierman (113), *afflict*. [*< earm*, by 16.]iermōu (51. a), *poverty*. [*< earm*; see 144.]iernan (III. 104, 31), *run; revolve*.ierre (*eorre*) (48), *wrath*.ierre (59), *wrathful*.ierð (51. b), *field of corn, crop*.ierðling (43, 143), *plowman, husbandman, farmer*.ieð, see *ēaðe*.ig-land (47), *island*.ilca (86), *same*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 64.]in, prep., *in; into; by; through*.in, adv., *in*.in-beran (IV. 105), *carry in*.in-gān (141), *enter*.in-gangan (R. 109), *enter*.in-ge-bringan (114), *bring in*.innan, *within*.inne (69), *within, inside*.

in-segel (47), *seal*. [Borrowed from Lat. *sigillum*, ca. A.D. 500; the form *sigil* is earlier, ca. 400.]

in-sittan (V. 106), *sit within*.intinga (53), *cause; account*.in-tō, *into*.in-weardlice (70), *fervently, ardently*.isern (47), [Ger. *Eisen*.]isern (57), *iron*.iu (see *giō*), *of old, formerly*.

L.

lā, *indeed, O*.lāc (47), *present, gift*.lācan (R. 110), *bound, leap, toss; sail*.lād (51. b), *way, journey*.

lāce-cræft (43), *remedy*. [Mod. Eng. *leechcraft*; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 3. 18.]

lādan (113), *lead, bring, take; carry; produce*. [Ger. *leiten*.]

Lāden (47), *Latin*.lāran (113, 17), *teach, direct*.lāring-māden (47), *pupil*.

læs (51. b, but irregular; the termination **-we** as in **beadu**, 51. a), *pasture*. [Archaic Mod. Eng. *leasow*.]

læs, **læs(es)t**, see **lȳtel**, and **ðȳ-læs-ðe**.

læstan (113), *carry out, perform, do*. [Ger. *leisten*, Mod. Eng. *last*.]

Læstinga ēa, *Lastingham* (near Whitby).

lætan (R. 110), *let, allow*. [Ger. *lassen*.]

læððu (51. a), *affliction*. [< **lāð**, by 16.]

lāf (51. b), *remnant*; **tō lāfe**, *left*. **lago-**, see **lagu-**.

lagu (45), *ocean, sea*.

lagu-fæsten (47), *ocean, deep*.

lagu-flōd (lago-) (43), *sea-flood*.

lagu-lād (lago-) (51. b), *ocean-journey*.

lagu-strēam (43), *ocean-stream*.

lām (43), *dust* (lit. *loam*). [Ger. *Lehm*; more remotely cognate (ablaut relation) with Lat. *limus*.]

lamb (50), *lamb*.

land (47, 24), *land, country*; **hēr on lande**, *in this country*. [Ger. *Land*, and cf. *hier zu Lande*.]

land-būend (lōnd-) (43. 6), *dweller in the land*.

land-ge-mære (48), *border*.

land-sceap (47), *land*.

lang (58, 65), *long*. [Ger. *lang*.]

lange (70, 77), *long* (of time).

lang-sweored (57), *long-necked*. [Cf. Koch, *Gram.* III: 71; Mätzner, I. 470.]

lār (51. b), *study; instruction, teaching; counsel, guidance*. [Ger. *Lehre*, Mod. Eng. *lore*.]

lārēow (43), *teacher, master; learned man*. [< **lār** + **ðēow**.]

lāst (43), *track, footprint*. [Mod. Eng. *last* (for shoes), Ger. *Leiste(n)*.]

lāttēowdōm (43, 14), *guidance*. [Cf. the etymology of **lārēow**.]

lāð (58), *hostile; hateful*.

laðian (118), *summon*. [Ger. (*ein*)*laden*.]

lēad (47), *lead*. [Ger. *Lot*.]

lēaf (51. b), *leave, permission*. [Ger. (*Ur*)*laub*, (*Er*)*laub(niss)*.]

lēaf (47), *leaf*. [Ger. *Laub*.]

leahtor (43), *sin, iniquity*.

lēan (43), *reward, recompense*. [Ger. *Lohn*.]

lēgean (115, note), *place, put, set*. [From the second stem (92) of **liegan**, by 16; Ger. *legen*, Mod. Eng. *lay*.]

lēnctenlic (57), *vernal*.

lēncten-tid (51. 1), *spring*. [Cf. Ger. *Lenz*, Mod. Eng. *Lent*.]

lēng, see **lange**.

lēngra, see **lang**.

lēngu (51. a), *length*.

lēo (Lat.), *lion*.

lēoda (lēode) (44. 4), plur., *people*. [Ger. *Leute*.]

lēod-mearc (51. b), *region*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *margrave*, *Marches*, *marquis*.]

lēof (58, 64, 165), *dear, well-beloved; sb. sir, master; comp. dearer, preferable*. [Ger. *lieb*, Mod. Eng. *lief, lieve*; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 2. 33.]

leofa, see **libban**.

lēofwēnde (59), *friendly; leof-wendum, ardently, fervently*.

lēoht (47), *light*. [Ger. *Licht*.]

lēoht (58), *bright, radiant*. [Ger. *licht*.]

- lēoht-fruma** (53), *author of light*; for **lifes lēohtfruma** cf. Jn. 8. 12, Acts 3. 15. [Cf. **fruma**.]
lēoma (53), *light, radiance, brightness*.
leomu, see **lim**.
leornian (118), *learn*. [Ger. *lernen*.]
leornung (51. 3), *study*. [Mod. Eng. *learning*.]
lēoð (47), *poetry, verse*. [Ger. *Lied*.]
lēt, see **lētan**.
libban (122), *live*. [Ger. *leben*.]
licgan (V. 106), *lie; rest*. [Ger. *liegen*.]
līc-hama (53), *body*. [**hama** = *shape, cover*; cf. Ger. *Leichnam*.]
līc-ham-lēas (58, 146), *bodiless, incorporeal*.
līc-hamlic (57), *bodily*.
līcian (118; 164. k), *please*. [Mod. Eng. *like*; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 7. 27.]
lid (47), *vessel, craft, bark*. [Cf. **līðan**.]
lid-weard (43), *shipmaster*.
lid-wērig (57), *weary with voyaging*.
līefan (113), *allow, permit*. [< **lēaf**; Ger. (*er*)*lauben*.]
lieg (43), *thunderbolt, levin*.
lieget (47. 7), *lightning*.
lēhting (51. 3), *lighting, illumination*. [< **lēoht**, by 16.]
līf (47), *life*. [Ger. *Leib*.]
lifde, lifgende, see **libban**.
līflīc (57), *of life*. [Ger. *leiblich*; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 7. 20.]
lim (47, 20), *limb, bough, branch*.
lind (51. b), *linden shield, shield*.
lind-wīgend (-wiggend) (43. 6), *shield-warrior*.
liss (51. b), *gentleness, tenderness*; (mid) **lissum**, *gently, tenderly*.
līðan (I. 102), *set out; sail, cruise*.
līðe (59, 30), *good, obliging, friendly; gentle, mild*. [Ger. (*ge*)*lind*; cf. Spenser, *Virgil's Gnat* 221.]
līðe (70), *gently*.
loc (47), *lock*.
locen, see **lūcan**.
lōcian (118), *look*.
lof (43), *honor, praise*; **in lofe**, *praising*. [Ger. *Lob*.]
loft (47), *air, sky*.
lond-, see **land-**.
lor (47), *destruction*; **tō lore weorðan**, *perish*.
lūcan (II. 103), *link? weave? close?*
lufe (53. 1), *love*. [*adore*.]
lufian (118, 119), *love; worship*,
lufiend (43. 6), *lover*.
lufiendlic (57), *loving*.
luflice (70), *dear*.
lufu (51. a; 53. 3; 24), *love*.
lungre, speedily.
lust (43), *joy, desire, longing*. [Ger. *Lust*; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 4. 4. 44.]
lyfdon, see **libban**.
lyft (47; 51. b), *air*; **under lyfte**, cf. our 'under the sun.' [Cf. Ger. *Luft*.]
lyre (44), *loss*. [Stem formed from that of the third stem of **lēosan**, *lose*, by 16.]
lystan (113), *list, like, cause enjoyment*. [< **lust**, by 16; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 7. 18, 19.]
lȳt (58), (*but*) *few*.
lȳt, adv., (*but*) *little*.
lȳtel (57, 66), *little*; comp. *less(er)*, *smaller*; superl. *least*.
lȳt-hwōn (58), (*but*) *few*.

M.

mā (77), *more, further; rather.*

mā-cræftig (57), *very expert? expert in seamanship?* [In favor of the latter may be quoted Grimm's note in his edition of *Andreas und Elene*, p. 103: "257. mācræftig, und nochmals A. 472 der comparativ mācræftigra. daher es selbst unpassend aus dem comparativ mā, magis gedeutet würde, der sonst nirgends und in keinem andern dialect bei zusammensetzungen verstärkt. Auch scheint der sinn etwas bestimmteres zu fordern, ein des meeres, der schiffahrt kundig; ich vermute ein altes subst. mā, synonym und wurzel von mere, mācræftig = merecræftig."]

mādm, see **māðm**.

mæcg, see **męcg**.

māden (47, 38, 28), *girl, maiden, damsel.*

mæg, see **mugan**.

mægen (47. 1), *power, strength; virtue; force, band.* [Eng. *main*.]

mægen-ēacen (57), *abundant in might, powerful.*

mægen-ðrymm (43), *glory, majesty.*

mægen-ðrymnes (51. 5), *glory, majesty.*

mægð (51. b), *tribe, nation, province.*

mægð (52), *maid, maiden.* [Ger. *Magd*.]

mægð-hād (43, 143), *virginity.*

mæg-wlite (44), *appearance, aspect.* [Cf. *andwlita*.]

mālan (113), *speak.*

māre (59), *renowned; splendid; great.*

mārðu (51. a), *achievement, famous exploit.* [Cf. **māre**.]

mæsling (47), *brass.*

mæsse-prēost (43), *priest.*
[*mæsse* < Lat. *missa*, *mass*; *prēost* < *presbyter*, from what Greek word?]

mæst (43), *mast.*

mæst, see **micel**.

mæð (51. b), *ability, capacity.*

mæðel-hēgende (mæðel-) (61), *speech-uttering, council-attending.*

māw (43), *gull, sea-mew.* [Ger. *Möwe*.]

magan, see **mugan**.

magu-ðegn (43), *vassal, retainer.*

man (89. e), *one.*

mān-full (58. 2), *wicked, evil.*

mangere (44, 143), *merchant.*
[Mod. Eng. *-monger*.]

manian (118), *admonish.*

manig (57), *many.*

manig-feald (58, 146), *manifold.*

mann (mōnn) (46, 35, 17), *man.*
[Ger. *Mann*; cf. Tacitus, *Germania*, Ch. II., and the proper name *Manu*.]

manna (53; cf. 53. 3), *man.*

mann-cynn (man-) (47), *man-kind.*

mān-scyld (-scild) (51. b), *sin, iniquity.*

māra, see **micel**.

marman-stān (43), *marble.*

māðm (43), *treasure, jewel.*

meahte, see **mugan**.

mehtig, see **mihtig**.

męcg (męcg) (43), *disciple* (lit. *man*).

mēd (51. b), *meed, reward.* [Cf. **meorð**.]

med-micel (57), *short*.

medome (meodume) (59), *little, least*.

medu-burg (medo-) (52), *mead-city*. [Cf. Ger. *Met*.]

medu-wērig (medo-) (57), *mead-weary, drunken with mead*.

mēnigu (51. a), *company, number*. [Ger. *Menge*; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 12. 9.]

mēnnisc (57, 146), *human*. [$<$ *mann*, by 16; cf. Ger. *Mensch*.]

meodume, see **medome**.

meorð (51. b), *reward*. [Cf. *mēd*.]

meotud (43), *creator*. [As it were, the 'Meter,' 'Apportioner,' 'Fixer of Bounds.']

mēre (44), *mere, sea*. [Ger. *Meer*; cf. Mod. Eng. *mermaid*.]

mēre-bāt (43), *sea-boat, vessel*.

mēre-faroð (43), *sea-waves (sea-voyage ?)*.

meregreote (53), *pearl*.

mēre-liðend (43. 6) *seafarer*.

mēre-strēam (43), *ocean-stream*.

mēre-swīn (47), *dolphin*.

mēre-ðissa (-ðyssa) (53), *ocean-scourer, rusher through the deep*.

mērgen (43), *morning*.

mētan (113), *meet; find; find out*.

mēte (44), *food*. [Mod. Eng. *meat*.]

mēðe (59), *fatigued, weary*. [Ger. *müde*.]

mēðel, see **mæðel**.

micel (mycel) (57), *much, great, large; long; loud*. [Cf. Scotch *mickle*, Eng. *much*, and Spenser, *Shep. Cal.*, Feb. 109.]

miclum (myclum) (72), *greatly*.

mid (57; 166. 1), *middle*.

mid (168; 172. 1; 177), *with; mid ealle (175), *completely*.*

middan-geard (43), *world*. [Cf. Cleasby and Vigfusson's *Icelandic-English Dictionary*, s.v. *mið-garðr*: "The earth (*Mið-garð*), the abode of men, is seated in the middle of the universe, bordered by mountains and surrounded by the great sea (*úthaf*); on the other side of this sea is the *Út-garð* (*out-yard*), the abode of giants; the *Miðgarð* is defended by the 'yard' or 'burgh' *As-garð* (*the burgh of the gods*), lying in the middle (the heaven being conceived as rising above the earth). Thus the earth and mankind are represented as a stronghold besieged by the powers of evil from without, defended by the gods from above and from within."]

mid-ðām-ðe, *when*.

mid-ðȳ, *when, while*.

mid-ðȳ ðe, *when, while*.

miht (51. 1), *power, might*. [Ger. *Macht*.]

miht, see **mugan**.

mihtig (57), *mighty*. [Ger. *mächtig*.]

mild-heortnes (51. 5), *mercy, compassion, loving-kindness*.

milts (51. 5), plur. as sing., *mercy, loving-kindness*. [$<$ **mild**, **mild**, by 33.]

miltsian (*mildsian*) (118), *have mercy upon*.

mīn (83, 81), *my*.

mis- (142).

mislic (57), *various*.

mislice (70), *variously, in different ways*; **mislice geblēod**, *variegated*.

mis-līcian (118), *displease*.
missenlic (57), *various (kinds of)*.
mis-ðyncēan (114; 164. l), *mis-judge*; **ðē misðyncð**, Lat. *male suspicaris*. [Cf. Milton, *P. L.* 9. 289, Shak., *3 Hen. VI.* 2. 5. 108, *Ant. and Cleop.* 5. 2. 176.]
mōd (47, 146), *heart, soul, mind; courage*. [Ger. *Mut*.]
mōd-ge-ðanc (43), *thought of the heart, counsel*. [Cf. Ger. *Gedanke*.]
mōdig (57), *noble-minded, magnanimous, courageous*. [Ger. *mutig*.]
mōdiglic (57), *high-souled*.
mōdignes (51. 5), *pride, arrogance*.
mōdor (52. 2), *mother*. [Ger. *Mutter*, Lat. *mater*.]
mōna (53), *moon*. [Cf. Ger. *Mond*, where *d* is a late addition.]
mōnað (43. 4. a), *month*. [Ger. *Monat*.]
mōn(n), see **man(n)**.
morgen (43), *morning*. [Ger. *Morgen*, Mod. Eng. *morn*.]
morgen-giefu (51. a), *dowry, marriage portion*.
morðor (47), *deadly injury*. [Mod. Eng. *murder*.]
mōtan (137), *may*. [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 9. 27.]
mugan (135), *can, be able*.
mund (51. 5), *hand*.
munt (43), *mountain*. [Lat. *mont(em)*.]
munuc (43), *monk*. [Ger. *Mönch*.]
murenung (51. b; 144), *sorrow, unhappiness, lamentation*.
muscule (Lat.), *mussel*.

mycel, see **micel**.
myclum, see **miclum**.
myngian (118), *admonish, adjure*.
mynian (118), *direct, inspire*.
mynster (47), *monastery*.

N.

nā (nō), *not even, by no means, not at all; no*.
nabban (121, 29), *have not*.
naca (53), *bark*. [Ger. *Nachen*.]
nacod (57), *naked; clothed in a tunic only* (p. 168).
nædl (51. b), *needle*. [Ger. *Nadel*.]
nædre, næddre (53. 1), *serpent*.
næfre, *never*.
nænig (89. a), *no one*.
nære, næron, næs, see 138.
nāht (nōht) (47; 89. b; 27), *naught, nothing; not*.
nā-hwær, *nowhere*.
nā-hwider, *nowhither*.
nālæs (nālas), *not at all*.
nama (53, 24), *name*. [Ger. *Namen*.]
nān (89. a; 154. b), *no (one)*.
nāt, see 126.
nātes-hwōn, *not at all*.
ne (ni), *not*.
nē, nor; nē . . . nē (202), *neither . . . nor*.
nēah (58, 67, 60), *nigh, near; æt niehstan, at length, finally*.
nēah, adv., *near, nigh at hand; superl. nearly*.
nēah (nēh), prep., *near*.
nēa-læcan (113), *approach*.
nearunes (nearo-) (51. 5), *anguish, agony*.
nearu (51. a), *difficulty; nearu ðrōwian, be in straits*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *narrow*.]

nēat (47), *cattle*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. 'neatherd,' 'neat's-foot oil,' 'neat cattle.' Shakespeare has (*Wint. T.* 1. 2. 124): 'The steer, the heifer, and the calf Are all called *neat*; *Cymb.* 1. 1. 148: 'Would I were A *neatherd*'s daughter.']

nefne, *except*.

nēh, see **nēah**, prep.

nellan (139), *will not*. [See Chaucer, *Prol.* 550, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 6. 17; 1. 9. 15, Shak., *Hamlet*. 5. 1. 19.]

neṃnan (115. b), *mean* (lit. name).

nēosian (nēosan) (118; 156. m), *seek, look for*.

nēowolnes (51. 5), *abyss, deep*. [Orig. from **nihol-**, ***nihold-**, ***nihald-**, *sloping*.]

neṛiend (neṛegend) (43. 6), *Savior*.

nīed (51. b), *need, necessity; use*.

nīed-faru (nēid-) (51. a), *needful journey*.

nīed-ṭearflic (57), *needful, necessary*.

nīehst, see **nēah**, adv.

nīehsta, see **nēah**, adj.

nīeten (47. 1), *creature, beast, cattle*. [**< nēat**, by 16.]

nīeten-cynn (47), *kind of cattle*.

niht (52), *night*.

nihtes (74), *by night*.

niht-lang (58), *night-long, of a night, one night*.

nihtlic (57), *night*.

niman (IV. 105), *take; seize; capture, catch; pluck up*. [Ger. *nehmen*; cf. a character in Shak., *M. W.*]

nis, see 138.

niṭ (43), *man*.

niṭerlic (57), *low-lying*. [Cf. Ger. *nieder*.]

niṭ-hete (44), *malignant foe*.

niṭ-hycgende (61), *evil-scheming*.

niṭ-plega (53), *hostile play, martial game*.

nō, see **nā**.

nōht, see **nāht**.

noldon, see **nellan**.

norṭ (69), *northward*.

norṭan, *from the north*.

norṭ-dæl (43), *northern part, north*.

notian (118; 164. o), *use*.

nū, *now; yet*.

nyste, see **nytan**.

nytan (126), *know not*. [See Chaucer, *Prol.* 284.]

O.

of- (142).

of, *of; from; out of; by*.

ofen (43), *oven*.

ofer, *over; across; upon; in*.

ofer- (142). [Ger. *über-*.]

ofer-brædan (113), *suffuse*.

ofer-cuman (IV. 105), *overcome, overthrow*.

ofer-gān (141), *overcome, come upon*.

ofer-hygd (51. b), *pride, arrogance; mid oferhygdum, arrogantly, haughtily, superciliously*.

ofer-rædan (113), *read through*.

ofer-swiṭan (113), *overcome, conquer*.

ofer-ṭecean (114), *cover over*.

ofer-winnan (III. 104), *conquer, subdue, overthrow*.

ofer-wreōn (I. 102), *cover over*.

ofestlice (ofost-, ofst-) (70), *quickly, forthwith*.

- ofet** (47), *fruit*. (Ger. *Obst*, properly *Obs*.]
ofostlice, see **ofestlice**.
of-slēan (VI. 107), *slay, kill*.
of-stīgan (I. 102), *descend*.
ofstlice, see **ofestlice**.
oft, *often, frequently*.
of-tredan (V. 106), *tread down, trample upon*. [Ger. *abtreten*.]
of-ðyncean (114), *offend, grieve, vex*.
ōht, see **āht**.
olfend (43), *camel*. [< Lat. *elephantem* ?]
on, *on, upon; in; into; with; on*
ān, see **ān**.
on- (142).
on-ālan (113), *inflame*.
on-cierran (-cyrran) (113), *turn*.
on-cnāwan (R. 109), *know; perceive; recognize; acknowledge*.
on-cweðan (V. 106), *address, call unto*.
qnd (-), see **and** (-).
on-drædan (R. 110; 159. a), *fear*.
ōnettān (113), *hasten, hurry*.
on-fangennes (51. 5), *reception*.
on-fōn (R. 110; 164. j), *receive, accept*.
on-gēan, adv., *again, back*.
on-gēan, prep., *against; toward; opposite*. [Cf. Ger. *entgegen*, for *engegen*.]
on-ge-slēan (VI. 107), *slay*.
on-gierwan (113), *divest, strip*. [Cf. **geare**.]
on-gietan (-giſtan) (V. 106, 18), *perceive, learn, understand*. [Cf. **andgiet**.]
ongin, see **anginn**.
on-ginnan (III. 104), *begin*.
ongitan, see **ongietan**.
on-hieldan (-hældan) (113), *intend*.
on-hrēosan (II. 103), *fall upon*.
on-hrēran (113), *stir up, agitate*.
on-innan, *into, among*.
onlic, see **anlic**.
on-liehtan (113), *light, illuminate*. [< **lēoht**, by 16.]
on-liesan (113), *release*.
on-lūcan (II. 103), *unlock*.
on-sendan (113), *send*.
on-seſtan (113), *lay*.
on-spannan (R. 109), *open*.
on-styrian (116), *move*.
on-tŷnan (113), *open*. [< **tūn**, by 16.]
on-wacan (VI. 107), *awake*.
on-weg, *away*.
on-windan (III. 104), *retreat*. [Cf. Ger. *entwinden*.]
on-winnan (III. 104), *assail*.
on-wriðan (I. 102), *uncover, disclose*.
on-wunian (118), *inhabit*.
open (57), *open*. [Ger. *offen*.]
ōr (47), *beginning*.
or- (142).
ōra (53), *vein ? ore ?*
ōreta, see **ōretta**.
ōret-mæg (-mæg) (43), *warrior*.
ōretta (53), *combatant*.
orf (47), *cattle*.
or-feorme (59), *deprived, abandoned, forsaken*.
organa (Lat.), plur., *organs*.
or-giete (-gete) (59), *manifest*.
or-mæte (59), *boundless; enormous*.
or-mōdnes (51. 5), *despair, desperation*.
oroð (47. 6), *breath*.
ort-geard (43), *garden (orchard ?)*.
orðian (118), *breathe*. [< **oroð**.]
ōð, *until*.
ōð- (142).

oðer (80; 89. *a*; 24), *other*; *second*; *rest of*.

oð-ðæt, *until*.

oððe (æðða), *or*.

oð-ðringan (III. 104), *wrest away*.

P.

pæll (43), *purple garment*.

pard (Lat.), *panther*.

pēning (43), *penny* (but this does not represent the Latin, which has *sestertia*, not *sestertios*; the latter would represent four cents each, the former about forty-three dollars each). [Cf. Ger. *Pfand*.]

Piht (43), *Pict*.

plega (53), *game, play*.

plegian (118), *play*; *act*.

pliht (43), *peril, risk*. [Ger. *Pflicht*, Mod. Eng. *plight*.]

pund (47), *pound*, Lat. *talentum*, *pondus*. [< Lat. *pondus*.]

purple (53. 1), *purple garment*. [< Lat. *purpura*.]

R.

racian (118; 164. *i*), *rule, govern, sway*.

rād (43), *counsel, advice*; *order(s)*; *benefit*. [Ger. *Rat*; archaic Mod. Eng. *rede*; cf. Shak., *Hamlet*. 1. 3. 51.]

rādan (113), *read*. [Cf. Ger. (*er*)*raten*.]

rād-snottor (57), *discreet in counsel*.

rās-bora (53), *counselor*.

rāswa (53), *chief, leader*.

rāh-dēor (47), *roebuck*.

rand (rōnd) (43), *shield*,

rand-wigend (-wiggend) (43. 6), *shield-warrior*.

rēad (58), *red*. [Ger. *rot*.]

rēaf (47), *raiment, apparel*. [Ger. *Raub*, Mod. Eng. *robe*, through Fr. *robe*; cf. Ital. *roba*.]

rēaf-lāc (47), *rapine, plunder*.

reccēan (114), *relate, narrate; expound*.

rēce-lēasian (118, 156), *despise*.

recene, *straightway*.

regn (rēn) (43), *rain; shower*. [Ger. *Regen*.]

regollic (57), *regular*. [< Lat. *regula*; cf. Ger. *regel* (*recht*).]

rēn, *see regn*.

rēocan (II. 103), *reek*. [Ger. *riechen*.]

reord-berend (43. 6), *man gifted with speech* (lit. *speech-bearer*).

reordian (-igan) (118), *speak*.

rēst (51. *b*), *couch, bed*. [Cf. Ger. *Rast*.]

rēstan (113), *rest*.

rēðe (59), *fierce, violent*.

rēðnes (51. 5), *violence*.

ribb (47), *rib*.

rice (48. 1), *kingdom*. [Ger. *Reich*, Mod. Eng. (*Frede*)*rick*, (*Hen*)*ry*, (*bishop*)*ric*; cf. Lat. *rex*.]

rīce (59), *powerful, noble*. [Ger. *reich*, Mod. Eng. *rich*.]

rīcsian (118), *bear rule, have dominion*. [< *rīce*.]

riht (47), *right*. [Ger. *Recht*.]

riht (58), *right; direct*. [Ger. *recht*.]

rihtlice (70), *accurately, correctly*.

riht-wīs (58, 146), *righteous*.

riht-wīsnes (51. 5), *righteousness*.

rinan (113, 161), *rain*.

rīnc (43), *warrior, man*.

rīpe (59), *ripe*. [Ger. *reif*.]

rōd (51. b), *cross*. [Ger. *Rute*,
Mod. Eng. *rod*, *rood*; cf. *rood-
loft*, *Holyrood*, *Haml.* 3. 4. 14.]
rodor (43), *firmament*, *heaven*.
rōf (59), *stout*.
Romanisc (57, 146), *Roman*.
Romane (Lat.), plur., *Romans*.
rōnd, see **rand**.
rōse (53. 1), *rose*. [Lat. *rosa*.]
rōwan (R. 109), *row*.
rōwend (43. 6), *rower*.
rōwnes (51. 5), *rowing*.
rudu (51. a), *redness*.
rūm (43), *room*, *opportunity*.
[Ger. *Raum*.]
rūwe (53. 1), *tapestry*?

S.

sācerd (51. b), *priestess*. [$<$ Lat.
sacerdos.]
sāē (43; 51. b), *sea*. [Ger.
See; cf. note, p. 324.]
sāē-bāt (43), *sea-boat*, *vessel*.
sāē-beorg (43), *sea-cliff*.
sāēd (47), *seed*. [Ger. *Saat*.]
sāēd-tīma (53), *seedtime*.
sāē-flota (53), *sea-floater*.
sāē-hengest (43), *sea-steed*. [Cf.
Ger. *Hengst*, Eng. *Hengist*.]
sāē-holm (43), *sea* (*swelling sea*?).
sāē-lād (51. b), *sea-voyage*.
sāēleoda, see **sāēlida**.
sāēlic (57), *marine*, *of the sea*.
sāē-līda (-leoda) (53), *seaman*,
sailor, *mariner*. [Cf. *liðan*.]
sāē-mearh (43), *sea-steed*. [Cf.
Jebb, *Classical Greek Poetry*,
pp. 91-92: "Homer speaks of
'swift ships, which are the horses
of the sea for men'; Hesiod
would not have scrupled to use
the phrase 'horses of the sea'
as a substitute for the word

'ships,' leaving his meaning to
be guessed."]
sāē-wērig (57), *sea-weary*.
sāē-wiht (51. b), *sea-animal*.
salowig-pād (58), *dark-coated*.
samninga (70), *all at once*, *sud-
denly*. [Cf. *sēmninga*.]
samod (sōmod), *together*.
sand (47), *sand*. [Ger. *Sand*.]
sand-hlið (47, 20), *sand-hill*.
sang (43), *song*. [Ger. (Ge)*sang*.]
sār (47), *sorrow*.
sār (58), *grievous*, *sore*. [Cf. Ger.
sehr, (ver)*sehren*.]
sār-cwide (44), *taunt*, *gibe*, *rail-
lery*, *sarcasm*.
sārlic (57), *doleful*.
sārlice (70), *lamentably*, *mourn-
fully*.
sārnes (51. b), *grief*, *unhappiness*.
sāw(o)l (51. 4), *soul*; *life*. [Ger.
Seele.]
sāwol-lēas (58, 146), *soulless*.
sceadu (51. a; 18), *shadow*. [Cf.
Ger. *Schatten*.]
sceal, see **sculan**.
scealc (43, 18), *man*.
sceam-fæst (58, 18), *modest*.
[Mod. Eng. *shamefast*; see
Spenser, *F. Q.* 5. 5. 25.]
sceamu (51. a; 18), *shame*. [Ger.
Scham.]
scēap (47, 18), *sheep*. [Ger.
Schaf.]
scēap-hierde (44), *shepherd*.
[Ger. *Schafhirt*.]
scearpe (70, 18), *sharp*. [Ger.
scharf.]
scēat (43), *corner*, *region*, *quar-
ter*. [Ger. *Schooss*; in the
sense of Lat. *angulus*, *plaga*,
as Isa. 11. 12, Rev. 7. 1.]
sceatt (43, 18), *coin*. [Ger.
Schatz.]

- scēaþ** (51. b; 18), *sheath*. [Ger. *Scheide*.]
sceaþa (53, 18), *enemy*. [Cf. Ger. *Schade*, *Schädiger*, Mod. Eng. *scathe*.]
scēawian (118), *watch; behold, see*. [Ger. *schauen*, Mod. Eng. *show* (with changed meaning).]
scēncan (113), *pour out, give to drink*. [Ger. (ein)schenken, archaic Mod. Eng. *skink*; cf. Shak., *I Hen. IV.* 2. 4. 26.]
sceolde, see **sculan**.
scēor (18), see **scūr**.
sceort (58, 65, 18), *short*.
scēotend (43. 6), *shooter, marksman*.
scēo-wyrhta (53, 18), *shoemaker*.
scicceals (43), *cloak, mantle*.
scield (scild) (43, 18), *shield*.
scield-burh (scild-) (52, 28), *testudo, roof of shields, shield-roofed phalanx*.
sciene (scýne) (59, 18), *beautiful*. [Ger. *schön*; cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 210, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 1. 10.]
sceppan (VI. 107, 18), *create*. [Ger. *schöpfen*.]
scieppend (scippend, scyppend) (43. 6; 18), *creator*.
scieran (IV. 105, 18), *cut, cleave*. [Ger. *scheren*, Mod. Eng. *shear*.]
sciertra, see **sceort**.
sciēte (53. 1), *sheet, linen cloth*. [**< scēat**.]
scild, see **scield**.
scīnan (I. 102), *shine*. [Ger. *scheinen*.]
scip (47), *ship*. [Ger. *Schiff*.]
scip-fērend (43. 6; 147), *sailor*.
scip-herē (44. 2; 147), *naval force, fleet*.
scippend, see **scieppend**.
scip-weard (43), *shipmaster*.
scīr (58), *bright, gleaming*. [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 2. 44, Shak., *Rich. II.* 5. 3. 61.]
scīre (70), *dazzlingly, radiantly*.
scīr-mæled (57), *splendidly marked, splendidly decorated*.
scop (43), *minstrel*.
Scottas (43), plur., *Scots*.
scrid (57), *fleet?* (Grimm, *rigged*).
scrūd (47), *clothing, raiment, attire*. [Mod. Eng. *shroud*.]
serýdan (113), *clothe, array*.
scucca (53), *the devil, Satan*.
scūfan (II. 103), *thrust*.
sculan (133, 188), *ought, must; shall*. [Cf. Ger. *sollen*.]
scūr (scēor) (43, 18), *storm; shower*. [Ger. *Schauer*.]
scýne, see **sciene**.
scyppend, see **scieppend**.
se (84; 87; 154. b).
sealm (43), *psalm*. [**< Lat.** *psalmus*.]
sealt-sēaþ (43), *salt-spring*.
sēamere (44. 1; 143), *tailor*. [Cf. Ger. *Saum*, Mod. Eng. *seam*.]
searu (49), *device, contrivance*.
searu-ðancol (searo-ðoncol) (57), *discerning, sagacious*.
sēcean (sēcan) (114), *seek; seek out; visit*. [Ger. *suchen*.]
sęcg (43), *man, hero*.
sęgean (sęgan) (123, 36), *say; speak; tell*.
sedl, see **setl**.
segl (47?), *sail*. [Ger. *Segel*.]
seld-cūþ (58), *strange, novel, out of the way*. [Cf. *F. Q.* 4. 8. 14.]
sęlen (51. b), *bounty, bestowal*.
self (seolf, sylf) (86), (*my, him*) *self; own; same; very*. [Ger. *selb(er)*.]
sęllan (syllan) (114, 36), *give; give to be; sell*.

sēlest (sēlost) (66), *best*.
sellic (syllic) (57), *strange, queer, remarkable*. [*< seldic.*]
sēlost (76), *best*.
sēlra (53, 66), *better*.
semninga (70), *suddenly*. [See **samninga**.]
sendan (113), *send; hurl*.
sēo, see **se**.
seofon (78, 20), *seven*. [Ger. *sieben*.]
seofon-feald (58, 146), *seven-fold*.
seofod̥a (78, 80), *seventh*.
sēol, see **seolh**.
seolh (43. 3; 21), *seal*.
seolf, see **self**.
seolfor (47, 20), *silver*. [Ger. *Silber*, Goth. *silubr*.]
seolfren (57), *silver*. [Ger. *silbern*.]
seoððan, see **siððan**.
session (118), *subside*.
setl (sedl) (47), *seat; throne*. [Ger. *Sessel*; Mod. Eng. *settle*.]
seþnes (51. 5), *foundation*.
settan (113), *set, set down; place; make; make to turn*. [Formed, by 16, from the second stem of **sittan** (cf. **lēcgan**); Ger. *setzen*.]
sibb (51. b), *peace; love*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *gossip*.]
sīd (58), *roomy, ample*.
sīde (53. 1), *silk*. [*< Lat. sēta; cf. Ger. Seide.*]
sīe(n), see **wesan**.
siexta (78, 80), *sixth*.
siextiene (syxtýne) (78), *sixteen*. [Ger. *sechszehn*.]
sige (44), *victory*. [Ger. *Sieg*.]
sige-fæst (58, 146), *victorious, triumphant*. [*ulting in victory*.]
sige-hrēmig (-hrēmig) (57), *ex-sige-hrēðig (57), *radiant with victory*.*

sige-rōf (58), *of victorious energy*.
sige-ðūf (43), *triumphal banner*. [ðūf *< Lat. tufa*.]
sige-wang (-wong) (43), *field of victory*.
sigor (43), *victory, triumph*.
simle, *always*.
sīn (83), *his*.
sinc (47), *treasure, riches*.
sinc-weorðung (51. 3), *gift of treasure, costly gift*.
sind, see **wesan**.
sin-gāl (58), *constant, never-ceasing*.
singan (III. 104, 22), *sing; praise*. [Ger. *singen*.]
sittan (V. 106), *sit*. [Ger. *sitzen*.]
sið (43, 30), *journey; adventure; plan, errand; time*. [Cf. Ger. *Gesinde*, Chaucer, *Prol.* 485, Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 10. 33.]
sið-fæt (43. 2), *journey; passage*.
sið-fram (-from) (57), *ready for (their) journey*.
sið-nese (53. 1), *prosperous voyage*.
siððan (seoððan, syððan) (84. 3), *when; after; as soon as; afterward*. [Ger. *seitdem*; cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1244, Shak., *Cor.* 3. 1. 47.]
slæcan (113), *defer, delay*. [Mod. Eng. *slack(en)*.]
slæp (43), *sleep*. [Ger. *Schlaf*.]
slæpan (R. 110), *sleep*. [Ger. *schlafen*.]
slēan (VI. 107, 37), *smite, strike; strike down, slay*. [Ger. *schlagen*; cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 661.]
slęcg (51. b), *hammer, sledge*. [Cf. **slēan**.]
smēan (113), *consider, inquire into*.

- smēaung** (51. 3), *meditation; investigation.*
- smercian** (118), *smile.* [Mod. Eng. *smirk.*]
- smið** (43), *blacksmith.* [Ger. *Schmied.*]
- smiððe** (53. 1), *smithy.*
- smylte** (59), *calm, smooth, unruffled.*
- smyltnes** (51. 5), *serenity, calm.*
- snel**(1) (58; 35. a), *active, swift, fleet.* [Ger. *schnell*, Scotch *snell.*]
- snellie** (57), *swift.*
- snelnes** (51. 5), *agility, celerity.*
- snēowan** (II. 103), *hasten, speed.*
- snottor** (57), *wise.*
- snūd** (43?), *speed.*
- snūde** (70), *quickly.*
- smod**, see **samod.**
- sōna**, *soon; immediately; at once; as soon; when.*
- sorg** (51. b), *distress; anxiety, trouble.* [Mod. Eng. *sorrow.*]
- sorgian** (118), *be anxious.* [Mod. Eng. *sorrow*, Ger. *sorgen.*]
- sōð** (47), *truth.* [Mod. Eng. *sooth; cf. forsooth, soothsayer.*]
- sōð** (58), *true.*
- sōð**, *adv., verily.* [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 3. 13.]
- sōð-fæst** (58), *just and true; righteous.* [Mod. Eng. *sooth-fast.*]
- sōð-fæstnes** (51. 5), *truth.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale* 508.]
- sōðlice** (70), *indeed, truly.* [Cf. *soothly*, Spenser, *F. Q.* 5. 10. 8.]
- sparian** (118), *spare.* [Ger. *sparen.*]
- spell** (47), *account.*
- spildan** (113), *fling away.* [Cf. Shak., *Hamlet*. 4. 5. 20.]
- spræc** (51. b), *speech; language; tale.* [Ger. *Sprache.*] [*sprechen.*]
- sprecan** (V. 106), *speak.* [Ger. *springan* (III. 104), *spread.* [Ger. *springen*, Mod. Eng. *spring.*]
- spryttan** (113), *bring forth.* [Cf. Ger. *sprissen*, Eng. *sprout.*]
- stæfna**, see **stefna.**
- stænen** (57), *stone.* [$<$ **stān**, by 16; Ger. *steinen.*]
- stæppan** (VI. 107), *step, march.*
- stān** (43), *stone.* [Ger. *Stein.*]
- standan** (VI. 107), *stand; stand still; fall upon.*
- starian** (118), *gaze.* [Mod. Eng. *stare.*]
- stēap** (58), *lofty.* [Mod. Eng. *steep.*]
- stēde** (44), *place, position.* [Mod. Eng. *stead; cf. Ger. Statt, Stätte.*]
- stede-heard** (58), *firm, strong.*
- stede-wang** (43), *plain.*
- stefn** (51. b), *voice.* [Ger. *Stimme; cf. Chaucer, Knight's Tale* 1704, Spenser, *Shep. Cal., Sept.* 224.]
- stefn** (43), *prow.* [Cf. 'from stem to stern.']
- stefna** (stæfna) (53), *prow.*
- stēoran**, see **stīeran.**
- steorra** (53), *star.* [Cf. Ger. *Stern*, Lat. *stella*, Gr. *ἀστήρ.*]
- sterced-ferhð** (58), *resolute-souled, stout-hearted.*
- stīeran** (stēoran) (113), *steer.* [Cf. Ger. *steuern; and cf. Gr. σταυρός?*]
- stiern-mōd** (stýrn-) (58), *stern of mood.*
- stig** (51. b), *road, course, line.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stile, stirrup, stair.*]
- stigan** (I. 102, 28), *ascend, enter, go aboard; go down* (cf. Ps. 107.

- 23). [Ger. *steigen*, Gr. *στέλλειν*; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 4. 9. 33.]
- stillan** (113; 164. *i*), *calm, appease, hush*. [Ger. *stillen*.]
- stille** (59), *still; quiet, silent*. [Ger. *stille*.]
- stilnes** (51. 5), *calm, quietness*.
- storm** (43), *storm*. [Cf. Ger. *Sturm*.]
- stōw** (51. *b*), *place*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stow*.]
- stræl** (43), *arrow*. [Ger. *Strahl*.]
- stræt** (51. *b*), *street; public place*. [*<* Lat. *strāta*; Ger. *Strasse*.]
- strand** (43), *strand, sea-shore*. [Ger. *Strand*.]
- strang** (58, 65), *strong; powerful; violent; hard, severe, arduous*. [Cf. Ger. *streng*.]
- strangung** (51. 3), *invigoration, quickening*.
- strēam** (43), *stream, current*. [Ger. *Strom*.]
- strēam-wielm** (-wel) (43), *whirlpool, maelstrom*.
- streng** (43), *rope; plur. cordage, rigging, tackle*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *string*.]
- strengre**, see **strang**.
- strengþu** (51. *a*; 144), *strength*.
- strēonan**, see **striēnan**.
- striēnan** (strēonan) (113), *win over, gain over, convert*. [See **gestrēon**.]
- stund** (51. *b*), *while; stunde* (176), *now*. [Ger. *Stunde*, archaic Mod. Eng. *stound*, as in Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 354, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 8. 25, 38.]
- stycce-mælum** (72), *gradually, little by little*. [Cf. Ger. *stückweise*.]
- styrian** (118), *move; flow, roll*. [Mod. Eng. *stir*.]
- styriendlic** (57), *moving, that moves*.
- styrman** (113), *storm*. [*<* **storm**, 17; Ger. *stürmen*.]
- styrnmōd**, see **stiernmōd**.
- sulh-scear** (43?), *plowshare*. [Cf. Lat. *sulcus*.]
- sum** (89. *a*; 151), *some(one); (a) certain; one*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 397, 399.]
- sumer** (43. 5), *summer*. [Ger. *Sommer*.]
- sund** (47), *swimming; course*.
- sundor-ierfe** (-yrfe) (44), *private property*.
- sunne** (53. 1), *sun*. [Ger. *Sonne*.]
- sunu** (45), *son*. [Ger. *Sohn*.]
- sūð-dæl** (43), *southern part; south*.
- sūð-westerne** (59), *southwestern*. [Cf. Ger. *südwest*.]
- swā**, *so; as; yet; since; such; which; eall swā*, see **eall**; **swā** (swā) . . . **swā** (202), *so . . . as, as . . . as; the . . . the; inasmuch as; whether . . . or*.
- swæsendu** (47), *plur., viands, food*. [For the plural, cf. Lat. *epulæ*.]
- swæðorian**, see **swe(o)ðerian**.
- swā-hwæðer** (89. *a*), *whichever*.
- swā-hwæt-swā** (89. *d*), *what(so)-ever*.
- swan** (43), *swan*. [Ger. *Schwan*.]
- swā-swā**, *like; as; just as; as if*.
- swätig** (47), *bloody*. [Ger. *schweissig*.]
- swā-ðeah**, *nevertheless*.
- swaðu** (51. *a*), *track, footprint*.
- swefan** (V. 106), *sleep*.
- swefel** (43), *sulphur*. [Ger. *Schwefel*.]
- swēg** (43), *music*.
- swēg-cræft** (43), *music*.

swegel (47), *sky, heaven.*
swēging (51. 3), *noise.*
swencan (113), *weary, fatigue, wear out.* [Formed from the second stem of **swincan**, by 16.]
sweora (53), *neck.*
sweorcan (III. 104), *grow dark, become overcast.*
sweord (swyrd) (47), *sword.*
swēot (47), *troop, army.*
sweotol (swutol) (57), *clear.*
sweotole (70), *clearly, plainly.*
sweotollice (70), *plainly, clearly.*
swērian (VI. 107), *swear.* [Ger. *schwören.*]
swēte (59), *sweet.* [Ger. *süss*; cf. Lat. *suavis*, Gr. *ἡδύς.*]
swētnes (51. 5; 144), *sweetness; goodness.*
swe(o)ðerian (118), *depart, melt away, vanish; subside.*
swīcan (I. 102; 164. n), *desert.*
swift (58), *swift, fleet.*
swiftnes (51. 5; 144), *swiftness, celerity.*
swige (53. 1), *silence.*
swigian (118), *be silent, keep silence.*
swile (89. a), *such, this sort.* [$< *swalic < swā + lic$; cf. *swich*, Chaucer, *Prol.* 3.]
swilce, adv., *likewise.*
swilce (swylce), conj., *as if; ēac swilce, swilce ēac*, see **ēac**.
swimman (III. 104), *swim.* [Ger. *schwimmen.*]
swincan (III. 104), *work with effort.* [Cf. **swencan**, and archaic Mod. Eng. *swink*, as in Chaucer, *Prol.* 186, Milton, *Com.* 293.]
swingan (III. 104), *whip? throw?*
swið (58, 64, 30), *strong; comp. right.* [Cf. Ger. *geschwind.*]

swiðe (swyðe) (70), *much, greatly, very; comp. rather, more.*
swiðlice (70), *exceedingly, greatly.*
swið-mōd (58), *vehement-souled.*
swutol, see **sweotol**.
swylce, see **swilce**.
swyrd, see **sweord**.
swyðe, see **swiðe**.
sybb, see **sibb**.
sylf, see **self**.
syllan, see **sellan**.
syllic, see **sellic**.
syn(n) (51. b), *sin.* [Cf. Ger. *Sünde.*]
synderlic (57, 146), *separate, individual.* [Cf. Ger. *sonderlich.*]
syndon, see **wesan**.
syn-full (58), *sinful.*
syððan, see **siððan**.
syxtýne, see **siextiene**.

T.

tācen (47), *sign, signal.* [Ger. *Zeichen*, Mod. Eng. *token.*]
tācen-bora (53), *groomsman* (lit. *standard-bearer*).
tācnian (118), *signify, betoken, indicate.*
tācean (114), *teach.*
tālan (113), *blame, censure.*
tāl (51. b), *censure; tō tāle, censureable, blameworthy.*
tēar (43), *tear.* [Cf. Ger. *Zähre* and Gr. *δάκρυ.*]
tēlg (43), *dye.*
tempel (47), *temple.* [$< \text{Lat. } templum.$]
tēon (II. 103), *pull, bring.* [Ger. *ziehen.*]
tēon (tīan) (113), *arrange, ordain.*
ticcen (47), *goat.* [Ger. *Zicke.*]

- tīd** (51. 1), *time, season; while; day; hour*. [Ger. *Zeit*, Mod. Eng. *tide* in *Christmastide*, *Whitsuntide*.]
- tigel-fāg** (58), *variegated with tiles*. [**tigel** < Lat. *tegula*.]
- tigris** (Lat.), *tiger*.
- til**, *to*. [Mod. Eng. *till*; cf. Ger. *Ziel*.]
- tilian** (118), *gain, obtain, provide*. [Ger. *zielen*, Mod. Eng. *till*.]
- tilung** (51. 3), *acquisition, procuring*.
- tīma** (53), *time*.
- timbran** (115. b), *build, construct*. [Ger. *zimmern*.]
- tīn** (47), *tin*. [Ger. *Zinn*.]
- tinterg** (47), *punishment*.
- tīr** (43), *glory, fame*. [Ger. *Zier*.]
- tið** (51. b; 28), *boon*.
- tiðian** (118; 159. a; 28), *grant, bestow*. [Cf. **tið**.]
- tō**, prep., *to; for; according to*; the sign of the gerund, and governing the following infinitive as a noun in the dative. [Ger. *zu*.]
- tō**, adv., *too*. [Ger. *zu*.]
- tō-** (142). [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 4. 7. 8; 5. 9. 10.]
- tō-berstan** (III. 104), *break up, go to pieces*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1753, 1833, 1899.]
- tō-brecan** (IV. 105), *break in pieces, shatter*. [Ger. *zerbrechen*.]
- tō-dæg**, *to-day*. [Cf. Ger. *heut zu Tage*.]
- tō-dēlan** (113), *divide, part asunder, separate, disperse*. [Ger. *zertheilen*.]
- tō-dōn** (140), *separate*.
- tō-dræfan** (113), *drive away*. [dræfan < second stem of drifan (102), by 16.]
- tō-foran**, *before*.
- tō-gædere**, *together*.
- tō-gēanes**, *towards, to meet*.
- tō-ge-īcan** (113), *add*.
- tō-ge-lædan** (113), *bring*.
- tō-glīdan** (I. 102), *glide away, slip away*.
- tō-hopa** (53), *hope*. [Cf. Ger. *hoffen*.]
- tō-hrēosan** (II. 103), *fall away*.
- tohte** (53. 1), *conflict*.
- tō hwon**, *why*.
- tō-middes**, *amidst, in the midst of*.
- top** (43), *top? ball?* [Ger. *Zopf*.]
- torht** (58), *resplendent*.
- torr** (43), *tower; watch-tower; crag*. [< Lat. *turris*.]
- tō-sceacan** (VI. 107), *depart, pass away*.
- tō-scēadan** (R. 110), *separate, divide*.
- tō-slitan** (I. 102), *rend, tear, destroy*. [rupt.]
- tō-twæman** (113), *divide; inter-*
- tō-weorpan** (III. 104), *blot out, forgive* (lit. *break in pieces*); *quell, compose*, Lat. *dissolvere*.
- træf** (47. 4), *building*.
- trēo** (47. 3), *tree*.
- trēow-cynn** (47), *sort of tree*.
- trēownes** (51. 5; 144), *trust*.
- trēow-wyrhta** (53, 147), *carpenter*. [Cf. **wyrhta**.]
- trum** (57), *secure, strong*.
- trymman** (115. a), *confirm, establish, strengthen*. [< **trum**, by 16.]
- tungol** (47. 6), *star, heavenly body*.
- tūsc** (43), *tusk*.
- twā**, see **twēgen**.

twēgen (78, 79), *two*. [Mod. Eng. *twain*, Chaucerian *twoye* (*Prol.* 704), archaic Ger. *zween*.]
twēlf (78, 24), *twelve*. [Ger. *zwölf*.]
twēntig (78), *twenty*. [Ger. *zwanzig*.]
twēonian (118; 159. b), *doubt*.
Tyrisc (57), *Tyrian*.
tyrnan (113), *revolve*. [Mod. Eng. *turn*.]

D.

ḡā, pron.; see 84, 87. [Cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 498.]
ḡā (84. 1), *then, when; there, where*. [Ger. *da*; archaic Mod. Eng. *tho*, as in Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 135, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 1. 18.]
ḡæce (53. 1), *roof*. [Ger. *Dach*, Mod. Eng. *thatch*.]
ḡæm, see 84.
ḡær (75), *there, where*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 34, 172, 547.]
ḡæra, **ḡære**, see 84.
ḡær-on, *therein*.
ḡær-tō-ēacan, *besides, in addition to that*.
ḡæs, see 84.
ḡæs-ḡe, see 157. 1.
ḡæt, see 84; 189. 3.
ḡæt, conj., *that*.
ḡætte (34), *that; tō ḡon ḡætte, so that*. [$<$ **ḡæt-ḡe**.]
ḡafian (-igan) (118), *permit, allow*.
ḡā-hwæḡre, *yet*.
ḡā-hwile-ḡe, *while, so long as*. [Cf. Ger. *dieweil*.]
ḡām, see 84.
ḡanan (ḡe) (75), *thence, from there; whence; from which; of*

which; by which. [Ger. *dannen*; cf. Mod. Eng. *thence*.]
ḡanc (43), *thank(s)*. [Ger. *Dank*.]
ḡancian (118; 159. a), *thank*. [Ger. *danken*.]
ḡancol-mōd (58), *discreet, heedful, attentive*.
ḡanc-snottor (ḡonc-snottur) (57), *wise of thought*.
ḡāra, see 84.
ḡās, see 85.
ḡā-ḡā, *when; ḡā-ḡā . . . ḡā (202), *when . . . (then)*.
ḡā-ḡe, **ḡe**, see 87.
ḡe . . . ḡe (202), *whether . . . or*.
ḡēah (ḡēh), *though, although; yet; ḡēah . . . ḡēah (202), *though . . . yet*. [Ger. *doch*.]
ḡēah-hwæḡre, *nevertheless*.
ḡēah-ḡe, *though, although; ḡēah-ḡe . . . hwæḡre, ḡēah-ḡe . . . swā-ḡēah (202), *though . . . yet*.
ḡearf (51. b; 21. a), *need; profit, benefit*. [Cf. **ḡurfan**.]
ḡearfa (53; 21. a), *needy (one), poor*. [Cf. **ḡurfan**.]
ḡearfendlic (57), *poor*.
ḡearle (70), *greatly, very, very much, exceedingly*.
ḡearlice (70), *violently*.
ḡēaw (43), *conduct; plur. morals, virtues*. [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 1. 33.]
ḡegn (43, 28, 24), *vassal, retainer, thane*. [Archaic Ger. *Degen*; cf. Gr. *τέκνον*.]
ḡēh, see **ḡēah**.
ḡencean (114), *think, consider, reflect; devise*. [Ger. *denken*.]
ḡenden (ḡende), *inasmuch as*.
ḡenian (118; 164. e; 28), *serve, minister to*.***

- Þēnung** (51. 3; 28), *ministration, service; first course.*
- Þēod** (51. b), *people, nation; region, country, province.* [Cf. *Ger. Deutsch.*]
- Þēoden** (43), *lord.* [< **Þēod**; cf. *dryhten* < *dryht*, *cynning* < *cynn*.]
- Þēoden-hold** (58), *faithful to his lord.*
- Þēod-guma** (53), *man of the people.*
- Þēod-scipe** (44. 1; 144), *discipline.*
- Þēos**, see 85.
- Þēow** (58), *bond, unfree, serving.*
- Þēow-dōm** (43), *service.*
- Þes**, see 85.
- Þider** (ðyder) (75); *thither; wherever.*
- Þiestru** (ðriostu) (47), plur., *darkness.* [Cf. *Ger. düster*, and, for the plural, *Lat. tenebræ.*]
- Þin** (83, 81), *thy, thine.* [Cf. *dein.*]
- Þinen** (51. 5), *handmaid.* [Cf. *Þegn*.]
- Þing** (47), *thing; sake; ænige Þinga, in any way, by any means.*
- Þing-gewrit** (47), *document.*
- Þis, Þisne, Þissa, Þisse, Þisses, Þissum**, see 85.
- Þiwen** (51. 5), *handmaid.*
- Þolian** (118), *endure, experience.* [Scotch *thole*; cf. *Ger. dulden.*]
- Þon**, see 84, 175 ff.; sometimes for **Þæm, Þām**, through the shortened **Þam, Þan**.
- Þone**, see 84.
- Þonne, then; when; since; than** (with comparatives); **Þonne . . . Þonne** (202), *when . . . (then).*
- Þoðor** (43), *ball.*
- Þrēan** (113), *rebuke.*
- Þrēat** (43), *band, crowd, multitude.*
- Þrēatian** (118), *reprove, chide.* [Cf. *Mod. Eng. threaten.*]
- Þridða** (78), *third.* [Cf. *Ger. dritte.*]
- Þrie** (ðrȳ) (78, 79), *three.* [Cf. *Ger. drei.*]
- Þrines** (51. 5; 144), *trinity.*
- Þringan** (III. 104), *press forward.* [Cf. *Ger. dringen*; cf. *Mod. Eng. throng.*]
- Þriostu**, see **Þiestru**. [*dreist.*]
- Þriste** (59), *bold, confident.* [Cf. *Ger. ritig* (78), *thirty.*]
- Þriðcynning**, see **Þrȳðcynning**.
- Þroht-heard** (58), *patient, much-enduring.*
- Þrōwian** (118), *suffer, endure.*
- Þrōwung** (51. 3), *passion.*
- Þrȳ**, see **Þrie**.
- Þrym(m)** (43), *force; troop; glory.*
- Þrym-fæst** (58, 146), *glorious.*
- Þrym-full** (58, 146), *glorious.*
- Þrymlic** (57), *glorious.*
- Þrym-sittende** (61), *sitting in glory.*
- Þrȳð** (51. b), *might; the translation of þrēata þrȳðum*, p. 219, l. 3, is doubtful.
- Þrȳð-bearn** (47, 38), *mighty son, i.e. mighty youth.*
- Þrȳð-cynning** (ðrið-) (43), *king of might.*
- Þū**, see 81.
- Þūhton**, see **Þyncean**.
- Þurfan** (131), *need.* [Cf. *Ger. (be-)dürfen.*]
- Þurh**, *through; throughout; in; by; by means of; Þurh eall*, see *eall*. [Cf. *Mod. Eng. th(o)rough*; Chaucer has *thurgh*, *Knight's Tale* 362.]

Þurstig (57), *thirsty*. [Ger. *durstig*.]

Þus, *thus* (always with a verb of utterance in these texts).

Þúsend (78, 79), *thousand*.

Þúsend-mælum (72), *by thousands*.

Þwēal (47), *bath*.

Þwīeres (Þwēores) (71), *transversely*.

Þȳ, see 84, 175 ff.

Þȳs, see 85.

Þyder, see **Þider**.

Þȳ-læs-ðe, *lest*. [Cf. Lat. *quominus*.]

Þyllic (89. a), *such like, this kind*.

Þȳn (113), *coerce, restrain*.

Þyncean (114; 164. l), *seem*. [Ger. *dünken*, Mod. Eng. (me)-*thinks*.]

Þȳrel (47), *hole*. [*< *Þurhil* (16). Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1852; Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 11. 20, 22.]

Þyrstan (113, 190), *thirst*. [Ger. *dursten*, Mod. Eng. *thirst*.]

Þyssum, see 85.

U.

ufan-weard (58; 166. 1), *upper, above*.

ūhte (53. 1), *dawn, daybreak*.

un-æðele (59), *plebeian, simple*.

un-ā-secgende (61), *unspeakable, ineffable*.

un-ā-swundenlice (70), *forthwith, without delay*.

un-cūð (58, 30), *unknown*. [Mod. Eng. *uncouth*; see Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1639, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 11. 20, Shak., *Tit. And.* 2. 3. 211.]

un-cystig (57, 146), *wicked*.

under, *under; among*. [Ger. *unter*.]

under-fōn (R. 110), *assume; receive, take in, entertain*.

under-standan (VI. 107), *understand*.

under-ðeodnes (51. 5; 144), *sub-mission*. [See **underðiedan**.]

under-ðiedan (113), *subjoin, add*. [*< ðeod*, by 16.]

un-ēaðe, *with difficulty, hardly*. [Cf. *unīeðe*, and *F. Q.* 2. 1. 27.]

un-for-cūð (58), *excellent*. [Cf. *fracoð*.]

un-for-wandiendlice (70), *boldly, saucily, forwardly*.

un-ge-cnāwen (62, 109), *unknown*.

un-ge-lāred (62), *untaught, unlearned, uneducated*. [See **lār-an**.]

un-ge-limp (47), *mishap, ill-luck*.

un-ge-rydelice (70), *suddenly, on a sudden*.

un-ge-sewenlic (57), *invisible*.

un-ge-ðanc-full (58, 146), *unthankful, ungrateful*.

un-ge-ðwāernes (51. 5; 144), *wickedness, depravity*.

un-ge-wēned (63), *unexpected*. [See **wēnan**.]

un-ge-wērged (62), *unwearied*. [See **wērig**.]

un-ge-wunelic (57, 146), *unusual*. [See **wunian**.]

un-īeðe (59), *difficult*. [See **unēaðe**.]

un-lifiende (-lyfigende) (61), *unliving, dead*. [Cf. **libban**.]

unnan (129; 159. a), *grant, allow*. [See **ēst**.]

un-nyt (57, 155), *devoid, destitute*.

un-riht-wīs (58, 146), *unrighteous*.

un-riht-wisnes (51. 5; 144), *unrighteousness*.

un-rim (47; 154. a; 142), *multitude*.

un-rōt (58), *sorrowful, dejected*.

un-sceððig (57, 146), *innocent*.

un-serȳdan (113, 162), *divest*.

[See *serȳdan*.]

un-sōfte (70), *harshly, cruelly*.

[Cf. Ger. *unsanft*.]

un-stille (59), *unquiet, restless*.

un-stilnes (51. 5; 144), *disorder, confusion*.

un-trum (57), *sick*.

un-trymnes (51. 5; 144), *illness, disease, infirmity*. [*< untrum*.]

ūp, *up*.

ūp-ā-hæfednes (51. 5; 144), *pride, arrogance*. [Cf. *ūpāhebban*.]

ūp-ā-hebban (VI. 107), *lift up*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1570.]

ūp-ā-standan (upp-) (VI. 107), *rise up*. [Cf. Ger. *aufstehen*.]

ūp-ā-stigan (I. 102), *rise, ascend*.

ūp-gān (141), *go up*. [Ger. *aufgehen*.]

ūp-gang (43), *rising*.

ūplic (57, 146), *upper, above*.

uppan, *upon, on top of*.

uppe, *up*.

ūre (ūsēr) (83), *our, ours*. [Ger. *unser*.]

ūrig-feðere (59), *devy-feathered*.

urnon, see *iernan*.

ūsēr, see *ūre*.

ūt, *out*.

ūt-ā-blāwan (R. 109), *blow out, breathe out; exhale*.

ūtan, *about, externally, on the outside*. [Ger. *aussen*.]

ūte (69), *outside*.

ūt-gān (141), *go out*.

ūt-gangan (R. 109), *go out*.

uton (wuton), *let us*.

W.

wæccen (51. b), *vigil*.

wæd (47), *water, billow, flood*.

wæd (51. b), *garment*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 148, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 3. 21, Shak., *Sonn.* 76. 6, and our 'widow's weeds.']

wædla (53), *poor man, destitute one*.

wæfels (43), *cloak, mantle*.

wæg (43), *billow, flood*. [Cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 1100, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 12. 4.]

wæg-flota (53), *water-floater, ship*.

wæl (47), *slaughter*. [Cf. *Walhalla, Walkyrie*.]

wæl-gifre (59), *greedy for slaughter*.

wæl-grim (57), *fierce, cruel, sanguinary*.

wæl-hrēow (58), *cruel*.

wæl-hrēownes (51. 5; 144), *cruelty*.

wælm, see *wielm*.

wæl-scel (47?), *carnage*.

wæpen (47. 1), *weapon; plur. arms*.

wær (47), *ocean*.

wær (51. b), *covenant; protection, care, safe-keeping*.

wær-fæst (58, 146), *covenant-keeping, faithful*.

wæstm (43), *growth, size; fruit*.

[Cf. *weaxan*, and Ger. *Wachstum*; Mod. Eng. *waist*.]

wæter (47. 1, 6), *water*. [Ger. *Wasser*.]

- wæter-brōga** (53), *water terror, terrible waters.*
- wæter-egesa** (-egsa) (53), *dread of the waters, dreadful waters.*
- wæter-flōd** (43), *water-flood.*
- water-scipe** (44. 1), *body of water.*
- wafian** (118), *waver.*
- wald**, see **weald**.
- waldend**, see **wealdend**.
- wana** (158), *wanting, lacking.*
- wang** (43), *field, mead.*
- wann** (wǫnn) (58), *dark, black.*
[Mod. Eng. *wan*.]
- waroð, waruð**, see **wearoð**.
- wāt**, see **witan**.
- wēa** (53), *woe.* [Cf. Ger. *Weh*.]
- weald** (wald) (43), *weald, forest.*
- wealdend** (waldend) (43. 6), *ruler, lord.*
- wealh-stōd** (43), *interpreter, translator.*
- weall** (43), *wall, rampart.* [*< Lat. vallum.*]
- weallan** (R. 109), *seethe, foam.*
[See **wielm**.]
- weard** (43), *guardian, warden.*
[Ger. *-wart*.]
- wearoð** (waroð, waruð) (43), *strand, shore, beach.*
- wearoð-gewinn** (waruð-) (47), *strife of the shore, i.e. surf, breakers.*
- wearð**, see **weorðan**.
- weax** (47), *wax.* [Ger. *Wachs*.]
- weaxan** (R. 109, 24), *grow, be fruitful, increase.* [Ger. *wachsen*; cf. Shak., *M. N. D.* 2. 1. 56, *Hamlet* 1. 3. 12.]
- wēccan** (114), *wake.*
- węcg** (43), *metal.* [Mod. Eng. *wedge*; cf. Shak., *Rich. III.* 1. 4. 26.]
- weder** (47), *weather.* [Ger. *Wetter*.]
- weder-candel** (51. 5), *weather-candle, i.e. the sun.*
- weg** (43, 24), *way.* [Ger. *Weg*.]
- wegan** (V. 106), *carry.*
- wel**, *well.*
- wela** (53), *wealth, riches, weal.*
[Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 37.]
- welig** (57, 146), *rich, wealthy, abounding.* [Cf. our 'well off,' 'well to do.']
- wel-willende** (61), *benevolent, kind-hearted, generous.*
- wel-willendlice** (70), *lovingly.*
- wel-willendnes** (51. 5; 144), *generosity, liberality.*
- wēn** (51. 1), *expectation, prospect, chance; wēn is ðæt, perhaps, perchance.* [Ger. *Wahn*.]
- wēnan** (113; 156. g), *expect, look for; think, suppose, imagine.*
[Ger. *wähnen*, Mod. Eng. *ween*; cf. Shak., *1 Hen. VI.* 2. 5. 88.]
- węndan** (113), *turn; return; translate.* [Ger. *wenden*; cf. Mod. Eng. *wend, went*.]
- węnding** (51. 3), *rotation.*
- węnian** (116), *accustom, train.*
- weoloc** (43, 20), *cockle, whelk.*
- weoloc-rēad** (58), *scarlet.*
- weoloc-sciell** (51. b), *cockle-shell.*
- weolor** (-ur) (51. b; 20), *lip.*
- weore** (47; 21. b), *work; exercise; deed; energy.* [Ger. *Werk*.]
- weorod** (weorud, werod) (47, 20), *host.* [*< wer.*]
- weorðan** (wyrðan) (104; 187; 21. b), *become; be; weorðan tō sometimes nearly = weorðan.*
[Ger. *werden*; cf. our 'woe worth the day.']
- weorðian** (118; 21. b), *honor, exalt.* [Cf. Shak., *Lear* 2. 2. 128.]

weorð-full (58, 146), *honorable*.
weorðlic (-lic) (57, 146), *honorable; exalted*.
weorðlice (70), *worthily, honorably*.
weorð-mynt (43 — orig. 51. b — 144; 34), *dignity*. [**weorð-mundīpa.*]
weorð-scipe (44. 1; 143), *honor, dignity*. [*Mod. Eng. worship*; cf. Shak., *W. T.* 1. 2. 314, *Lear* 1. 4. 288.]
weoruld, see **woruld**.
wēpan (R. 109), *weep*. [*< wōp*, by 16.]
wer (43), *man, husband*. [*Cf. Lat. vir.*]
wer-hād (43), *male sex*. [*Cf. hād.*]
wērig (57, 146), *weary*.
werod, see **weorod**.
wer-ðeod (51. b), *nation*.
wesan (138, 187), *be*.
westan, *from the west*.
west-sæ (43; 51. b), *sea on the west*.
wic (47), *dwelling*. [*Cf. Mod. Eng. bailiwick*; cognate with *Lat. vicus*, *Gr. oikos.*]
wician (118), *visit, lodge, sojourn*. [*< wic.*]
wīd (58), *wide*. [*Ger. weit.*]
wīde (70), *widely, far*.
wīd-ferende (61), *traveling (traveler) from a distance*.
wīd-fæðme (59), *capacious, extensive*. [*See fæðm.*]
wīd-gill (58), *extensive; spacious*.
wīd-gilnes (51. 5; 144), *extent, compass*.
wielm (wylm, wælm) (43), *boiling, swelling, surging*. [*See weallan, and Mod. Eng. whelm.*]
wierdan (113), *mar, injure*.

wif (47, 38), *wife; woman*. [*Ger. Weib*; cf. Chaucer, *Prolog.* 445, Shak., *T. N.* 5. 139.]
wif-hād (43), *female sex*.
wig (47), *war*.
wīgend (wiggend) (43. 6), *warrior*.
wīg-hūs (47), *war-house, tower*.
wiht (47; cf. 89. b), *whit*.
wild (58), *wild*. [*Ger. wild.*]
wildēor (47, 38), *wild animal, wild beast*.
willa (53), *will; request; desire; delight*. [*Ger. Wille.*]
willan (wyllan) (139, 188), *will, wish, desire*. [*Cf. Ger. wollen, Lat. velle.*]
wilnian (118), *desire*. [*See Chaucer, Knight's Tale* 751.]
wīn (47), *wine*. [*< Lat. vinum; Ger. Wein.*]
wind (43), *wind*. [*Ger. Wind.*]
windan (III. 104), *fly about*. [*Ger. winden, Mod. Eng. wind.*]
windig (57, 146), *windy*. [*Ger. windig.*]
wine (44. 2, 4), *friend*.
wine-ðearfende (61), *needing a friend*. [*Cf. ðearf.*]
wīn-geard (43), *vineyard*.
winnan (III. 104), *struggle, toil*.
winstre (60), *left*.
winter (43. 5), *winter (year); storm*. [*Ger. Winter.*]
winterlic (57, 146), *winter, wintry*. [*Ger. winterlich.*]
wir (43), *wire*.
wis (58; 155. e), *wise*. [*Ger. wise.*]
wisian (118), *point out*. [*Ger. weisen.*]
wislic (57, 146), *wise, true*.
wist (51. b), *provisions, food*. [*Cf. wesan.*]

- witan** (126), *know*. [Mod. Eng. *to wit*, Ger. *wissen*; cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 402, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 3. 6.]
- wītan** (I. 102), *blame, censure*. [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 12. 16.]
- wīte** (48), *punishment, penalty, torture*. [Cf. **wītan**.]
- witga** (53), *prophet (psalmist ?)*.
- witodlice** (uutedlice) (70), *indeed, truly*.
- wið**, *with* (hostility); *against*; *toward*; *in return for*. [Not to be confounded with **mid**; cf. *withstand*.]
- wiðer-** (142).
- wiðer-trod** (47), *retreat*.
- wiðer-winna** (53), *adversary*.
- wið-innan**, *within*.
- wið-sacan** (VI. 107; 164. m), *renounce*.
- wið-standan** (VI. 107), *withstand*.
- wið-ðingian** (118), *talk with, speak to*. [Cf. Mod. Eng. *hustings*.]
- wlanc** (58), *proud, lordly*.
- wlencu** (51. a), *pomp, splendor*. [*< wlanc*, by 16.]
- wlite** (44), *beauty*. [Cf. *and-wlita*.]
- wlite-beorht** (58), *beautiful*.
- wlitig** (57, 146), *beautiful, comely*.
- wolcen** (47), *cloud*. [Cf. Ger. *Wolke*, Mod. Eng. *welkin*.]
- wolde**, see **willan**.
- wqnn**, see **wann**.
- wōp** (43), *weeping (tears)*.
- word** (47), *word*. [Ger. *Wort*.]
- word-hord** (47, 147), *treasury of words*. [Cf. Ger. *Hort*.]
- word-locu** (53, 147), *coffer of words*.
- worhte**, see **wyrcean**.
- worn** (43), *multitude*.
- woruld** (51. 1, 3; 26; 20), *world; in woruld worulde, for ever and ever*.
- woruld-bisgu** (51. a), *worldly occupation*.
- woruld-cræft** (43), *secular art, secular occupation*.
- woruld-ge-ðyngð** (51. b), *worldly honor, worldly dignity*.
- woruld-lif** (47), *worldly life*.
- woruld-spēd** (51. b), *worldly success*.
- wreccan** (114), *awake, arouse*.
- wreōn** (I. 102), *clothe*.
- wreðian** (118), *support, uphold*.
- wrigon**, see **wreōn**.
- wudu** (45), *forest, wood*.
- wudu-bearu** (-bearo) (43. 7), *forest, grove*.
- wuldor** (47), *glory, splendor*.
- wuldor-cyning** (43), *king of glory, king of majesty*. [Cf. Ps. 24. 7.]
- wuldor-drēam** (43), *heavenly joy, heavenly rapture* (lit. *glory-joy*).
- wuldor-fæder** (43. 8), *father of glory*.
- wuldor-spēdig** (57, 146), *glorious*.
- wuldor-ðrym(m)** (43), *glorious majesty*.
- wuldrian** (118), *glorify, magnify, celebrate*.
- wulf** (43, 24), *wolf*. [Ger. *Wolf*.]
- wund** (58), *wounded, sore*. [Ger. *wund*.]
- wundenlocc** (58), *curly-haired*.
- wundor** (47. 1), *wonder*. [Ger. *Wunder*.]
- wundorlic** (57, 146), *wonderful*. [Ger. *wunderlich*.]
- wundorlice** (70), *wondrously*. [Cf. Chaucer, *Prolog*. 84.]
- wundrian** (118), *wonder*. [Ger. *wundern*.]

wunian (118), *dwel, remain, live.*

[Ger. *wohnen*; cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 388, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 1. 51.]

wunung (51. 3), *dwelling.* [Ger.

Wohnung; cf. Chaucer, *Prol.*

606, Spenser, *F. Q.* 6. 5. 13.]

wurdon, see **weorðan**.

wuton, see **uton**.

wyllan, see **willan**.

wylm, see **wielm**.

wyn-sum (57, 146), *winsome, pleasant.* [Ger. *wonnesam*.]

wyn-sumlice (70), *winsomely.*

wyrcean (114; 161; 184. a), *work; do; construct, make, build; yield.* [Cf. Ger. *wirken*, and Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1901.]

wyrhta (53), *craftsman, workman, maker.* [Cf. **wyrcean**;

Mod. Eng. *-wright* (see Chaucer, *Prol.* 614).]

wyrm (43), *worm.* [Ger. *Wurm*.]

wyrm-cynn (47), *kind of worms.*

wyrt (51. 1), *herb.* [Mod. Eng. *wort*; cf. Ger. *Wurz*, *Wurzel*, *Gewürz*, and Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale* 401.]

wyrt-ge-mang (47), *spice.*

wyrt-ge-mengnes (51. 5; 147), *spice.*

wýscan (113), *wish.* [Ger. *wünschen*.]

Y.

ȳcan, see **iecan**. [übel.]

yfel (57), *evil, wicked, bad.* [Ger.

yfel (47), *evil.*

yfele (70), *evil, wrongly.*

ymb(e), *about.*

ymb- (142).

ymb-clyppan (113), *embrace.*

ymb-hōn (R. 110), *surround.*

ymb-hwyrft (43), *compass, circuit; orbit.*

ymb-hygean (124), *consider.*

ymb-sellan (114), *envelop; beset.*

ymb-sittan (V. 106, 142), *sit around.*

ymb-trymman (115. a), *surround.*

ymb-ūtan, *about, around.*

yrre, see **ierre**.

ȳð (51. b; 30), *wave, billow, flood.* [Cf. Lat. *unda*, and 30.]

ȳð-bord (47), *ship?*

ȳð-lād (51. b; 215), *billow-road.*

ȳð-lid (47, 215), *ship.*

NOTE. — The EWS. forms of **sǣ** (p. 310) are: sing. nom. **sǣ**, gen. **sǣs**, dat. **sǣ**, acc. **sǣ**. Other forms are: sing. gen. dat. **sǣwe**; plur. nom. acc. **sǣs**, **sǣ**, dat. **sǣum**, **sǣwum**.

ADVERTISEMENTS

BOOKS ON HIGHER ENGLISH

EDITED BY

ALBERT S. COOK,

Professor of the English Language and Literature in Yale University.

Sidney's Defense of Poesy. xlv + 103 pages. For introduction, 80 cents.

Shelley's Defense of Poetry. xxvi + 86 pages. For introduction, 50 cents.

The Art of Poetry. The Poetical Treatises of Horace, Vida, and Boileau, with the translations by Howes, Pitt, and Soame. lviii + 303 pages. For introduction, \$1.12.

Cardinal Newman's Essay on Poetry. With reference to Aristotle's Poetics. x + 36 pages. For introduction, 30 cents.

Addison's Criticisms on Paradise Lost. xxiv + 200 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.

Leigh Hunt's Answer to the Question 'What is Poetry?' Including Remarks on Versification. vi + 98 pages. For introduction, 50 cents.

Tennyson's The Princess. Boards. xlv + 187 pages. For introduction, 40 cents.

EDMUND C. STEDMAN, *Author of "Victorian Poets," "Poets of America," "The Nature and Elements of Poetry," etc.:*

More than once of late, when asked to name, for some friend or correspondent, a course of reading upon the spirit and structure of Poetry, I have at once recommended Professor Albert S. Cook's series, and have been grateful to him for his admirable labors. He could have made no better choice of treatises to edit; and Sidney, Shelley, Addison, Hunt, and Newman have had no better editor — so far as their exquisite essays upon the divine art are concerned. Professor Cook's notes are the fruit of sympathetic taste and liberal scholarship. The books, in fact, are models as handbooks, upon an ideal subject, designed for practical use.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

THE ATHENÆUM PRESS SERIES

Issued under the general editorship of
Professor GEORGE LYMAN KITTREDGE, of Harvard University, and
Professor C. T. WINCHESTER, of Wesleyan University.

THE FOLLOWING VOLUMES ARE NOW READY :

- Sidney's Defense of Poesy.** Edited by Professor ALBERT S. COOK of Yale University. 80 cents.
- Ben Jonson's Timber; or Discoveries.** Edited by Professor F. E. SCHELLING of the University of Pennsylvania. 80 cents.
- Selections from the Essays of Francis Jeffrey.** Edited by LEWIS E. GATES of Harvard University. 90 cents.
- Old English Ballads.** Edited by Professor F. B. GUMMERE of Haverford College. \$1.25.
- Selections from the Works of Thomas Gray.** Edited by Professor WM. L. PHELPS of Yale University. 90 cents.
- A Book of Elizabethan Lyrics.** Edited by Professor F. E. SCHELLING of the University of Pennsylvania. \$1.12.
- Seventeenth Century Lyrics.** Edited by Professor F. E. SCHELLING of the University of Pennsylvania. \$1.12.
- Herrick: Selections from the Hesperides and the Noble Numbers.** Edited by Professor E. E. HALE, Jr., of Union University. 90 cents.
- Selections from Keats's Poems.** Edited by Professor ARLO BATES of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. \$1.00.
- Selections from the Works of Sir Richard Steele.** Edited by Professor GEORGE R. CARPENTER of Columbia University. Cloth. 90 cents.
- Carlyle's Sartor Resartus.** Edited by Professor ARCHIBALD MACMECHAN of Dalhousie College, Halifax, N.S. \$1.25.
- Selections from Wordsworth's Poems.** Edited by Professor EDWARD DOWDEN of the University of Dublin. \$1.25.
- Specimens of the Pre-Shakspearean Drama.** Edited by Professor JOHN M. MANLY of Chicago University. In three volumes. Vols. I. and II. now ready. \$1.25 each.
- Selections from Malory's Morte Darthur.** Edited by Professor WILLIAM E. MEAD of Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn. \$1.00.
- Burke's Speech on Conciliation with America.** Edited by Professor HAMMOND LAMONT of Brown University. 50 cents.
- Selections from Shelley's Poems.** Edited by W. J. ALEXANDER of the University of Toronto. \$1.15.
- Selections from Landor.** Edited by W. B. S. CLYMER, formerly of Harvard University. \$1.00.
- Selections from William Cowper's Poems.** Edited by JAMES O. MURRAY of Princeton University. \$1.00.
- Selections from Robert Burns's Poems.** Edited by the late JOHN G. DOW, formerly of the University of Wisconsin. \$1.10.
- The Poems of William Collins.** Edited by WALTER C. BRONSON of Brown University. 90 cents.
- Gibbon's Memoirs.** Edited by Professor OLIVER F. EMERSON of Western Reserve University. \$1.10.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE METHODS AND MATERIALS OF LITERARY CRITICISM.

By CHARLES MILLS GAYLEY, Professor of the English Language and Literature
in the University of California, and FRED NEWTON SCOTT, Junior
Professor of Rhetoric in the University of Michigan.

Volume I. THE BASES IN AESTHETICS AND POETICS.

12mo. Cloth. 587 pages. For introduction, \$1.25.

Volume II. LITERARY TYPES.

[In preparation.]

Consulting the needs both of special students of criticism and of those who desire a working basis for the critical study of Literature as related to Art, this work aims to cover, in a helpful way, the field of Literary Theory.

The plan of each chapter embraces (1) a discussion of such problems as the topic in hand presents for consideration, (2) a comprehensive bibliography, with critical commentary on each important reference, (3) suggestions for special investigation. While the work is not intended to set forth any special system of criticism, being rather a clue to the sources which will acquaint the student with any or all systems, yet some pains has been taken to distinguish, in the commentary, those theories which are thought to rest upon a sound scientific and aesthetic basis.

Following are the subjects of the chapters in Volume I.:

1. Theory of Criticism; 2. History of Criticism; 3. Theory of Art; 4. Development of Art; 5. Theory of Literature; 6. Comparative Literature; 7. Theory of Poetry; 8. The Historical Study of Poetry; 9. The Historical Study of Poetics; 10. Principles of Versification. Appendix: Bibliography of Aristotle's Poetics.

The volume contains a full and carefully classified index to authors and works.

The chapters of Volume II. upon LITERARY TYPES cover the following subjects:

The Theory and History of the Lyric; the Theory and History of the Epic; the Theory of Tragedy:—the Dramatic Problem (Conception, Collision, and Catastrophe), the Construction (Ancient and Modern Canons of Unity and Technique), the Effect (Classified theories of the Catharsis); the Theory of Comedy; the Historic Development of the Drama; Minor Types of Poetry; Prose and its Artistic Types; the Theory and History of Romance and Novel; Phrases of Literary Development:—Classicism, Romanticism; Realism, Idealism; Modern Literary Movements.

[Volume II. is in preparation.]

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

Outline of the Philosophy of English Literature

By GREENOUGH WHITE, A.M., B.D.,

Author of "A Sketch of the Philosophy of American Literature."

Part I: The Middle Ages.

12mo. Cloth. vi + 266 pages. Introduction price, \$1.00.

THE motive of this treatise is to determine the bounds of the great historical divisions of English literature, to discover the salient features, the peculiar characteristics of each epoch, to trace the connection in thought between each, and to view all against a background of European history, literature, and art. It is believed that the causes of historic change, the principles that control the succession of ages, the revolutions of thought, sentiment, and action, are here clearly discriminated; so that in this little book, in a word, a sound philosophy of mediaeval history is suggested.

W. J. Courthope, *Professor of Poetry at the University of Oxford*: It would be quite impertinent in me to criticise the manner in which the work has been executed, but I may be allowed to express my admiration of the orderly manner in which its very diverse materials are arranged and of the agreeable style in which the narrative is conducted. To accomplish this result in so vast a subject as English literature as a whole is in itself a proof of the most skillful workmanship, and I cannot too strongly express my conviction that this comprehensive survey is based upon sound knowledge and just reasoning.

Edward Dowden, *Professor of English, Trinity College, Dublin*: It interested me much, and seemed to me something new and needful, — not merely a work of erudition, but a contribution towards interpreting the results of erudition — a book not merely of knowledge, but of ideas. . . . Especially on this ground — as an elucidation of knowledge — I value the work. The way in which it keeps the European movement present to the reader's mind, with England as having a part in it, is of great importance.

Edmund Gosse, *Author of a "History of English Literature in the Eighteenth Century," etc.*: I have read the book with pleasure. It appears to me to deal freshly and brilliantly with the old, worn lines of history.

Leslie Stephen, *Author of "Hours in a Library" etc.*: The design is good, the style is good, and the matter interesting.

Alois Brandl, *Professor of English at the University of Berlin*: Whites Buch voll allgemeiner Bildung sich zeigt — . . . drei Viertel [?] der Darstellung gelten politischen oder kontinentalen Verhältnissen. Gefallen hat mir eine Bemerkung über Chaucers 'gentle pite' und 'pitous joye' (S. 81-2).

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers, Boston, New York, Chicago, London.

REFERENCE BOOKS ON POETRY

- A Book of Elizabethan Lyrics.** Selected and edited by FELIX E. SCHELLING, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania. 327 pages. For introduction, \$1.12.
- Old English Ballads.** Selected and edited by Professor F. B. GUMMERE of Haverford College. 380 pages. For introduction, \$1.25.
- Introduction to the Poetry of Robert Browning.** By WILLIAM J. ALEXANDER, Professor of English, University College, Toronto. 212 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.
- Hudson's Text-Book of Poetry.** By HENRY N. HUDSON. Selections from Wordsworth, Coleridge, Burns, Beattie, Goldsmith, and Thomson. With Lives and Notes. Cloth. 704 pages. For introduction, \$1.25.
- Sidney's Defense of Poesy.** Edited by ALBERT S. COOK, Professor of the English Language and Literature in Yale University. 103 pages. For introduction, 80 cents.
- Shelley's Defense of Poetry.** Edited by Professor ALBERT S. COOK. 86 pages. For introduction, 50 cents.
- Cardinal Newman's Essay on Poetry.** With reference to Aristotle's Poetics. Edited by Professor ALBERT S. COOK. 36 pages. For introduction, 30 cents.
- The Art of Poetry.** The Poetical Treatises of Horace, Vida, and Boileau, with the translations by Howes, Pitt, and Soame. Edited by Professor ALBERT S. COOK. 214 pages. For introduction, \$1.12.
- Addison's Criticisms on Paradise Lost.** Edited by Professor ALBERT S. COOK. 200 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.
- What is Poetry?** By Leigh Hunt. Edited by Professor ALBERT S. COOK. 98 pages. For introduction, 50 cents.
- A Primer of English Verse.** By HIRAM CORSON, Professor of English Literature in Cornell University. 232 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.
- A Hand-Book of Poetics.** By FRANCIS B. GUMMERE, Professor of English Literature in Haverford College. 250 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.
- Characteristics of the English Poets, from Chaucer to Shirley.** By WILLIAM MINTO. For introduction, \$1.50.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

BOOKS ON ENGLISH LITERATURE

Athenæum Press Series: 22 volumes now ready.

Baldwin's Inflection and Syntax of Malory's Morte d'Arthur.....	\$1.40
Browne's Shakspeare's Versification25
Corson's Primer of English Verse.....	1.00
Emery's Notes on English Literature.....	1.00
Frink's New Century Speaker.....	1.00
Garnett's Selections in English Prose from Elizabeth to Victoria..	1.50
Gayley's Classic Myths in English Literature.....	1.50
Gayley and Scott's Literary Criticism.....	1.25
Gummere's Handbook of Poetics.....	1.00
Hudson's Life, Art, and Characters of Shakespeare. 2 vols.	4.00
Hudson's Classical English Reader.....	1.00
Hudson's Text-Book of Prose.....	1.25
Hudson's Text-Book of Poetry.....	1.25
Hudson's Essays on English, Studies in Shakespeare, etc.25
Kent's Shakespeare Note-Book.....	.60
Litchfield's Spenser's Britomart60
Minto's Manual of English Prose Literature	1.50
Minto's Characteristics of the English Poets	1.50
Phelps' Beginnings of the English Romantic Movement	1.00
Smith's Synopsis of English and American Literature.....	.80
Standard English Classics: 18 volumes now ready.	
Thayer's Best Elizabethan Plays.....	1.25
White's Philosophy of American Literature.....	.30
White's Philosophy of English Literature.....	1.00
Winchester's Five Short Courses of Reading in English Literature	.40

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

ENGLISH COMPOSITION AND RHETORIC

Text-books and works of reference for high schools,
academies, and colleges.

- Lessons in English.** By SARA E. H. LOCKWOOD. 403 pages. \$1.12.
- The Science of Discourse.** By ARNOLD TOMPKINS, Professor of Pedagogy in the University of Illinois. 353 pages. \$1.00.
- A Practical Course in English Composition.** By ALPHONSO G. NEWCOMER, Associate Professor of English in Leland Stanford Junior University. 249 pages. 80 cents.
- A Method of English Composition.** By T. WHITING BANCROFT. 101 pages. 50 cents.
- The Practical Elements of Rhetoric.** By JOHN F. GENUNG, Professor of Rhetoric in Amherst College. 483 pages. \$1.25.
- A Handbook of Rhetorical Analysis.** By JOHN F. GENUNG. Cloth. 306 pages. \$1.12.
- Outlines of Rhetoric.** By JOHN F. GENUNG. 331 pages. \$1.00.
- The Principles of Argumentation.** By GEORGE P. BAKER, Assistant Professor of English in Harvard University. 414 pages. \$1.12.
- The Forms of Discourse.** By WILLIAM B. CAIRNS, Instructor in English in the University of Wisconsin. 356 pages. \$1.15.
- Introduction to Rhetoric.** By WILLIAM B. CAIRNS. 270 pages. 90 cents.
- Outlines of the Art of Expression.** By J. H. GILMORE, Professor of Rhetoric and English in the University of Rochester, N.Y. 117 pages. 60 cents.
- The Rhetoric Tablet.** By F. N. SCOTT, Junior Professor of Rhetoric in the University of Michigan, and J. V. DENNEY, Professor of Rhetoric and the English Language in the Ohio State University. Numbers I and II. Sixty sheets in each. 15 cents.
- Public Speaking and Debate.** By GEORGE JACOB HOLYOAKE. Cloth. 266 pages. \$1.00.
-

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

CAIRNS'

INTRODUCTION TO RHETORIC

By WILLIAM B. CAIRNS,
Instructor in English in the University of Wisconsin, Author of
"Forms of Discourse."

Cloth. 270 pages. For introduction, 90 cents.

THE teaching of formal rhetoric has been emphasized to such an extent that in many schools it forms the major part of the study of English. In such cases rhetoric has been made a final rather than a basal study. One of the sure signs that point to a reaction in favor of briefer studies in formal rhetoric and those earlier in the course is the cordial reception given Dr. Cairns' "Introduction to Rhetoric." This is the briefest and simplest presentation of the subject that has appeared in recent years. It gives reasons for statements frankly and clearly. The pupil is not asked to memorize a mass of facts or rules, or to accept the author's *ipse dixit* as final. The book has a practical value in its emphasis of invention and style. It is one of the few text-books in rhetoric that aim to assist the pupil in the choice and development of the subject on which he is expected to write. The book is suggestive rather than exhaustive, and is intended for the earlier years of a high-school or academy course.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston.
Atlanta.

New York.
Dallas.

Chicago.
Columbus.

San Francisco.
London.

THE FORMS OF DISCOURSE

With an Introductory Chapter on Style

By **WILLIAM B. CAIRNS, A.M.,**

Instructor in Rhetoric in the University of Wisconsin.

12mo. Cloth. 356 pages. For introduction, \$1.15.

THIS text-book, for high schools and colleges, presents the subject of Rhetoric with special emphasis on Invention. The author believes that most courses in elementary rhetoric devote too little time to this part. Style is briefly but completely treated in an introductory chapter, brevity being gained by giving only enough examples to make plain the author's meaning. A student needs to be cautioned regarding the use of slang, and hints as to the relative merits of loose and periodic sentences; but he also needs a training that will help him, in writing on a given subject for a particular occasion, to decide what to say and how to say it.

Narration, Description, Exposition, Argumentation, and Persuasion are fully discussed; and carefully chosen examples of each are given for analysis and special study, thus obviating the need for a separate book of selections.

It is believed that teachers who prefer to illustrate errors and excellences of style from the student's own composition, rather than from stock examples, will find in this work everything necessary for a high-school or elementary college course in Rhetoric. The book may, however, be used, if desired, in connection with one of the many excellent treatises on English Composition or Elementary Rhetoric.

GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta.

The Beginnings of the English Romantic Movement

By WILLIAM LYON PHELPS, A.M. (Harvard), Ph.D. (Yale),
Instructor in English Literature at Yale University.

12mo. Cloth. viii + 192 pages. Introduction price, \$1.00.

THIS book is a study of the germs of English Romanticism between 1725 and 1765. No other work in this field has ever been published, hence the results given here are all the fruit of first-hand investigation. The book discusses, with abundant references and illustrations, the various causes that brought about the transitions of taste from Classicism to Romanticism—such as the Spenserian revival, the influence of Milton's minor poetry, the love of mediæval life, the revival of ballad literature, the study of Northern mythology, etc. It is believed that this book is a contribution to our knowledge of English literary history; and it will be especially valuable to advanced classes of students who are interested in the development of literature. The treatment is historical rather than argumentative.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

HUDSON'S SHAKESPEARE

For School and Home Use.

By HENRY N. HUDSON, LL.D.,

Author of "The Life, Art, and Characters of Shakespeare,"
Editor of "The Harvard Shakespeare," etc.

Revised and enlarged Editions of twenty-three Plays. Carefully expurgated, with explanatory Notes at the bottom of the page, and critical Notes at the end of each volume. One play in each volume.

Square 16mo. Varying in size from 128 to 253 pages. Mailing price of each: cloth, 50 cents; paper, 35 cents. Introduction price, cloth, 45 cents; paper, 30 cents. Per set (in box), \$10.00.

Why is Hudson's Shakespeare the standard in a majority of the best schools where the greatest attention is paid to this subject? Because Dr. Hudson was the ablest Shakespearean scholar America has ever known. His introductions to the plays of Shakespeare are well worth the price of the volume. He makes the characters almost living flesh and blood, and creates a great interest on the part of the student and a love for Shakespeare's works, without which no special progress can be made. Whoever can command the interest of the pupil in a great author or his works is the person who renders the greatest service.

The list of plays in Hudson's School Shakespeare is as follows:

A Midsummer Night's Dream.
The Merchant of Venice.
Much Ado about Nothing.
As You Like It.
The Tempest.
King John.
Richard the Second.
Richard the Third.

Henry the Fourth, Part I.
Henry the Fourth, Part II.
Henry the Fifth.
Henry the Eighth.
Romeo and Juliet.
Julius Cæsar.
Hamlet.
King Lear.

Macbeth.
Antony and Cleopatra.
Othello.
Cymbeline.
Coriolanus.
Twelfth Night.
The Winter's Tale.

C. T. Winchester, *Professor of English Literature, Wesleyan University:* The notes and comments in the school edition are admirably fitted to the need of the student, removing his difficulties by stimulating his interest and quickening his perception.

Hiram Corson, *Professor of English Literature, Cornell University:* I consider them altogether excellent. The notes give all the aid needed for an understanding of the text, without waste and distraction of the student's mind. The introductory matter to the several plays is especially worthy of approbation.

We invite correspondence with all who are interested in the study of Shakespeare in the class-room.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston.

New York.

Chicago.

Atlanta.

Dallas.



PE
135
C6
1900

Cook, Albert Stanburrough
A first book in Old
English 2d ed. rev. and enl.

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
